



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

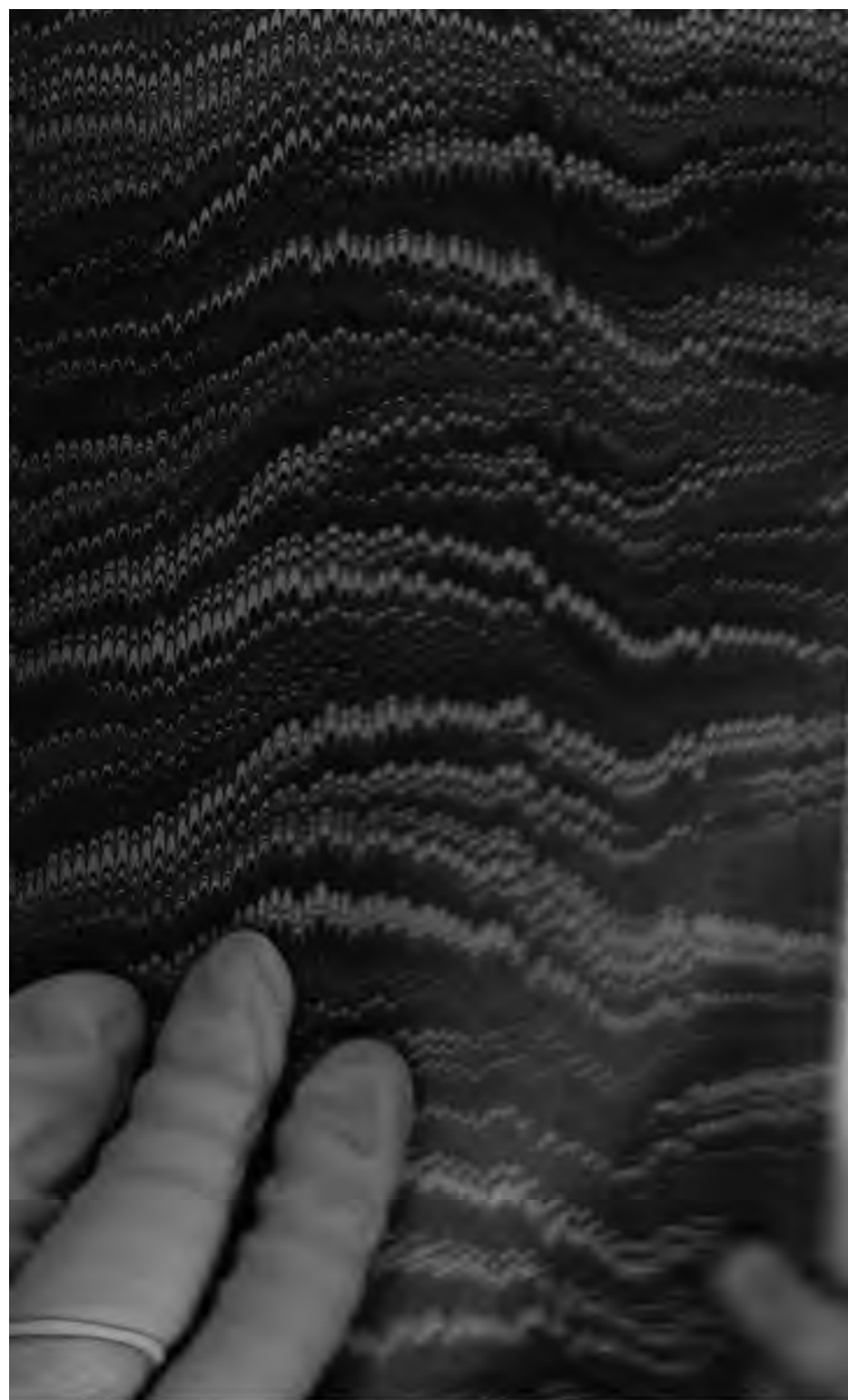
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>















600080538U



Vincent Brooks, lith

# COMPANY AND BATTALION DRILL

ILLUSTRATED:

INCLUDING LIGHT DRILL.

IN ACCORDANCE WITH

“The Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry”

AS REVISED IN 1861.

BY

CAPTAIN WILLIAM D. MALTON,

DUMFRIESSHIRE MILITIA.

---

FIFTH EDITION.

---

LONDON:

PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY

W. CLOWES AND SONS, 14, CHARING CROSS.

1862.

~~200 f 75.~~  
231. a. 97.

Entered at Stationers' Hall.



1

*The following Letter (referring to the original MS. of this work),  
addressed to the Author by the late ADJUTANT-GENERAL, is  
here inserted by permission.*

HORSE GUARDS, S.W.,  
18th August, 1857.

SIR,

IN returning to you the accompanying Manuscript, I am directed by the General Commanding-in-Chief to convey to you his approval of a work on which you have bestowed so much care, and which, from the clear and simple nature of its explanations, is admirably adapted to the Junior Officers of the Service, to whom its merits must ensure a sufficient introduction.

His Royal Highness regrets he is unable to accede to your request that it may be published by his authority, as such a sanction would set aside the "Field Exercise and Evolutions of the Army."

I have, &c.,

(Signed) G. A. WETHERALL,  
*Adjutant-General.*





## PREFACE TO THE FIFTH EDITION.

---

FURTHER alterations in the *Field Exercise* having necessitated the re-modelling of any book following in its wake, the Author of this work has profited by the opportunity to make such improvements in it as have suggested themselves since the publication of the last Edition.

The symbols used in the Plates have been more closely assimilated to those adopted in the *Field Exercise*; the Plates themselves—which have been carefully re-drawn—still retaining their distinctive feature of completely delineating the original and intermediate, as well as the final, formation in each Manœuvre.

In deference to the opinion of several friendly critics, the book has been enlarged by the addition of a Third Part containing the *Light Drill* hitherto published in a separate form.

*January, 1862.*

## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

---

THE following arrangement of Company and Battalion Drill originated in a collection of Notes made by the Author, for his own use, while attached for some months to the Rifle Brigade. It has subsequently been completed, and circumstances have led to its being now offered to the Service.

The Illustrations are designed to show Officers their own places, and those of the Covering-serjeants, in any Manœuvre at its different stages: and, at the same time, to familiarize the eye with the progressive changes which take place in the appearance of the Battalion as each *Caution* and *Command* is given.

It is scarcely to be hoped that a work which enters so minutely into details will be found wholly free from defects; great care, however, has been taken, as well to ensure accuracy as to avoid laying down anything which, though supported by authority, is contrary to usage.

The Author desires to acknowledge the assistance he derived from Colonel Sir T. Troubridge's tabular arrangement of Battalion Drill, in framing the directions for the Colours, and in classifying the movements in Part II.

*December, 1857.*

# CONTENTS.

## INTRODUCTION—

	PAGE
<i>Degrees of March, and Cadence.—Taking distance for Files.—Meaning of the terms Pivot and Reverse, Inner and Outer, flank.—How Officers' Swords are carried, &amp;c.—Words of Command.—On Wheeling.—Position and movements of the Rifle in marching</i>	1—6*

## PART I.—COMPANY DRILL.

(A.) Formation of the Company	7
(B.) Posting of Officers	8
(C.) Rule for changing Flanks	9
(D.) Dressing	10
<hr/>	
No. I. Formation of the Parade, and how to Inspect and Prove a Company	11
II. A Company as in Line taking Open order, and resuming Close order	15
III. Marching to the Front and Rear	17
IV. Marching past in Slow and Quick time	19
V. A Company as in Column wheeling into Line	20
VI. A Company as in Line wheeling into Column	22
VII. A Company as in Line or Column wheeling any given number of Paces on either Flank, from the Halt	25
VIII. A Company as in Line wheeling on the Centre, from the Halt	27
IX <sup>(1)</sup> . A Company as in Line wheeling into Column of Subdivisions (or Sections)	29
IX <sup>(2)</sup> . An Open Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) wheeling into Line	31
X. A Company as in Line advancing from a Flank in Open Column of Subdivisions (or Sections)	33
XI. The Echelon March of Subdivisions (or Sections)	34

	PAGE
XII. A Company in Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) forming to the Reverse Flank - - - -	36
XIII. File Marching, and the Flank March in Fours - - -	38
XIV. The Side (or Closing) Step - - - -	43
XV. Countermarching by Ranks and Files - - - -	45
XVI. A Company diminishing Front by forming Subdivisions : and Subdivisions forming Sections -	47
XVII. Sections increasing Front by forming Subdivisions or Company : and Subdivisions forming Company -	49
XVIII. Diminishing and increasing Front, by breaking off Files and bringing them again to the front - -	52
XIX. Diminishing and increasing Front, by breaking into Files (or Fours) and re-forming Sections, Subdivisions, or Company - - - -	53
XX. Forming Close Column of Sections, and Company Square - - - -	54
XXI. Forming Rallying Square - - - -	57

## PART II.—BATTALION DRILL.

(A.) Formation of a Battalion on Parade - - -	59
(B.) Posting of Officers and Colours - - -	60
(C.) Rule for changing Flanks - - - -	63
(D.) Dressing - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
(E.) Closing to correct Distances - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
(F.) Firings - - - -	64
(G.) Alignment and Points of Formation - - -	65
THE COLOURS - - - -	67

### SEC. I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

No. I. A Battalion in Line taking Open order, and resuming Close order - - - -	68
II. Advancing and Retiring in Line - - - -	70
III. Dressing a Battalion in Line - - - -	72
IV. Advancing and Retiring by Wings - - - -	74
V <sup>(1)</sup> . When a Battalion advancing in Line passes Obstacles	77
V <sup>(2)</sup> . When a Battalion retiring in Line passes Obstacles, or marches through a Relieving Line - - -	80

### SEC. II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

§ <i>Of Columns</i> - - - -	82
VI. A Battalion in Line wheeling into Open Column -	85

# CONTENTS.

ix

	PAGE
VII. A Battalion formed in Line moving in Open Column from either Flank along the Rear - - - -	88
VIII. A Battalion formed in Line advancing from a Flank in Open Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) - - - - -	90
IX. A Battalion formed in Line advancing in Double Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) -	93
X. A Battalion formed in Line retreating from a Flank in Open Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) - - - - -	97
XI. A Battalion formed in Line retreating from both Flanks in rear of the Centre, in Double Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) - - -	100
XII. A Battalion in Line forming Open, Quarter-distance, or Close Column on any named Company - -	104

## SEC. III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

XIII. Forming Quarter-distance or Close Column from any more open Column - - - - -	110
XIV. A Close or Quarter-distance Column opening from the Front, the Rear, or any named Company - -	112
XV. A Close or Quarter-distance Column wheeling on a Fixed or Moveable pivot - - - - -	115
XVI. A Close or Quarter-distance Column changing Front to the rear by the wheel of Subdivisions round the Centre - - - - -	119
XVII <sup>(1)</sup> . Changing the Order of a Column by the successive march of the rear Companies to the Front - -	121
XVII <sup>(2)</sup> . Changing the Order of an Open, Half-, or Quarter-distance Column on a Road - - - - -	123
XVIII. A Column taking ground to a flank in Fours : or to the front and a flank by Echelon of Sections - -	125

## SEC. IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

XIX. A Battalion in Open Column wheeling into Line -	128
XX. A Battalion in Open Column forming Line to the Front, on any named Company - - - -	130
XXI. A Battalion in Open Column forming Line to the Reverse Flank - - - - -	136
XXII <sup>(1)</sup> . A Battalion in Double Column, on the March, forming Line to the Front - - - - -	138
XXII <sup>(2)</sup> . A Battalion in Double Column forming Line to the Right or Left - - - - -	141



SEC V.—DEPLOYMENTS.

	PAGE
XXIII. A Battalion in Close or Quarter-distance Column Deploying into Line on any named Company -	143
XXIV. A Battalion in Line changing Front by the intermediate formation of Open Column on any named Company - - - - -	150

SEC. VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

§ <i>Of Echellon</i> - - - - -	154
XXV. A Battalion wheeling forward by Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) from Line into Echellon -	156
XXVI. A Battalion in Oblique Echellon of Companies re-forming Line - - - - -	159
XXVII. A Battalion in Line changing Front by Echellon -	162
XXVIII. A Battalion in Line advancing or retiring in Direct Echellon of Companies from either Flank - -	167
XXIX. Re-forming Line from Direct Echellon - - -	169

SEC. VII.—SQUARES.

XXX. A Battalion in Column forming Square - - -	171
XXXI. A Battalion in Square re-forming Column, or Double Column - - - - -	177
XXXII. A Battalion in Line forming Square - - - -	180
XXXIII. A Battalion in Line or Echellon forming Company Squares: and re-forming Companies - - -	181
XXXIV. A Battalion in Open or Half-distance Column, or in Double Column, forming Square Two-deep: and re-forming Column - - - - -	182

SEC. VIII.—INSPECTION OR REVIEW.

XXXV. Inspection (or Review) of a Battalion - - -	184
XXXVI. Review of two (or more) Battalions formed in contiguous Columns at quarter distance - - -	192

---

DUTIES OF COVERING-SERJEANTS IN BATTALION -	195—220
---	---------

## PART III.—LIGHT DRILL.

## INTRODUCTION—

	PAGE
<i>Circular Memorandum on Light Drill.—General Principles of Skirmishing. — Skirmishers, Supports, and Reserves.—Posts, &amp;c., of Officers.—Bugle Sounds -</i>	221—227

## SEC. I.—COMPANY LIGHT DRILL.

No. I. Extending - - - - -	228
II. Closing - - - - -	230
III. Firing in Skirmishing order, at the Halt - - -	231
IV. Advancing in Skirmishing order, and Firing - -	232
V. Retiring in Skirmishing order, and Firing - -	234
VI. Inclining to a Flank, and Firing - - - -	235
VII. Skirmishers changing Front or Direction - -	236
VIII. Relieving Skirmishers - - - - -	238
IX. Skirmishers closing on their Support - - -	240
X. Company and Rallying Squares - - - -	242

## SEC. II.—BATTALION LIGHT DRILL.

XI. A Battalion extending in Skirmishing order from Quarter-distance Column - - - - -	244
XII. A Battalion extending in Skirmishing order from Line - - - - -	249
XIII. Relieving Skirmishers - - - - -	253
XIV. Reinforcing a line of Skirmishers, or Extending it to a Flank - - - - -	254
XV. Skirmishers closing on their Supports - - -	256
XVI. Skirmishers and Supports closing on the Reserve -	258
XVII. The Alarm (or Look-out for Cavalry) - - -	260
XVIII. Passing a Bridge, or short Defile, in contact with an Enemy - - - - -	263

---

ADVANCED AND REAR GUARDS - - - - -	265
PIQUETS AND THEIR SENTRIES - - - - -	270

---

APPENDIX I.	- - - - -	PAGE 275
Words of Command for—		
(A) The <i>Manual</i> and <i>Platoon</i> , Firings, &c.	- -	275
(B) The Bayonet (or Sword-bayonet) Exercise	-	279
(C) Relieving Guard	- - - - -	280
(D) A Funeral Party	- - - - -	281
APPENDIX II.	- - - - -	283
Weight, &c., of Arms and Ammunition.		
APPENDIX III.	- - - - -	284
Table for numbering off a Company.		
INDEX	- - - - -	285

---

## LIST OF PLATES.

---

### PART. I.

PLATE		PAGE
1	<i>Frontispiece</i> - - - - -	Title
2	Posting of Officers, &c., in Line and Column - - -	7
3	A Company as in Line, and a Company as in Column, taking Open order - - - - -	15
4	A Company as in Column wheeling into Line, from the Halt - - - - -	20
5	A Company as in Line wheeling into Column, from the Halt	22
6	A Company as in Line wheeling on its centre, from the Halt	27
7	A Company as in Line wheeling into Column of Sections, from the Halt - - - - -	29
8	An Open Column of Sections wheeling into Line, from the Halt - - - - -	31
9	A Company as in Line advancing from the Right in Open Column of Sections - - - - -	33
10	A Company taking ground to a flank in Echelon of Sections	34
11	A Company in Column of Sections (Right in front) forming to the Reverse flank - - - - -	36
12	Formations of Fours (with an odd file) - - - - -	38

# LIST OF PLATES.

xiii

PLATE		PAGE
13	Formations of Company from File-marching - - -	39
14	A Company as in Column (Left in front) countermarching by Ranks - - -	45
15	A Company as in Column (Left in front) countermarching by Files - - -	46
16	A Company as in Column (Right in front) forming Subdivisions - - -	47
17	An Open Column of Sections (Right in front) forming Subdivisions - - -	49
18	An Open Column of Subdivisions (Right in front) breaking off Files, and bringing them again to the front - -	52
19	A Company in Column of Subdivisions (Right in front) breaking into Files, and front forming Sections - -	53
20	Forming Close Column of Sections, and Company Square -	54

## PART II.

21	A Battalion formed in Line at Close and Open order - -	68
22	Dressing a Battalion in Line, by the Left - - -	72
23	When a Battalion advancing in Line passes Obstacles, by the Companies breaking into Fours - - -	77
24	A Battalion in Line wheeling, from the Halt, into Open Column of Companies (Right in front) - - -	85
25	A Battalion formed in Line moving in Open Column of Companies from the Right along the Rear - - -	88
26	A Battalion formed in Line advancing in Open Column from the Right - - -	90
27	A Battalion formed in Line advancing in Double Column of Subdivisions - - -	95
28	A Battalion formed in Line retiring by Companies from the Left in rear of the Right - - -	97
29	A Battalion formed in Line retreating from both flanks in rear of the Centre, in Double Column of Subdivisions -	102
30	A Battalion in Line forming Quarter-distance Column in rear of No. 1 Company - - -	105
31	A Battalion in Line forming Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) on the Left-centre Company - - -	107
32	A Battalion in Line forming Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) on the Right-centre Company, facing to the Rear	108
33	A Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) wheeling to the Left on a fixed pivot - - -	115
34	An Open Column (Right in front) moving into an Alignment by the flank march of Fours - - -	117
35	A Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) changing Front to the rear by the wheel of Subdivisions round the centre, from the Halt - - -	119

PLATE		PAGE
36	A Column at half distance (Left in front), bringing its rear Company to the front - - - - -	121
37	A Column at half distance (Right in front), bringing its rear Company to the front, on a Road - - - - -	123
38	A Column at half distance (Right in front) taking ground to the Right in Fours - - - - -	125
39	An Open Column of Companies (Right in front) wheeling into Line, from the Halt - - - - -	128
40	An Open Column (Right in front) forming Line on its leading Company, from the Halt - - - - -	131
41	An Open Column of Companies (Right in front) forming Line to the Reverse flank, at an angle less than a right angle - - - - -	137
42	A Double Column of Subdivisions, on the March, forming Line to the Front - - - - -	138
43	A Double Column of Subdivisions forming Line to the Right - - - - -	141
44	A Battalion in Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) deploying into Line on the leading Company - - - - -	144
45	A Battalion in Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) deploying into Line on the rear Company - - - - -	145
46	A Battalion in Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) deploying into Line on the Left-centre Company - - - - -	147
47	A Battalion in Line changing front to the Right by forming Open Column on No. 1 Company - - - - -	150
48	A Battalion in Line changing front by Open Column to the Right on the left-centre Company, obliquely to the old Line - - - - -	152
49	A Battalion wheeling into Echellon of Companies to the Right, from the Halt - - - - -	156
50	A Battalion in Line changing front on the Right-flank Company, the opposite flank thrown forward: obliquely to the old Line - - - - -	162
51	A Battalion in Line changing front on the Right-flank Company, the opposite flank thrown back: at right angles to the old Line - - - - -	163
52	A Battalion in Line changing front on the Right-centre Company, Left thrown forward: obliquely to the old Line - - - - -	164
53	A Battalion in Line advancing in Direct Echellon of Companies from the Left - - - - -	167
54	A Battalion that has advanced in Direct Echellon from the Left, re-forming Line at right angles to the original Line - - - - -	170
55	A Battalion four-deep Square: shewing the position of the flank files of the front-face and rear-face Companies - - - - -	171
56	A Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) forming Square on the leading Company - - - - -	174

# LIST OF PLATES.

XV


PLATE		PAGE
57	A Square formed (from Double Column of Subdivisions) on the 2 centre Subdivisions, re-forming Double Column -	179
58	Illustrations of the Officers' Salute in Line, and of Standing at Ease - - - - -	184
59	A Column Marching past in Slow time - - - - -	185
60	The Officers' Salute in Marching past in Slow time - -	187

## PART III.

61	Bugle Sounds - - - - -	226
62	Skirmishers closing on their Support - - - - -	240
63	A Battalion extending from Column - - - - -	244
64	A Battalion extending from Line - - - - -	249
65	Skirmishers and Supports closing on the Reserve - -	258
66	Formation of a Battalion after the 'Alarm' has been sounded	260
67	A Battalion in extended order advancing and retiring across a Bridge, in contact with an Enemy - - - - -	263
68	An Advanced and Rear Guard on a Road - - - - -	266
69	An Advanced Guard coming out on a Plain and extending -	268

## APPENDIX.

70-72	Positions in the <i>Manual</i> and <i>Platoon</i> - - - - -	275
73	Method of resisting Cavalry - - - - -	277
74	The Bayonet Exercise - - - - -	279

 Troops armed with the Short rifle are, for the sake of brevity, termed *Riflemen*.

The reference 'F.E.' is to the *Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry* as revised in 1861.



## ERRATA.

Page 181, line last but one. *Dele* 'Re-form Column.'

Page 203, line 14. *For* 'No. 1', *read* 'No. 2'.



## KEY TO THE ILLUSTRATIONS. &c.

### IN PARTS I, II, AND III.

<p>☉ Captain.</p> <p>☐ Covering-Serjeant.</p> <p>☐ Senior supernumerary Serjeant.</p>		<p>☉ Lieutenant.</p> <p>☉ Ensign.</p>
---	--	---------------------------------------

*In these symbols, the cross or stroke shews the present front.*

← *shews Direction and Motion.*     *A double-headed arrow indicates double time.*

<div style="border-top: 3px double black; width: 20px; margin: 0 auto;"></div>	A rear-rank man	}	the thick line shewing the present front.
<div style="border-top: 3px solid black; width: 20px; margin: 0 auto;"></div>	A front-rank man		

### IN PART II.



*A Company: the front rank being shaded, and the thick line shewing the present front.*

*N.B. This symbol is occasionally used to represent a Subdivision or Section; in which case the Company number attached to it is followed by R or L signifying Right or Left Subdivision.*



*The Colour party; the ☉ representing the Queen's Colour.*

M J M A

*Senior Major Junior Major Adjutant.*

*Want of space has, in some few cases, rendered it necessary to omit the rear rank of the Colour party.*

**\*\*** The Reader, as he looks at the Plates, is supposed to be facing the Company, or Battalion, as originally formed in Line.

When the movement is towards him (as in the advance by Double Column from the Centre), the 1<sup>st</sup> stage of it is placed at the top of the Plate: when the movement is from him (as in Retiring from both flanks in rear of the centre), it commences at the bottom of the Plate.

### TYPOGRAPHICAL DISTINCTIONS.

*The cautionary and executive words of command given in Part I. by the Drill Instructor, and in Parts II. and III. by the Battalion Commander, are distinguished as follows:—*

*Cautions are printed thus: LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.*

*Commands \_\_\_\_\_ thus: Q. MARCH.*

*In Part II. the Majors' words are printed thus: STEADY.*

## INTRODUCTION.

---

### (1) *Degrees of March, and Cadence.*

In Slow or Quick time the length of a pace is 30 inches: except in "stepping out", when it is 33 inches, and in "stepping short", when it is 10 inches.

In Double time, in which there is neither 'stepping out' nor 'stepping short', the length of a pace is 36 inches.

[When a Company (Subdivision, or Section) is *wheeling*: the file on the wheeling flank, only, takes a full pace; each of the other files shortening its pace in proportion as it is near the pivot flank.]

The length of the *Side-step*, which is always taken in Quick time, is 10 inches: except when taken to clear or cover another man (as in forming four-deep), in which case it will be 21 inches.

In Slow time	75 steps (= 62 yds. 18 in.)	} are taken in a minute.*
In Quick time	110 „ (= 91 yds. 24 in.)	
In Double time	150 „ (= 150 yards)	

The command for "marking time" from the Halt is *Mark time: Slow (Quick, or Double)*.

(F. E. I., pp. 18, 34.)

### (2) *To calculate Distance for any given number of Files.*

Since each file has a front of 21 inches (*see* p. 7), and the length of a pace is 30 inches, it follows that the number of paces required for the front of a Company will be *about* two-thirds of the number of files composing it. The following Rule will give the exact distance required.

Multiply the number of files by 7, and divide the result by 10: the quotient will give the paces, and the remainder (if any) multiplied by 3 will give the inches over.

---

\* A regular cadence in Marching was first introduced by Count (afterwards Marshal) SAXE, in 1722.

Thus : suppose 22 files—

$$22 \times 7 = 154.$$

$$154 \div 10 = 15 \text{ (paces) } 4 \text{ remainder.}$$

$$4 \times 3 = 12 \text{ (inches).}$$

Distance required = 15 paces, 12 inches.

In practice it will be sufficient to multiply by 7, and cut off the right-hand figure of the result ; disregarding any odd inches.

(3) *Meaning of the terms Pivot and Reverse, Inner and Outer, flank.*

The *Pivot* flank in all single Columns is that flank which when wheeled up to, preserves the several parts of a Company or Line in their natural order, and to their proper front. Thus : in a Column of Companies *Right in front* (i.e. with that Company leading which, when in Line, stands on the right), the front-rank *left-hand* men of Companies are the pivots on which if a wheel into Line were made, the Line would stand in its proper order. Similarly : in a Column *Left in front* (i.e. with that Company leading which, when in Line, stands on the left), the front-rank *right-hand* men of Companies will be the pivots. Hence the expression “Right in front : Left the pivot”, and *vice versa*.

The flank opposite to the pivot is termed the *Reverse* flank.

[The above explanation equally applies to a single Column of Subdivisions or Sections. A Company moving to a flank in files (or fours) is likewise said to be Right, or Left, in front according as its right-flank, or left-flank, file is leading.]

Companies (or their parts) in single Column, at whatever distance the Column may be formed, cover and dress to the pivot flank.

The *Inner* flank of a Company :—In Line, that flank which is nearest to the point of *appui* (p. 66) : in Oblique Echellon, the flank on which the wheel into echellon is made (p. 155) : in Direct Echellon, the flank next to the preceding Company (p. 165). The opposite is called the *Outer* flank.

(4) *How Officers' Swords are carried, &c.*

On all occasions when the men are under Arms, Officers' swords are drawn without any word of command.

When the men are at \*Attention, swords are held perpendicularly; the back of the blade resting against the shoulder, and the guard of the hilt (except in Marching past in Quick time) resting on the inside of the fingers.

When the men are standing at \*Ease, Officers lower the point of the sword between the feet, the edge to the right: both hands rest on the top of the hilt, the left hand covering the right.

*N.B.*—In Marching past in Quick time (PART II., No. XXXV.): swords will be held by the gripe, and carried steadily against the shoulder. (G. O. 1834.)

In Route Marching: swords are sheathed at the word *MARCH AT EASE*, and again drawn at the word *ATTENTION*.

For the Officers' Salute in Line, and the Salute in marching past in Slow time, see PART II., No. XXXV.

#### (5) *Words of Command.*

Every command must be given exactly as laid down, and loud enough to be distinctly heard by the whole Company (or Battalion, as the case may be) to which it is given.

*Cautions*, or *cautionary parts* of a command, must be given slowly: the last (or executive) part of a command, or the last word of a *caution* given as a signal for any preparatory movement [e.g. for pivot men to face], quickly and sharply.

*Examples.*—"To the Right: Half:—*Face!*"

"On the Right: backward:—*Wheel! Quick—March!*"

Every command consisting of one word must be preceded by a *caution*: thus "Company [or, in Battalion, "No.—"]:—*Halt!*"

*N.B.*—When the men are in motion, the executive part of a command must be completed as they are commencing the pace which will bring them to the spot where the command has to be executed: the *caution* therefore (each word of which should, if time permits, correspond with a pace) will be commenced accordingly. In giving the command *To the right Turn* the word *Turn* should be given as the left foot, in giving *To the left Turn* as the right foot, comes to the ground. In ordering men on the march to change the position of their rifles, the word *Arms* should be given as the right foot is coming to the ground.

Before calling men to *Attention* when they are standing easy, the caution *Eyes front* must be given.

(F. E. I., pp. 3, 66.)

---

\* Except at Open order in Line: see Plate, p. 184.



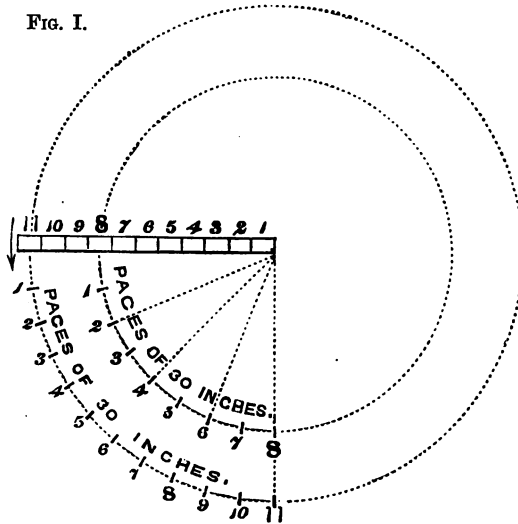
(6) *On Wheeling.*

*Wheeling the Quarter circle.*—When a Company wheels on either of its flank men, it is considered as the \*radius of a circle of which such pivot man is the centre. The front of the Company, therefore, will equal one-sixth of the line of the circumference; and, conversely, the circumference will contain 6 times as many paces as are contained in the front of the Company.

It follows, then, that if a Company, say of 21 files (for the front of which 14 paces are required) were to wheel a complete circle, the number of paces contained in the circumference of such circle would be  $14 \times 6$ , i.e. 84 paces: that if the Company were to wheel a half circle, the paces contained in the arc of the half circle would be  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 84, i.e. 42 paces: that if it wheeled a quarter circle, the number of paces in the arc of the quarter circle would be  $\frac{1}{4}$  of 84, i.e. 21 paces.

Hence the conclusion, that *the number of paces taken by the outer man of a Company wheeling the Quarter circle, is equal to the number of files of which the Company is composed.* (Fig. I.)

FIG. I.

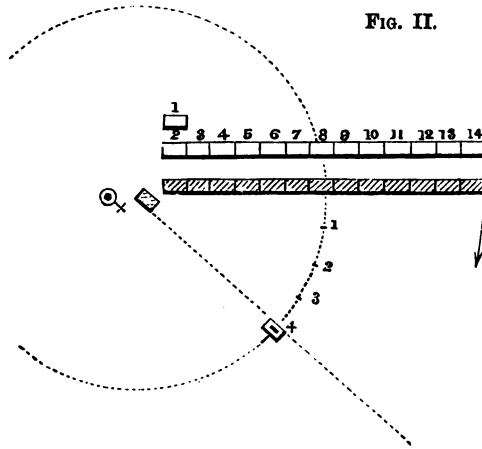


\* The circumference of a circle (i.e. the line which bounds it) is supposed to be divided into 360 degrees ( $^{\circ}$ ): any part of the circumference is termed an *arc*. The *radius* of a circle is a right line drawn from the centre to any point in the circumference, and equals about one-sixth of the line of the circumference.

Thus, when a Company wheels as many paces as it has files, it completes the quarter circle ; when it wheels half that number of paces, one-eighth of a circle ; when a quarter of that number, one-sixteenth of a circle.

It is plain, then, that if from any given file of a Company, a number of paces equal to that file's number from the pivot flank be taken, to front (or rear), along the circumference of the circle of which the pivot man is the centre, and if the Company be then wheeled up (or back) to the person who has taken the paces, it will have wheeled a Quarter circle : and, consequently, that if *half* or a *quarter* of the number of paces were taken, the Company would wheel *one-eighth* or *one-sixteenth* of a circle.

When a Company, in order accurately to obtain any degree of wheel (less than the quarter circle), is wheeled in the manner above mentioned, the paces are invariably stepped from the *eighth* file\* from the pivot man. (Fig. II.)



*N.B.*—The cautionary word WHEEL given to men at the Halt

---

\* Two paces from that file will make exactly one-sixteenth, 4 paces one-eighth, 6 paces three-sixteenths, of a circle.

will always imply a *quarter-circle* wheel; unless preceded by the words '— PACES' (see p. 25), or 'ON THE MOVE' (see p. 23).

*General Rules for Wheeling on a halted pivot.*—1. Whenever a Company is to wheel *forward*: the pivot man\* will, on the *Caution*, face to the new front and raise his right [or, if a *Rifleman*, his left] arm horizontally from the elbow; his rear-rank man at the same time uncovering, by taking a short pace to his rear and then a side-step of 21 inches towards the outer (or wheeling) flank: the latter will regain his place during the wheel, the former will drop his arm at the word *Eyes front*. When the wheel is to be *backward*—whether the men are (for the reason given in Rule 2) faced about to wheel, or not—the pivot man will face but will not raise his arm, nor will his rear-rank man uncover. The same rule applies to the pivot files of Subdivisions or Sections, except that (in the case of wheeling forward†) the pivot man of the rear Subdivision or Section of the Company, only, will keep his arm raised till *Eyes front* is given; the other pivot man, or men, dropping the arm on the word *Dress*.

When a Covering-serjeant runs out to mark where a wheeling flank is to rest, he will give his point with shouldered Arms, facing to the new front, and will raise his left arm till *Eyes front* is given.

2. A Company, or Subdivision (or Section) consisting of more than 12 files, will never be wheeled back more than, at most, the eighth of a circle without being first faced about.

During a Wheel:—The front-rank men must preserve the touch to the pivot flank and glance their eyes to the wheeling flank; yielding to any pressure coming from the former, resisting any that may come from the latter. The rear-rank men will follow their respective front-rank men, keeping their proper distances and covering.

(F. E., pp. 48, 65, 76, 83.)

#### (7) *Position and Movements of the Rifle in Marching.*

*N.B.*—While men are marching at the 'shoulder': in order that the rifle may not partake of the motion of the leg, the hand that carries it must be slightly separated from the thigh.

##### I.—With the Long Rifle.

1. If Arms are at the 'shoulder' when the word *Slow March* is given, the men will step off remaining at the 'shoulder': when

\* *i.e.* the front-rank man on the flank on which the wheel is to be made.

† *viz.*, from Column into Line. See Note, p. 32.

the word is *Quick*, or *Double*, *March*, they will come to the 'slope' as they step off. Exception :—When the word *Quick March* is preceded by *Right* (or *Left*) *Close*, the men will remain at the 'shoulder'.

When men marching in Slow time with shouldered Arms are directed to break into Quick time, they will slope as they take the first pace in that time; but when marching in Quick time at the 'slope' and ordered to take up the Slow time, they will remain at the 'slope'.

[When men marching at the 'slope' are ordered to *Fix bayonets* they will, after fixing, come to the 'shoulder' and thence to the 'slope'.]

Men marching with sloped Arms will invariably come to the 'shoulder' when they halt.

2. If Arms are at the 'order' when *Slow*, *Quick*, or *Double*, *March* is given, the men will trail as they step off. Exceptions :—If in *file*, the men will come to the 'advance'; if directed to *close*, to *step back*, or to *take any named number of paces to the front*, they will come to the 'short trail'.

When men standing at the 'order' are directed to *Form fours*, they will move at the 'short trail'.

When men marching in Quick or Double time at the 'trail' are ordered to *Shoulder*, they will come from the 'shoulder' to the 'slope', without word of command, as the right hand is dropped to the side: when marching at the 'slope' and ordered to *Trail*, they will come to the 'shoulder' and thence to the 'trail'.

When men moving with trailed Arms turn from line into file (or, while taking ground to a flank in fours, are directed to *Form two-deep*), they will come to the 'advance' as they turn (or form two-deep): resuming the 'trail' when they again turn into line, or re-form four-deep. In turning *about*: Arms if at the 'slope' will be shouldered, if at the 'trail' will be brought (by a turn of the wrist) to a perpendicular position, on the 1st pace of the turn; the original position being resumed as the men, on the 4th pace, step off in the new direction.

When men moving in file at the 'advance' halt and front into line (*see* No. XX.<sup>(9)</sup> of PART I.), they will come to the 'order'. Men marching with trailed Arms will invariably come to the 'order' when they halt.

3. For Charging in Line, *see* page 70.

## II.—With the Short Rifle.

1. If Arms are at the 'shoulder' and swords (as usual) unfixed, when the word *Slow March* is given, the men will step off remaining at the 'shoulder': when the word is *Quick*, or *Double March*, they will come to the 'trail' as they step off. Exceptions:—If the word *Quick March* is preceded by *Right* (or *Left*) *Close*, or if they are in file, the men will remain at the 'shoulder'.

If Arms are at the 'shoulder' or the 'order', and swords *fixed* (as when in Square), when the command *Quick March* is given: the men will remain at, or come to, the 'shoulder': when the word is *Double March*, they will come to the 'slope'.

2. If Arms are at the 'order' when *Slow*, *Quick*, or *Double March* is given, the men will trail as they step off. Exceptions:—If in *file*, the men will come to the 'shoulder'; if directed to *close*, to *step back*, or to *take any named number of paces to the front*, they will come to the 'short trail'.

When men standing at the 'order' are directed to *Form fours*, they will move at the 'short trail'.

[When men marching at the 'trail' are required to *Fix swords* they will, after fixing, come to (and continue to move at) the 'shoulder'.]

When men moving with trailed Arms turn from line into file (or, while taking ground in fours to a flank, are directed to *Form two-deep*), they will come to the 'shoulder' as they turn (or form two-deep): resuming the 'trail' when they again turn into line, or re-form four-deep. In turning *about*: the rifle will be brought, by a turn of the wrist, to a perpendicular position on the 1st pace of the turn; the 'trail' being resumed as the men, on the 4th pace, step off in the new direction.

When men moving in file at the 'shoulder' halt and front into line (*see* No. XX.<sup>(3)</sup> of PART I.), they will come to the 'order'. Men marching with trailed Arms will invariably come to the 'order' when they halt.

3. For Charging in Line, *see* page 70.

(F. E., pp. 136-141, 152-154.)

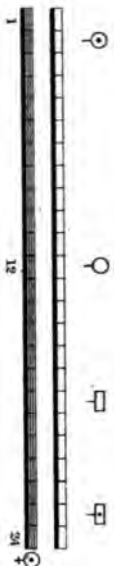
---

\* \* In the absence of the Captain, Lieutenant, or Ensign, the Officer next in rank will perform all the duties of the superior position. Serjeants will, if necessary, supply the places of Officers, and Corporals from the ranks the places of Serjeants: a non-commissioned officer, however, will not under any circumstances move out in front of the line.

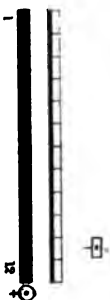
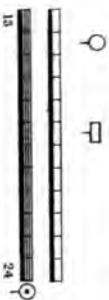


# *Posting of Officers, Covering Sergeant, and senior supernumerary Sergeant, in Line and Column.*

## *I. In a Company as in Column (Right in front).*

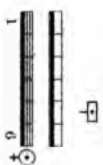
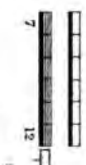
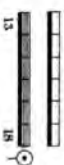


## *II. In a Company formed in Column of Subdivisions (Right in front).*

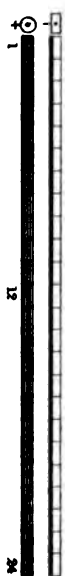


R. D. M. 101.

## *III. In a Company formed in Column of Sections (Right in front).*



## *IV. In a Company as in Line.*



## PART I.—COMPANY DRILL.

---

### (A.) FORMATION OF THE COMPANY.

A Company falls in in two ranks at Close order, with shouldered [*Riflemen* with ordered] Arms, bayonets [or swords] unfixed, the files lightly touching to the flank file first placed: and having been numbered from right to left, is told off into 2 Subdivisions and 4 Sections. (*See* p. 13.)

The left file of the right Subdivision will (except in wheeling on the centre to the *right*: *see* p. 27) be considered the centre of the Company.

*Note*—Odd numbers are ‘right’ files, even numbers ‘left’ files. Should the file on the left of the Company, however, be an odd number, it will act as a ‘left’ file; and the left-but-one file—although an even number—will act as a ‘right’ file: so that when Fours are formed, the left four of the Company may always be complete: *see* Plate, p. 38. If there is a *blank* file (*i.e.* a file without a rear-rank man), it will be placed the 3rd from the left of the Company.

Each man, as he stands in the ranks, will occupy an average space of 21 inches. When standing at *Attention*, the hand not carrying the rifle is turned flat to the thigh, with the thumb close to the fore-finger and at the trowser’s seam: the knees are straight, heels closed, feet at an angle of 60°.

[*Sizing*.—A Company is sized from flanks to centre, thus:—The men are first formed in single rank according to their height: the tallest man being placed on the right, the shortest on the left. The right-hand man is then directed to take 3 paces to the front; the next man to place himself 3 paces in front of the left-hand man of the rank; the third tallest man to place himself on the left of the right-hand man, the fourth tallest on the right of the left-hand man, of the new rank: and so on alternately till the rank is complete. The men are next numbered off from the right, and told off into Subdivisions; and (the left-hand man of the rank, if a right file, having first been cautioned to stand fast) the left files of the Right Subdivision, and the right files of the Left, are directed to take 1 pace to the rear. The whole are then closed on the centre file, and ordered to dress by the right. When the men have once been sized, they should remember their proper places.]

At Close order the rear rank is distant 1 pace, at Open or-



der 3 paces, from the front rank : the paces being measured from the heels of the one rank to the heels of the other.

*Exception.*—When a Company in Column takes Open order on the march, the rear rank marks time only one pace ; and will, consequently, when at Open order, be *two* paces from the front rank. (*See* page 19.)

*N.B.*—When a Company falls in singly, it will be formed as a Company in Line : but will be drilled as though it were with the Battalion. The *Caution* given previously to each movement will state the supposed formation of the Battalion, thus : AS A COMPANY IN LINE, or AS A COMPANY IN †COLUMN : RIGHT (*or* LEFT) IN FRONT : and the Officers and Covering-serjeant, if not already in their places, will take post accordingly. (F. E., pp. 31, 50, 59, 62.)

#### (B.) POSTING OF OFFICERS AND COVERING-SERJEANT.

##### (1) *In a Company in Line at Close Order—*

The *Captain* is on the right of the front rank. The Subalterns are in the supernumerary rank, three paces from the rear rank : the *Lieutenant* posted in rear of the 2nd file from the left, the *Ensign* in rear of the centre, of the Company.

The *Covering-serjeant* is on the right of the rear rank.

(F. E., p. 69.)

In Line, the supernumerary rank always retains its distance of 3 paces from the rear rank, with which it will therefore step backward, or forward, on all occasions : the principal duty of the Officers and non-commissioned officers composing it, is to keep the other ranks closed up during the attack, and to correct any mistake that may occur while manœuvring.

##### (2) *In a Company in Column—*

The *Captain* is on the pivot flank of the front rank. The Subalterns are in the supernumerary rank, one pace from the rear rank : the *Lieutenant* posted in rear of the 2nd file from the reverse flank, the *Ensign* (as in Line) in rear of the centre, of the Company.

The *Covering-serjeant* is one pace in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank.

(F. E., p. 71.)

[For an explanation of the pivot flank in Column, *see* (3), page 2.]

---

† Meaning *open* Column (*see* p. 82), unless it is otherwise expressed.

(3) *In a Company formed in Column of Subdivisions—*

The *Captain* is on the pivot flank of the front Subdivision. The *Lieutenant* is on the pivot flank of the rear Subdivision: the *Ensign* one pace in rear of the 2nd file from its reverse flank.

The *Covering-serjeant* is one pace in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank of the front Subdivision.

(4) *In a Company formed in Column of Sections—*

The *Captain* is on the pivot flank of the leading Section: the *Lieutenant* on the pivot flank of the 3rd Section: the *Ensign* on the pivot flank of the 4th Section. [The 2nd Section is led by the senior supernumerary Serjeant.]

The *Covering-serjeant*, except in the absence of a leader for the 2nd Section, is one pace in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank of the leading Section.

*N.B.*—When a Column retires, Company (Subdivision, or Section) leaders march aligned with the proper rear rank.

(5) *In File-marching, and the flank march by Fours—*

The *Captain* is placed next to the front-rank man of the leading file, or four, of his Company. The *Lieutenant* marches on the reverse flank of the 2nd file, or four, from the present rear: the *Ensign* retains his position in rear of the centre, simply facing (or turning) with the Company.

The *Covering-serjeant* leads the front rank.

(F. E., pp. 81, 82, 97.)

## (C.) RULE FOR CHANGING FLANKS.

The following are the only occasions on which flanks are changed by the front:—

By *Captains*:—<sup>(1)</sup>In wheeling from Column right in front into Line, and *vice versa*, on a moveable pivot\*: <sup>(2)</sup>in formations to the front from File or Fours†: and <sup>(3)</sup>when the

\* See pp. 21, 23.

† See p. 39.

Company (Subdivision, or Section) they are leading, *faces* [or turns] to the reverse flank.\* (4) A right-wing Captain in changing flank before closing, will cross (in double time) by the front; re-passing by the rear, as usual: see pp. 43, 63.

By *Subalterns*:—(1) When the Subdivision (or Section) they are leading takes ground in file, or by fours, to the reverse flank.\*

The *Covering-serjeant* invariably changes by the rear.

The *Lieutenant* (except in closing), and the *Covering-serjeant* (except in closing, or when required to take a point), always change flank when the Captain changes.

[Whenever flanks are changed by the front on the march, it will be done in the time at which the men are moving: on all other occasions it will be done in double time.]

*N.B.*—When the leader of a Company (Subdivision, or Section) in Column changes his flank on the March, he will give *By the Right*, or *By the Left* [or, when retiring, *By the present Left* (or *Right*)], as he places himself on the new flank; if the change is made during a wheel, the above words will immediately follow the word *Forward*. (F. E., pp. 65, 66.)

#### (D.) DRESSING.

An Officer dressing a Company should fix upon some object (should no point be placed) beyond the distant flank man; and having dressed the first 2 or 3 files, should proceed to †dress the line—gradually and progressively, but without unnecessary delay—from the fixed to the flank point: the men's faces form the line of dressing.

The command will be *Eyes right* (or *left*): *Dress* [or, after *Halt*, the word *Dress* only]. Shouting to the men and gesticulating with the sword, while dressing, should be avoided.

In Column, on the word *Dress*, the men will correct their own dressing.

---

\* See pp. 38, 53. By changing flank by the 'front', in these cases, is meant changing by the *original* front of the Company (Subdivision, or Section); not the direction in which the men are facing while in file or fours.

† Dress: from the French *redresser*, 'to straighten'.

No. I.—*Formation of the Parade, and how to Inspect and Prove a Company.*

(F. E., pp. 113, 196.)

*On the Parade Call sounding* :—The Companies fall in, in Squads, on their private parades.

The 2nd squad of each Company will be in rear of the 1st : the 3rd squad will be in line with the 1st, with an interval between them. The 4th squad will be in rear of the 3rd, and aligned with the 2nd.

The *Lieutenant* has the superintendence of the 1st and 2nd squads (or Right Subdivision) : the *Ensign* of the 3rd and 4th squads (or Left Subdivision).

Both Subalterns will minutely inspect their squads, and will then give *Stand at Ease* and report to the *Captain*,\* who, on the *CLOSE* being sounded, will give—

*Form Company.*

*Company : Attention.*

†[*Order Arms.*]

*Fix : bayonets (or swords).*

*Shoulder : Arms.*

*Rear rank take Open order.—March.*

*Port : Arms.*

*Half-cock : Arms.*

The *Captain* then, followed by his Subalterns, passes down the front and up the rear rank ; to ascertain that the locks and sights of the rifles are serviceable and clean, and the nipples free from rust. As he finishes the inspection of each rank, he will give—

— *rank* :  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Ease springs.} \\ \textit{Shoulder Arms.—Order Arms.} \end{array} \right.$

---

\* In some Regiments the *Lieutenant* calls the Company to *Attention*, and then hands it over to the *Captain*.

† Not given to *Riflemen*, who fall in at the 'order'.

He then gives—

*Examine : Arms.*

*Rod.*

*Home.*

and passes along each rank, as before, to ascertain, from the state of the rag in the jag of each ramrod, whether the insides of the barrels are clean or otherwise.

As he finishes the inspection of each rank, he will give—

— *rank : Return.*

He then passes along the front and rear of each rank, to inspect the appointments, clothing, &c., and having finished the inspection, gives—

*Unfix : bayonets (or swords).*

*Rear rank take Close order.—March.*

*Stand at : Ease.*

The Drill Instructor having, if the Company is singly formed, given the word *TELL OFF AS A RIGHT (or LEFT) COMPANY*, the *Captain* (or one of his Subalterns) will proceed to tell off and prove the Company: thus—

*Company : Attention.*

*Number off.*

The number of files being ascertained, the Officer who is proving the Company will immediately divide it into 2 Subdivisions, and 4 Sections, thus:—

(Supposing there are 24 files)

*No. 12 : left of the Right Subdivision.*

*No. 13 : right of the Left.*

*Nos. 6, 12, 18, 24 : left of Sections.*

*Note.*—Should there be an uneven number of files in the Company, one Subdivision must, of course, be stronger than the other. When this is the case in a *Right Company* (*i.e.* one whose number, as it stands in the Battalion, is odd), the odd file will be included in the Right Subdivision: in a *Left Company* (*i.e.* one whose number in the Battalion is even), the odd file will be in the

**Left Subdivision.** When the 2 Sections of *either* Subdivision are unequal, the stronger of the two will be that on the outer flank.

(F. E., p. 60.)

Thus: in a *Right* Company consisting of 27 files, No. 14 will be the left-hand man of the Right Subdivision, and Nos. 7, 14, 20, 27 left of Sections; in a *Left* Company of 27 files, No. 13 will be the left-hand man of the Right Subdivision, and Nos. 7, 13, 20, 27 left of Sections. (See APPENDIX III.)

The Company having been told off as above, the Officer will proceed to prove it: thus—

\* [*Shoulder: Arms.*]

† *Mark time: Quick.*

(When in echellon)

*By Subdivisions: Right wheel. Mark Time. — Re-form Company.*

*By Subdivisions: Left wheel. ditto. ditto.*

*By Sections: Right wheel. ditto. ditto.*

*By Sections: Left wheel. ditto. ditto.*

[The Company will then be turned to the *Right-about*, and proved, by the above words of command, rear rank in front.]

*Halt: front.*

§ † *Form fours: deep. ——— Front.*

*Form fours: right. ——— ditto.*

*Form fours: left. ——— ditto.*

*Form fours: about. ——— ditto.*

† *Mark time: Quick.*

*Right-about: turn.*

‡ *Form fours: deep. ——— Form: two-deep.*

*Form fours: right. ——— Rear: turn.*

*Form fours: left. ——— Rear: turn.*

*Halt: front.*

\* § *Riflemen* will commence proving from the 'order': in forming Fours from the 'order', they will move at the 'short trail'. See p. 6.\*

† The rules given in the Introduction (7), for bringing the rifle to the 'slope' (or 'trail', as the case may be) on stepping off, apply equally when men are ordered to *Mark time* from the *Halt*.

‡ For instructions for forming Fours while halted and marking time, see pp. 38, 41.

- \* *As the right-centre Company in a Quarter-distance Column—  
On the leading Company : Form Square.—Quick : March.  
Sections : outwards.  
Re-form : Column.—Quick : March.—Halt : dress.*
- 

† [*Right Sections (1st and 3rd)—Order : Arms.  
Left Sections (2nd and 4th)—Order : Arms.*]

- ‡ *Form Close Column of Sections.—Quick : March.  
Unfix bayonets (or swords).  
Re-form Company.—Quick March.*
- 

*Right Subdivision—Stand at : Ease.  
Left Subdivision—Stand at : Ease.*

---

If the Company is to be put through the *Manual* and *Platoon* (for words of command see APPENDIX I.) the Officer will give—

*Company : Attention.  
Shoulder : Arms.*

*For Manual Exercise : Rear rank take Open order.—March.*

---

Before commencing Company or Battalion movements, troops armed with the long rifle will—unless they are to move as light infantry—be ordered to fix bayonets. *Riflemen* will remain with swords unfixd.

☞ For *General Rules for Covering-serjeants*, see p. 195.

---

\* Or as any other side-face Company in a Column. (See PART II., No. XXX.)

† These commands do not apply to *Riflemen*, who will have come to the 'order' on halting.

‡ For directions for this movement, see No. XX.

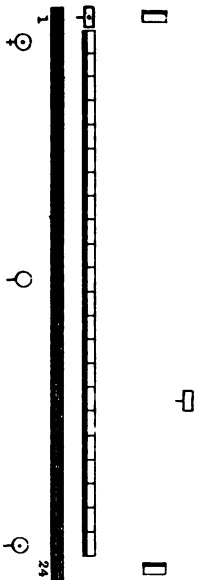
1



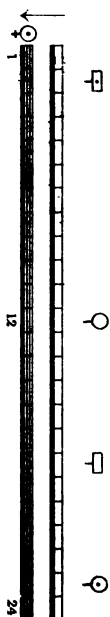
Column (B)

on the March.

I. REAR RANK TAKE OPEN ORDER.



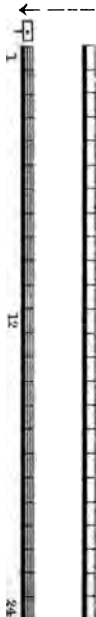
I. Forward. By the right.



II. MARCH.-Steady-Eyes front.



II. Rear rank take Open order.



W. D. M. Ltd.

Vincent Brooks, Ltd.

No. II.—*A Company as in Line taking Open order, and resuming Close order.*

(F. E. II., SEC. 1, p. 69.)

3 A COMPANY  
IN LINE.

Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Line*. (p. 8.)

(A) *Taking Open order.*

REAR RANK TAKE  
OPEN ORDER.

*MARCH.*

[*On the word ORDER*—The flank men of the rear rank will step back 2 paces, and face to their right. *On the word MARCH*—They will front, and raise the right—or, if *Riflemen*, the left—arm (horizontally from the elbow) till the word *Rear rank: Eyes front* is given.]

(1) *On the word ORDER*—

The Officers recover swords. The *Captain* moves out and places himself one pace in front of the 2nd file from the right of the Company: the *Lieutenant* and *Ensign* (both passing round the left flank) place themselves one pace from the front rank, in front of the same files they respectively covered when in rear.

The *Covering-serjeant* takes a side-step of 21 inches to his left, into the place vacated by the right-hand man of the rear rank.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—

The Officers take 2 paces to their front. The *Lieutenant* and *Ensign* then look to their right; and the *Captain*, glancing to his left, will dress them and then give the word *Steady*.

The *Covering-serjeant* takes a side-pace to the right, and then a pace to the front into the place vacated by the *Captain*.

[The Serjeant on the right of the supernumerary rank will dress the rear and supernumerary ranks, giving *Eyes front* as the dressing of each rank is completed.<sup>6</sup>]

(3) *On the Captain's word 'Steady'—*

The Officers port their swords, and look to their front.

The GENERAL SALUTE (*see* PART II., No. XXXV.) may then be practised.

*Note.*—If, while the ranks are opened as above, the word *STAND AT EASE* is given:—the Officers, on assuming the position of Standing at Ease, will bring their hands together, the left supporting the right; so that the back of the sword may rest on the inside of the left arm. On the word *ATTENTION*, they will bring their swords again to the 'port.'

(B) *Resuming Close order.*

REAR RANK TAKE  
CLOSE ORDER.

*MARCH.*

(1) *On the word ORDER—*

The Officers face to the right, bringing their swords to the 'recover' as the right foot is drawn to the rear.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The *Lieutenant* and *Ensign* (both passing round the left flank of the Company) move to their places in the supernumerary rank. The *Captain* will then resume his place on the right of the front rank.

Each Officer on arriving at his place will front (right-about), and carry his sword.

The *Covering-serjeant* takes two paces to his rear and one pace to his left: and when the supernumerary Officers have passed to the rear and the *Captain* is in his place, takes one pace to the right and one pace to the front into his place in Line.

---

*See the corresponding No. (I.) of PART II., p. 68.*

No. III.—*Marching to the Front and Rear.*

(F. E. II., SEC. 3, p. 72.)

[When men step off at the 'trail' (or are ordered to trail on the march),\* the rear rank will make its first pace a short one (or will step short one pace); regaining its distance, on coming to the halt (or being ordered to 'advance', or 'shoulder', on the march), by taking a long pace. See F. E., p. 46.]

AS A COMPANY  
IN —.

Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Line* or *Column*. (p. 8.)

(A) *Advancing.*

THE LINE  
[or COLUMN]  
WILL ADVANCE.

<sup>(1)</sup> *On the word ADVANCE—*

The *Captain* will select some distant object about 150 yards straight to his front, and will then observe some nearer point (such as a stone or tuft of grass) in the same straight line, about 70 yards distant; on which to march.

S. (Q. or D.)  
MARCH.

<sup>(2)</sup> *On the word MARCH—*

All step off: the *Captain*, from time to time as may be necessary, choosing fresh points to march upon; never having fewer than two such points.†

(B) *Retiring.*

[When the Company has faced about, the uncovered proper front-rank man (should there be a blank file) steps up in line with the proper rear rank: he will resume his place after halting and fronting, or turning to the front.]

THE LINE  
[or COLUMN]  
WILL RETIRE.

RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.

*On the word FACE—*

The *Captain*, if the Company is as in *Column*, will step up in line with the proper rear rank,

S. (Q. or D.)  
MARCH.

\* See Introduction (7).

† These points are termed by the French, *points de vue*.

and select points to march upon: if as in Line, will remain in his place in the proper front rank.

*N.B.*—After *turning* to the Right-about, which is done in 3 short paces, men move off at the 4th pace in the new direction: no word *FORWARD* being given.

### ¶ The Diagonal March.

TAKE GROUND  
TO THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT) BY  
THE DIAGONAL  
MARCH.  
  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
HALF TURN.

When a Company as in Column, marching to the front or rear, is ordered to take ground to a flank by the Diagonal March:—If the half turn is to the pivot flank, the *Captain* will lead the Company: if to the reverse flank, and the *Captain* is not ordered to change his flank, the *Lieutenant* will move up and lead. (See page 127.)

[The men will no longer keep the touch, but will march in echelon with each other. Each man, glancing towards the leading flank (suppose the *right*) will regulate his pace so as to keep his right shoulder behind the left shoulder of his neighbour on that flank, taking care that his neighbour's head conceals from him the heads of the remainder of the rank. The rear-rank men must carefully preserve their relative positions with their front-rank men, so as to cover correctly when they are halted and fronted.]

(F. E., pp. 49, 97.)

---

When men are marching in slow or quick time, the hand not carrying the rifle will be kept in its usual position at *Attention*; when they are moving at the double, it will be raised as high as the waist, elbow carried back, fist clenched, flat part of the arm close to the side.

# No. IV.—*Marching past in Slow and Quick Time.*

(F. E. II., Sec. 13, p. 86.)

[Open order is taken, on the March, by the rear rank marking time one pace; and Close order is resumed by the rear rank lengthening its pace.]

AS A COMPANY  
IN COLUMN  
RIGHT IN FRONT.

*SLOPE ARMS.*

MARCH PAST IN  
SLOW TIME.  
*SLOW MARCH.*

(When the Company  
reaches its original  
ground)—

\* COMPANY:  
*HALT.*

\* MARCH PAST IN  
QUICK TIME.  
*QUICK MARCH.*

(When the Company  
reaches its original  
ground)—

COMPANY:  
*HALT.*

Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Column Right in front.* (p. 8.)

\*.\* Before commencing this movement, the Drill Instructor will place 4 Points, marking the angles of an oblong of which the long sides will be 80 paces in length, the short sides 30 (or more, if the Company is strong). The left of the Company will rest on the centre of one of the long sides of the oblong; the side opposite to which will be called the Saluting base. A 5th Point, called the Saluting-point, will be placed 4 paces outside the centre of the Saluting base and facing toward the flank of the Company. The men marking the angles will face in the same direction as the Company. [If more convenient, the points may be Camp colours.]

The Company will wheel round the 1st and up to the 2nd Point, take Open and resume Close order, wheeling again at the 3rd and round the 4th Point; and the *Captain, Covering-serjeant*, and *Subalterns* will proceed; as directed in No. XXXV. of PART II.

See also Plate, p. 15.

---

\* Or, without halting, BREAK INTO QUICK TIME. *QUICK.*

No. V.—*A Company as in Column wheeling into Line.*

(F. E. II., SECS. 4, 10, pp. 72, 83.)

(A) *From the Halt.\**

AS A COMPANY  
IN COLUMN  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
IN FRONT.

LEFT (or RIGHT)  
WHEEL  
INTO LINE.

Q. MARCH.

Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Column—*  
*in front.* (p. 8.)

[On the word *LINE*—The pivot man will face and raise his arm, and his rear-rank man will uncover: as directed in the *Gen. Rules for Wheeling* (p. 6).]

(1) *On the word LINE—*

The *Captain* moves out, and places himself one pace in front of the 2nd file from the pivot flank of the Company, facing to the front.

† The *Covering-serjeant* runs out to mark the spot where the reverse flank of the Company will rest in *Line*: standing (with shouldered Arms) facing towards the new front. He will raise his left arm; looking to his left, if the wheel is to be to the left, and *vice versa*; and aligning himself with the pivot man.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The *Captain* turns towards the men, and moves back round the pivot man, to be ready to dress the Company from the pivot flank.

During the wheel, the *Lieutenant* (if in rear of the right) moves to his place in *Line*, and the supernumerary rank gains its distance of 3 paces from the rear rank.

When the wheeling flank of the Company is

\* See Note on next page.

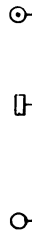
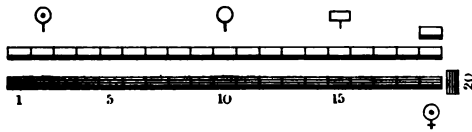
† In this movement the Company is supposed to be the *front* Company of an open Column: see Plate, p. 128.

# ART 1. COMPANY DRILL. Nº V. A Company as in Column wheeling into Line, from the Hale.

20

When Right is in front.

I. On the Caution.



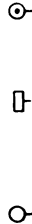
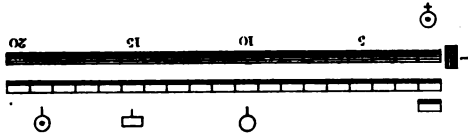
II. The Movement completed.



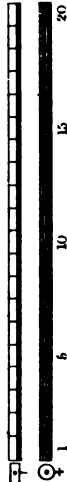
W.D. M. 1861.

When Left is in front.

I. On the Caution.



II. The Movement completed.







2 paces in rear of the Covering-serjeant, the *Captain* gives *Company*: *halt. Dress*: and having dressed the men, gives *Eyes front*, and (changing flank, if necessary) falls into his place in Line.

The *Covering-serjeant*, at the word *Eyes front*, drops his arm and falls into his place on the right of the rear rank.

(B) *On a Moveable pivot.*†

*LEFT (or  
RIGHT) WHEEL  
INTO LINE.*

(When square)—  
*FORWARD.*

(1) *On the word LINE—*

The *Captain*—If Right is in front, moves straight on to his front (at a short pace) during the wheel, so as to meet the right of the Company as it completes the quarter circle, taking post on that flank at the word *FORWARD*: if Left is in front, remains in his place, bringing his left shoulder round with the Company.

In the former case the *Lieutenant* will move to his place in Line; and in either case the supernumerary rank will gain its proper distance from the rear rank; during the wheel.

The *Covering-serjeant* if Right is in front, will move along the rear; if Left is in front, will move up; to his place in Line, during the wheel.

(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The Company will advance in Line.

† *Note.*—A wheel is said to be made on a “halted (or standing) pivot” when—the Company being at the Halt—the pivot man, on the *Caution*, *faces* into the named direction: on a “moveable pivot” when—the Company being on the move—the pivot man brings his inner shoulder gradually round with the other men, at the same time circling round the wheeling point with very short paces. See *OBS.*, page 23.

---

See the corresponding No. (XIX.) of PART II., p. 128.

## No. VI.—*A Company as in Line wheeling into Column.*

(F. E. II., SECS. 5, 10, pp. 74, 84.)

### (A) *From the Halt: backward.\**

AS A COMPANY  
IN LINE.  
  
OPEN COLUMN  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
IN FRONT.  
  
† RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.  
  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
WHEEL:  
Q. MARCH.

Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Line*. (p. 8.)

[On the word **FRONT**—The pivot man will face as directed in the *Gen. Rules for Wheeling* (p. 6).]

(1) *On the word FRONT—*

The *Captain* moves out and places himself one pace in front of the centre of the Company, facing to the front.

‡ The *Covering-serjeant* (not shewn in the Plate, at this period of the movement, for want of space) runs out to the rear, to mark the spot where the wheeling flank of the Company will rest in Column: facing (with shouldered Arms) to the new front, and raising his left arm.

(2) *On the word FACE—*

All (except the *Covering-serjeant* and pivot man) go to the right-about.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The *Captain* moves towards the pivot man, and (if Right is to be in front) the *Lieutenant* moves to his place in Column.

When the Company has wheeled back a full quarter-circle, the *Captain* gives *Company*:

---

\* *i.e.* to the rear of the present alignment.

† The intended wheel being more than the eighth of a circle: see *General Rules for Wheeling* (p. 6).

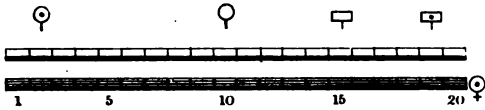
‡ In this movement the Company is considered the *right* (or *left*) flank Company of a Battalion in Line: see Plate, p. 85.

# PART I. COMPANY DRILL. NO VI. A Company as in Line wheeling into Column, from the Halt.

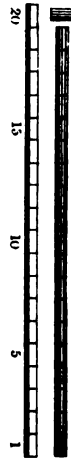
22

When Right is to be in front.

II. The Movement completed.

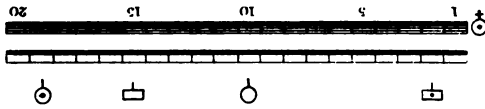


I. After the Caution, and the word  
RIGHT-ABOUT FACE.

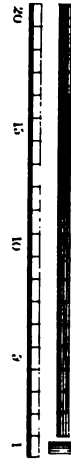


When Left is to be in front.

II. The Movement completed.



I. After the Caution, and the word  
RIGHT-ABOUT FACE.





*Halt, front*: *dress*, falls in at once on the pivot flank, and looks to his front.

The *Covering-serjeant*, at the same time, drops his arm and moves to his place in Column: and the supernumerary rank, which will have fronted with the Company, steps up to its proper distance from the rear rank.

‡ When a Company as in Line is intended to wheel into Column on a *moveable pivot from the Halt*, the word will be ON THE MOVE: RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL. Q. MARCH: and the movement will proceed as in (B).

(B) *On a Moveable pivot: forward.*

COMPANY:  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
WHEEL.

(When square)—  
FORWARD.

(1) *On the word WHEEL—*

The *Captain*—If the wheel is to the Right, moves across (at a short pace) to meet the wheeling flank of the Company, as in No. V. (B): if to the Left, remains on the right flank and wheels with the Company.

In the former case, the *Lieutenant* will move to his proper place in Column; and in either case the supernumerary rank will close up to its proper distance; during the wheel.

The *Covering-serjeant* if the wheel is to the right, will move along the rear; if to the left, will fall back; to his place in Column, during the wheel.

(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The whole will advance; the touch being kept to the pivot flank.

‡ OBS. The words ON THE MOVE preceding the caution RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL given to men

at the *Halt* imply that the pivot man (or men), instead of facing into the named direction at the word *WHEEL*, will stand fast till the word *MARCH*, when the wheel will proceed exactly as if made on the *March*. Whenever, therefore, halted men are required to wheel so that *HALT* or *FORWARD* may be given at any period of the wheel, the caution must be preceded by the words *ON THE MOVE*.

---

¶ *A Column changing Direction.*

THE COLUMN  
WILL CHANGE  
DIRECTION  
TO THE —.

(When the front of  
leading Subdivision,  
or Section, is perpen-  
dicular to intended  
direction)—  
*FORWARD*.

When a Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) on the *March* is cautioned to *CHANGE DIRECTION* to either flank, the front Company (Subdivision, or Section) will immediately receive from its leader *Right* (or *Left*) *wheel*; and on the word *FORWARD* from the Drill Instructor, will move on in the new direction. Each of the other Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) in succession will receive from its leader the word *Right* (or *Left*) *wheel* on reaching the spot where the first wheeled, and the word *Forward* when its front becomes perpendicular to the new direction.

To whichever flank the wheel may be made, Officers do not change their positions; the pivot flank of the Column remaining unchanged.

(F. E. II., Sec. 11.)

---

See pp. 85, 117.

No. VII.—*A Company as in Line or Column wheeling any given number of Paces on either Flank, from the Halt.*

(F. E. II., SEC. 6, p. 75.)

[*On the Caution*—The pivot man will face into the new front (and, if the wheel is forward, will raise his arm; his rear-rank man uncovering): as directed in the *Gen. Rules for Wheeling*.]

- PACES RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL;  
or  
- PACES ON THE LEFT (or RIGHT) BACKWARD WHEEL.  
Q. *MARCH*.

(1) *On the word WHEEL*—

The *Captain* places himself on the pivot flank [*i.e.* on that flank on which the wheel is to be made], facing inwards: and corrects the position of the pivot man.

The *Covering-serjeant* places himself with his back to the 8th file from the pivot, in front or rear of that file according as the wheel is to be made forward or backward: and having taken the named number of paces along the circumference of the circle of which the pivot is the centre (see Fig. II., p. 5), will halt [or halt and face about].

(2) *On the word MARCH*—

All (except the *Captain*, *Covering-serjeant*, and pivot man) step forward or back. As the 8th file from the pivot reaches the *Covering-serjeant*, the *Captain* gives *Halt*: † *dress*: dresses the Company from the pivot flank (taking care not to move either the 8th or the pivot file), gives *Eyes front*, and falls in on the pivot flank.

The *Covering-serjeant*, at the word *Eyes front*, takes post on the reverse flank of the Company, aligned with the front rank.

† *Note*.—If the Company is to wheel backward (*i.e.* to the rear of the alignment it occupies) more



than 4 paces, and will consequently have to face about before wheeling; the word *RIGHT-ABOUT FACE* will not be given by the Drill Instructor till *after* the *Caution* [— PACES, &c.], and till the pivot man has faced, and the Covering-serjeant—having taken his 5 or 6 paces to the rear—has halted and faced about. The Captain's word will, in that case, be *Halt*, front: *dress*.

See pp. 130, 134, 155, 164.

---

¶ The Company will occasionally be required by the Drill Instructor to face about; *then* to wheel 4 paces forward to the Coverer (as a thrown-back Company of a Battalion in Line changing front by Echelon on fixed pivots, *see* p. 164), or backward to the Coverer (as a thrown-back Company of an open Column forming Line on a rear Company, *see* pp. 133, 134); and to remain facing to the rear until ordered to *FRONT*.

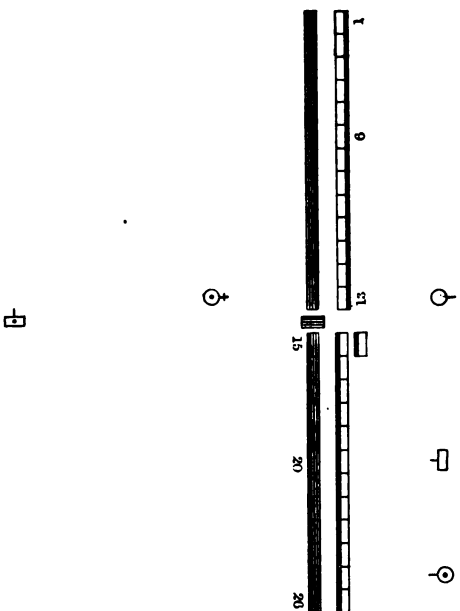
In either of those cases, the *Caution* '— PACES, &c.' being given while the Company is standing rear rank in front, the proper rear-rank man of the pivot file will act as pivot man (the proper front-rank man uncovering, if the wheel is to be forward): in short, the movement will proceed in every respect as explained at p. 25 for a Company standing front rank in front.

---

On the *Caution* AS A COMPANY IN LINE (or IN COLUMN,—IN FRONT):—The Covering-serjeant, and the Captain and Lieutenant (unless already in their places), will take post according to the formation named.

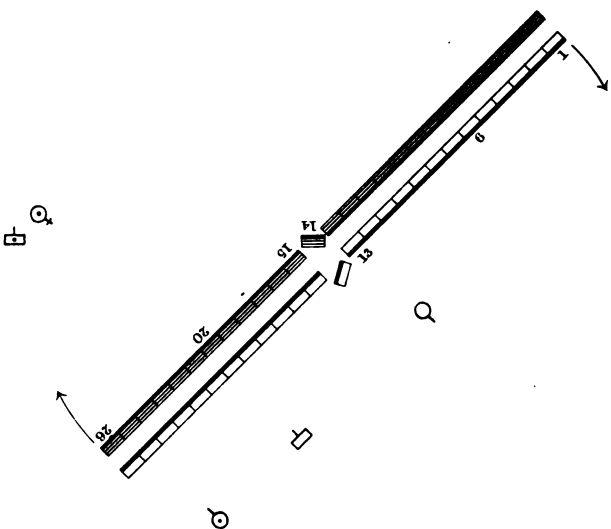


I. On the Centre, Right wheel. Right  
Subdivision: Right-about face.

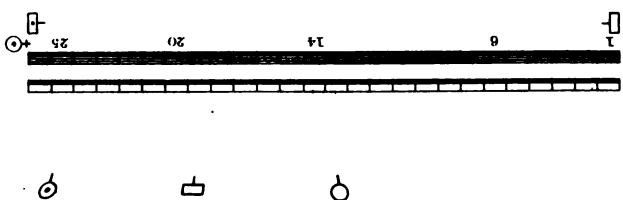


W. D. M. del.

II. Q. March.



III. Halt, front: dress



No. VIII.—*A Company as in Line wheeling on the Centre, from the Halt.*

(F. E. II., Sec. 7, p. 79.)

[One Subdivision will wheel forward, the other backward: the latter, if it exceeds 12 files, and the wheel is more than the eighth of a circle, being faced about and wheeled rear rank in front.\* In this wheel, the front-rank man on the inner flank of the wheeling-forward Subdivision will be the pivot man; facing, and his rear-rank man uncovering, as directed in the *Gen. Rules for Wheeling* (p. 6).]

THE COMPANY  
WILL WHEEL  
IN THE CENTRE  
[— PACES]  
TO THE  
RIGHT (or LEFT).  
(At the completion of  
the Movement)—  
STEADY.

(1) *On the word RIGHT (or LEFT)—*

The *Captain* will step out 3 paces in front of the centre of the Company, face towards the men, and give the caution *On the centre: Right (or Left) wheel*, or *On the centre:—paces to the right (or left) wheel*.

The *Covering-serjeant*, if the Company is to wheel a quarter circle, will move out to mark the spot where the outer flank of the wheeling-forward Subdivision will rest; aligning himself with the pivot man. If the paces are named, he will step them from the 8th file from the centre of the Company, counting towards the flank that wheels forward. [His rifle, in either case, to be at the 'shoulder'.]

(2) The *Captain* will then give [*\*Left (or Right) Subdivision: Right-about face.*] *Q. March*; move to the flank that is wheeling forward; and the required degree of wheel being completed, will give the word *Halt* [or, if the

---

\* See General Rules for Wheeling (p. 6).

retiring Subdivision was faced about, *Halt: front*].

On the Captain's word *Halt (front)*—The *Coverer* and senior supernumerary Serjeant will place themselves as base points in front of the Company; the former on the flank that wheeled forward, the latter on the opposite flank; facing inwards, with Arms at the 'recover', and holding out the inner arm with the fist clenched. See p. 67.

The base points being placed, the *Captain* will give the word *Dress*; and having dressed the Company up to the hands of the base points, and given *Eyes front*, will take his proper post in Line.

On the Drill Instructor's word *STEADY*—The *Coverer* and senior supernumerary Serjeant will take post in Line.

In this movement the Company is considered as the (central) Company of formation in a *change of front in Line by Echelon, on fixed pivots* (p. 164). Wheeling on the centre, however, should also be practised '*On the move*': see No. XXVII. (C) of PART II., p. 163.

¶ The Drill Instructor may occasionally require the Company when in Line to wheel into Column, or when in Column to wheel into Line, on the centre;\* in which case he will himself give the words **ON THE CENTRE:—WHEEL Q. MARCH** (and, if necessary, **RIGHT-ABOUT FACE** to the retiring Subdivision). The Captain: on the caution, will place himself one pace in front of the centre of the Subdivision that is to wheel forward, facing to the front; on the word **MARCH**, will turn towards the men and move to the flank marked by the Coverer; and the quarter-circle wheel being completed, will give *Halt (front): dress*, or *Halt (front): dress.—Eyes front*, and take post in Column or Line as the case may be.

---

\* As might possibly be necessary on the line of march: the case does not occur in parade movements.

# No. VIII.—*A Company as in Line wheeling on the Centre, from the Halt.*

(F. E. II., SEC. 7, p. 79.)

[One Subdivision will wheel forward, the other backward: the latter, if it exceeds 12 files, and the wheel is more than the eighth of a circle, being faced about and wheeled rear rank in front.\* In this wheel, the front-rank man on the inner flank of the wheeling-forward Subdivision will be the pivot man; facing, and his rear-rank man uncovering, as directed in the *Gen. Rules for Wheeling* (p. 6).]

THE COMPANY  
WILL WHEEL  
IN THE CENTRE  
[— PACES]  
TO THE  
RIGHT (or LEFT).

(At the completion of  
the Movement)—  
STEADY.

## (1) *On the word RIGHT (or LEFT)—*

The *Captain* will step out 3 paces in front of the centre of the Company, face towards the men, and give the caution *On the centre: Right (or Left) wheel*, or *On the centre:—paces to the right (or left) wheel*.

The *Covering-serjeant*, if the Company is to wheel a quarter circle, will move out to mark the spot where the outer flank of the wheeling-forward Subdivision will rest; aligning himself with the pivot man. If the paces are named, he will step them from the 8th file from the centre of the Company, counting towards the flank that wheels forward. [His rifle, in either case, to be at the 'shoulder'.]

## (2) The *Captain* will then give [*\*Left (or Right) Subdivision: Right-about face.*] *Q. March*; move to the flank that is wheeling forward; and the required degree of wheel being completed, will give the word *Halt* [or, if the

---

\* See General Rules for Wheeling (p. 6).

retiring Subdivision was faced about, *Halt: front*].

On the Captain's word *Halt (front)*—The *Coverer* and senior supernumerary Serjeant will place themselves as base points in front of the Company; the former on the flank that wheeled forward, the latter on the opposite flank; facing inwards, with Arms at the 'recover', and holding out the inner arm with the fist clenched. *See p. 67.*

The base points being placed, the *Captain* will give the word *Dress*; and having dressed the Company up to the hands of the base points, and given *Eyes front*, will take his proper post in Line.

On the Drill Instructor's word *STEADY*—The *Coverer* and senior supernumerary Serjeant will take post in Line.

In this movement the Company is considered as the (central) Company of formation in a *change of front in Line by Echelon, on fixed pivots* (p. 164). Wheeling on the centre, however, should also be practised '*On the move*': *see No. XXVII. (C) of PART II., p. 163.*

¶ The Drill Instructor may occasionally require the Company when in Line to wheel into Column, or when in Column to wheel into Line, on the centre;\* in which case he will himself give the words **ON THE CENTRE:—WHEEL Q. MARCH** (and, if necessary, *RIGHT-ABOUT FACE* to the retiring Subdivision). The Captain: on the caution, will place himself one pace in front of the centre of the Subdivision that is to wheel forward, facing to the front; on the word *MARCH*, will turn towards the men and move to the flank marked by the Coverer; and the quarter-circle wheel being completed, will give *Halt (front): dress*, or *Halt (front): dress.—Eyes front*, and take post in Column or Line as the case may be.

---

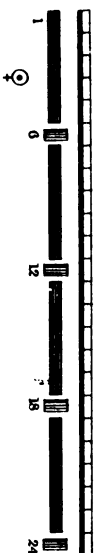
\* As might possibly be necessary on the line of march: the case does not occur in parade movements.



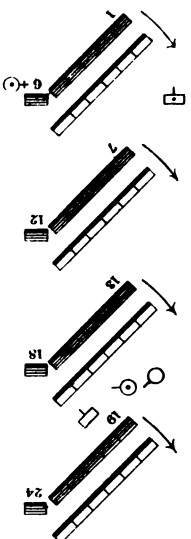


*When Right is to be in front.*

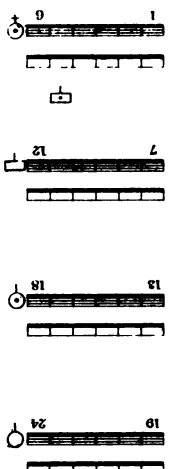
*I. On the Caution.*



*II. During the Wheel.*



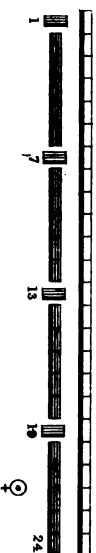
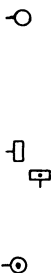
*III. The Movement completed.*



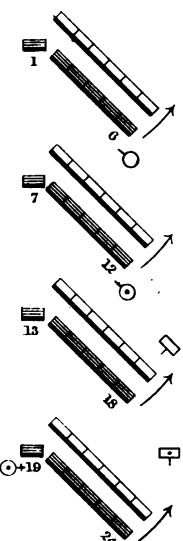
*R. D. M. ad.*

*When Left is to be in front.*

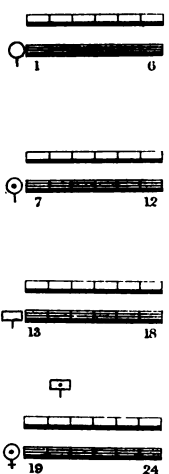
*I. On the Caution.*



*II. During the Wheel.*



*III. The Movement completed.*



No. IX.<sup>(1)</sup>—*A Company as in Line wheeling into Column of Subdivisions (or Sections).*

(F. E. II., SECS. 8, 10, pp. 81, 84.)

(A) *From the Halt: backward.*

**AS A COMPANY IN LINE.** Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Line*. (p. 8.)

[On the word **WHEEL**—The pivot man of each Subdivision [or Section] will face as directed in the *Gen. Rules for Wheeling* (p. 6).]

(Suppose the Wheel made *without* the men being first faced about.)

**BY SUBDIVISIONS  
(or SECTIONS):  
ON THE LEFT (or  
RIGHT) BACK-  
WARD WHEEL.**

**Q. MARCH.**  
or  
**TO OPEN COLUMN  
OF SUBDIVISIONS  
(or SECTIONS)  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
IN FRONT.**

**RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.**

**RIGHT (or LEFT)  
WHEEL:  
Q. MARCH.**

<sup>(1)</sup> *On the Caution—*

The *Captain* places himself one pace in front of the centre of that Subdivision [or Section] which will be the leading one of the Column; facing to the front.

\* The *Covering-serjeant* moves back to mark the spot where the wheeling flank of that Subdivision (or Section) will rest in Column; standing with shouldered Arms and his left arm raised.

<sup>(2)</sup> *On the word MARCH—*

The *Captain* turns towards the future leading Subdivision [or Section], inclining to its pivot flank; and when it has wheeled back a full quarter circle, gives *Halt: dress* (which will apply to the whole Company), and falls into his place in Column.

The *Lieutenant, Ensign, and Covering-serjeant*

\* In this movement the Company is considered the *right-flank* or *left-flank* Company of a Battalion in Line: see *Duties of Covering-serjeants in Battalion* (No. 5).

† If the Subdivisions (or Sections) exceed 12 files: see p. 6.

then take up their proper posts in the Column : the supernumerary rank closing up.

[The above directions are equally applicable when the men are faced about before wheeling : except that the Captain's word will, in that case, be *Halt, front : dress.*]

(B) *On Moveable pivots : forward.*

BY  
SUBDIVISIONS  
[or SECTIONS]:  
RIGHT (or  
LEFT) WHEEL.

(When square)—  
FORWARD.

(3) *On the word WHEEL—*

If the wheel is to the Right, the *Captain* will move across to his place on the left of the leading Subdivision [or Section], as he moves to the left of the Company in No. VI. (B) : the *Coverer* at the same time changing flank.

If the wheel is to the Left, the *Captain* will wheel with the right Subdivision [or 1st Section], and at the word *FORWARD* will double up (the *Coverer* passing, at the same time, by the reverse flank of the Column) to the pivot flank of the leading Subdivision [or Section].

In either case, the leader of the rear Subdivision [or of each of the rear Sections] will take post at the word *FORWARD*.

---

*See page 86.*

¶ *Directions for Marching in Column, on an Alignment.*

Suppose an Open Column of Subdivisions :—When the Column, having wheeled backwards from Line as above described, is to march on an *alignment* (i.e. on the imaginary straight line lying between any 2 points on which the pivot flanks of the Column will be dressed), the *Captain*, as leader of the front Subdivision, will immediately fix on some intermediate point between himself and the distant point taken in prolongation of the two pivot flanks. On these points he will march steadily when the Column is put in motion. The leader of the rear Subdivision will give his whole attention to keeping the leader in his front in an exact line with the distant point : and to keeping at wheeling distance, which is taken from front rank to front rank, from the preceding Subdivision. The same directions apply to Company and Section leaders marching in Column on an alignment.

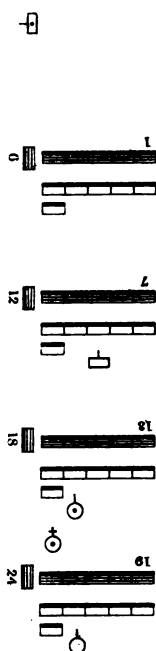
(F. E., p. 92.)



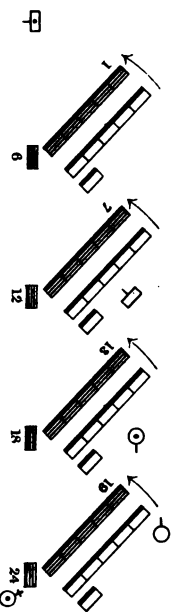
# PART I. COMPANY DRILL. Nº X. An Open Column of Sections wheeling into Line, from the Hale.

When Right is in front.

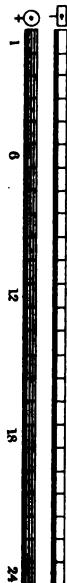
## I. On the Caution.



## II. During the Wheel.



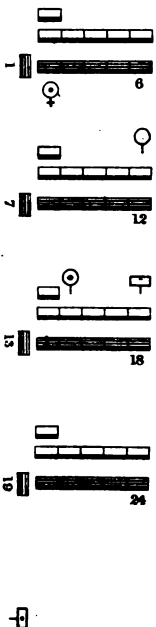
## III. The Movement completed.



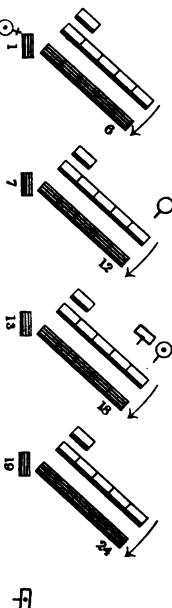
W. D. M. del.

When Left is in front.

## I. On the Caution.



## II. During the Wheel.



## III. The Movement completed.



Vincent Broderick del.

No. IX<sup>(2)</sup>.—*An Open Column of Subdivisions  
(or Sections) wheeling into Line.*

(F. E. II., SECS. 9, 10, pp. 82, 84.)

[In an 'open' Column of Subdivisions (or Sections), the rear Subdivision (or each of the 3 rear Sections) is at a distance equal to its own breadth from the one immediately in its front; measuring from front rank to front rank.]

(A) *From the Halt.*

[The pivot files of Subdivisions (or Sections) will act as directed in *Gen. Rules for Wheeling* (p. 6).]

(Suppose Right in front.)

LEFT (or RIGHT) (1) *On the word* LINE—  
WHEEL INTO LINE.  
Q. *MARCH.*

The *Captain* will fall back, and place himself one pace in front of the 2nd file from the left of the rear Subdivision [or Section] of the Column, facing to the front. The leader of the rear Subdivision [or of each of the 3 rear Sections] will fall back into the supernumerary rank.

\* The *Covering-serjeant* will move out to mark the spot where the right of the Company will rest in Line: facing towards the new front, with shouldered Arms and his left arm raised.

(2) *On the word* MARCH—

The *Captain* will turn towards the men, and move back round the pivot man to be ready to dress the Company from the left.

When the wheeling flank of the right Subdivision [or 1st Section] is within 2 paces of the

---

\* The Company being considered the *leading one* of an open Column: see *Duties of Covering-serjeants in Battalion*, No. 19.

Covering-serjeant, the *Captain* will give *Halt: dress.—Eyes front:* then change to the right flank of the Company, and fall in.

During the wheel, the *Supernumeraries* will move to their proper places in Line.

The *Covering-serjeant*, on the word *Eyes front*, will drop his arm and fall into his place on the right of the rear rank.

---

[When a Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) is *Left* in front, and consequently wheels into Line to the *RIGHT*: the *Covering-serjeant* will mark the left of the Company, and the *Captain* will dress it from the right.]

---

*Note.*—The Subdivisions [or Sections], when dressing, will feel to the pivot file of the *Company*; that file, only, keeping its ground.

(B) *On Moveable pivots.*

*On the word LINE—*

COMPANY:  
LEFT (or RIGHT)  
WHEEL INTO  
LINE.

(When in Line)—  
FORWARD.

The *Captain*:—If *Right* is in front, will move straight on to his front (at a short pace) during the wheel, so as to meet the right of the leading Subdivision [or Section] as it completes the quarter circle: if *Left* is in front, will turn to the right-about, and move straight across the proper front, to the right of the whole Company: so as to be in his place on that flank when *FORWARD* is given.

In either case the leader of the rear Subdivision [or of each of the rear Sections] will fall back on the command; and move, during the wheel, to his proper place in Line.

The *Covering-serjeant* will move, during the wheel, to his place in Line: passing, if the Column was *Left* in front, round the reverse flank(s) of the rear Subdivision (or Sections).

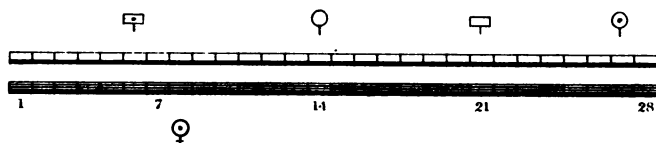
●



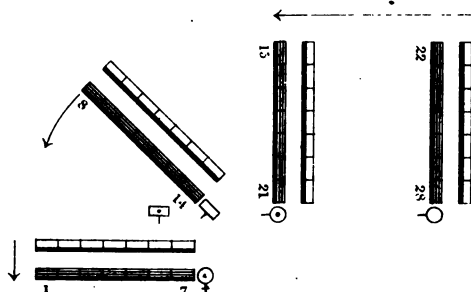


**PART I. COMPANY DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> X. *A Company as in Line advancing from the Right in Open Column of Sections.***

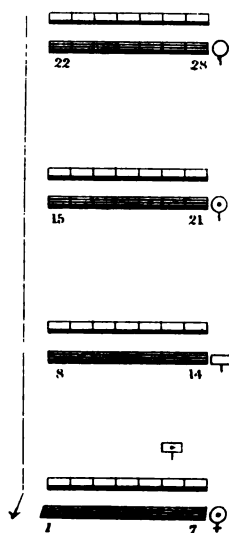
*I. After 1st Count*



*II. When N<sup>o</sup> 2 Section is making its 2<sup>nd</sup> wheel.*



*III. When all the Sections are in Column.*



No. X.—*A Company as in Line advancing from a Flank in Open Column of Subdivisions (or Sections).*

(F. E. II., SEC. 12, p. 85.)

(Suppose the advance from the Right.)

RIGHT (or LEFT)  
SUBDIVISION  
[or SECTION]  
TO THE FRONT.  
REMAINING  
SUBDIVISIONS  
[or SECTIONS]:  
ON THE MOVE,  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
WHEEL.

Q. MARCH.

(The remaining  
subdivision, or Sections,  
wing wheeled square).—  
FORWARD.

*On the word WHEEL—*

The *Captain* will place himself one pace in front of the right file of the left Subdivision [or 2nd Section].

The *Covering-serjeant* will move to his future place in Column.

*On the word MARCH—*

The *Captain* will move off, at a short pace, on the left of the right Subdivision [or 1st Section].

The *Coverer* will step off in his place in Column.

The *Lieutenant* and *Ensign* [and senior supernumerary Serjeant] will move, during the wheel, to their respective places in Column.

*On the word FORWARD—*The left Subdivision [or 2nd Section] will receive from its leader the word *Left Subdivision* [or *No. 2 Section*]: *Left wheel*: and, when square, *Forward: by the left*.

The *Captain* will give *Forward\** to the leading Subdivision [or Section], and advance with it at a full pace, when it has stepped short long enough to prevent the loss of distance that would otherwise arise from the two wheels of the next Subdivision [or Section].

If the advance is by Sections, Nos. 3 and 4 Sections will wheel in succession, by command of their leaders, on reaching the spot where No. 2 wheeled: see ¶ p. 24.

See the corresponding No. (VIII.) of PART II., p. 91.

\* This word should be given when the following Subdivision [or Section] has completed nearly  $\frac{3}{4}$  of its 2nd wheel.

## No. XI.—*The Echelon March of Subdivisions* (*or Sections*).

(F. E. II., Sec. 14, p. 91.)

*N.B.*—In Echelon, the flank on which the wheel into echelon is made will direct.

(*From the Halt.*)  
TAKE GROUND  
TO THE RIGHT  
(*or LEFT*)  
IN ECHELLON.

† ON THE MOVE:  
BY SUBDIVISIONS  
[*or SECTIONS*]  
RIGHT (*or LEFT*)  
WHEEL.

*Q. MARCH.*

(*When in echelon*)—  
‡ FORWARD.

### (1) *On the word MARCH—*

The Subdivisions [or Sections] will wheel towards the named flank.

If the Company is as in Column, and the wheel is made to the *reverse* flank, the *Lieutenant*—unless the Captain is ordered to change his flank—will move up to lead the leading Subdivision [or Section]: in taking ground to the pivot flank, the Officers will all retain their original positions.

If the Company is as in Line, to whichever flank the wheel into echelon is made, all the Officers will remain in their places: each Subdivision [or Section], if ground is being taken to the left, being led by its pivot man.

### (2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The Echelon will advance: the Subdivision [or each Section] without an Officer on the named flank, being led by its pivot man.

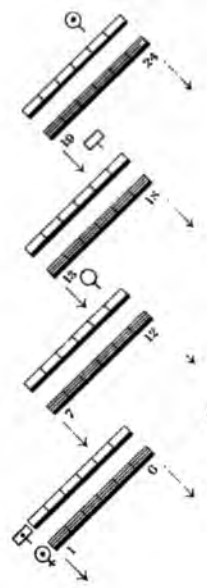

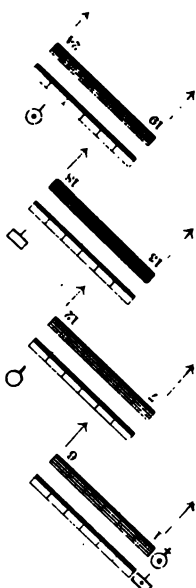

*See the corresponding No. (XVIII.) of PART II., p. 127.*

---

† An Echelon of Subdivisions or Sections is always formed on *moveable* pivots.

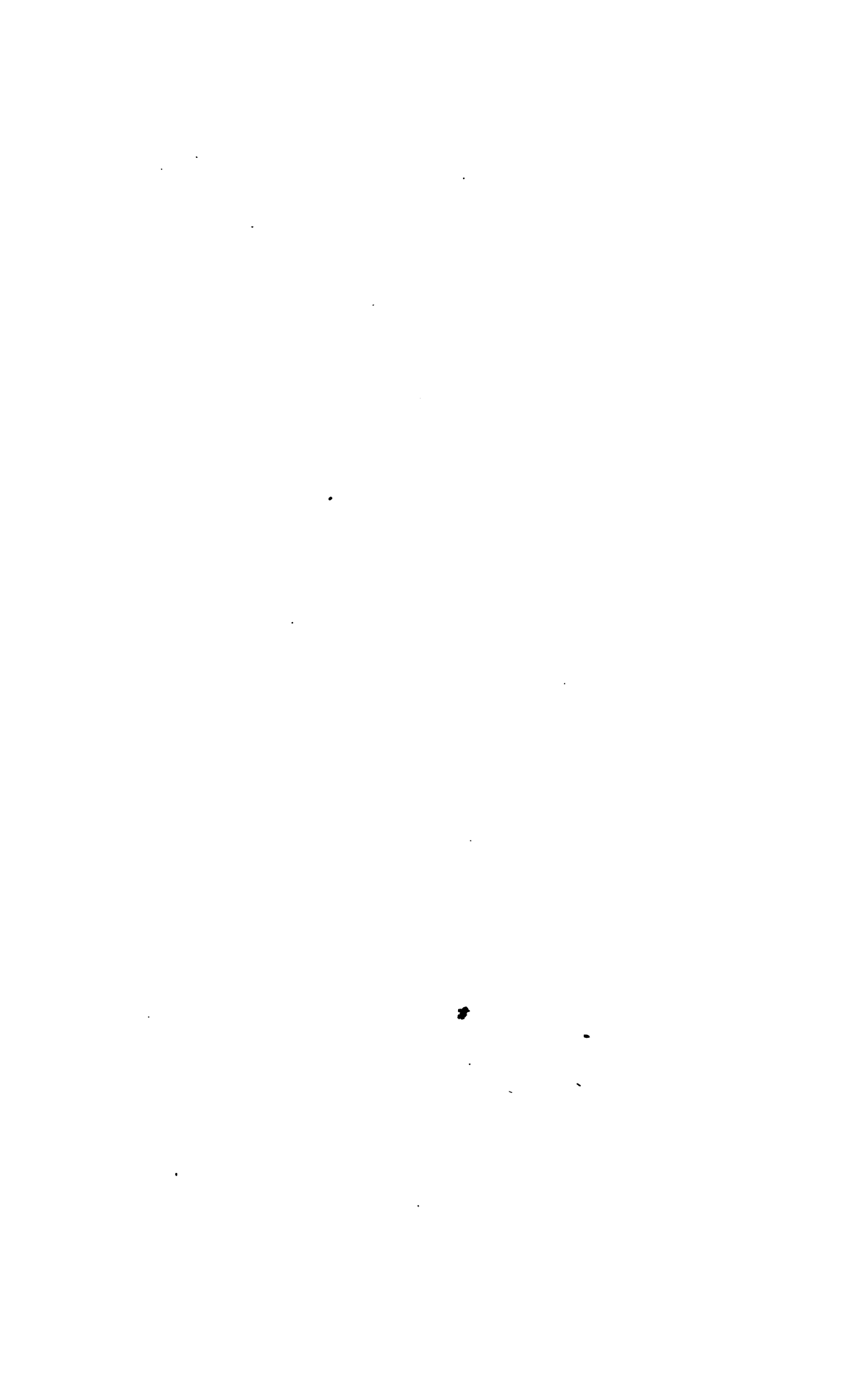
‡ This word will be given when the Subdivisions [or Sections] have wheeled the eighth of a circle: *see* ¶ 1, page 154.

**PART I. COMPANY DRILL, No XI. A Company taking ground to a flank in Echelon of Sections.**

When as in Line.	When as in Column (Right in front).
<p>(a) Taking ground to the Right.</p> 	<p>(a) Taking ground to the Front Flank.</p> 
<p>(b) Taking ground to the Left.</p> 	<p>(b) Taking ground to the Reverse Flank.</p> 

W.P.M. del.

Vincent Brooks lith



Subdivision [or Section] leaders must keep their dressing in a line exactly parallel to their original position: the leader of the Subdivision [or of each Section] in rear carefully preserving his distance from the pivot flank of that next him in the direction to which the Company is inclining.

[When this movement is done on the March, the command will be *BY SUBDIVISIONS [or SECTIONS]: RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL.—FORWARD.*]

*Re-forming Company.*

*RE-FORM  
COMPANY.  
—  
(When in line)—  
FORWARD.*

*On the word COMPANY*—The Subdivisions [or Sections] will wheel back, on the pivot flanks of the Echelon, into line.

*On the word FORWARD*—The Company will advance; marching, if in Line by the right, if in Column by the proper pivot, flank.

On even ground, where the Subdivisions [or Sections] are not broken, they may be wheeled *forward*, on the reverse flanks, into line: the word being *BY SUBDIVISIONS [or SECTIONS]: LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL.—FORWARD.*

---

*See pp. 127, 156.*

Covering-serjeant, the *Captain* will give *Halt: dress.—Eyes front:* then change to the right flank of the Company, and fall in.

During the wheel, the *Supernumeraries* will move to their proper places in Line.

The *Covering-serjeant*, on the word *Eyes front*, will drop his arm and fall into his place on the right of the rear rank.

---

[When a Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) is *Left* in front, and consequently wheels into Line to the *RIGHT*: the Covering-serjeant will mark the left of the Company, and the Captain will dress it from the right.]

---

*Note.*—The Subdivisions [or Sections], when dressing, will feel to the pivot file of the *Company*; that file, only, keeping its ground.

(B) *On Moveable pivots.*

*On the word LINE—*

COMPANY:  
LEFT (or RIGHT)  
WHEEL INTO  
LINE.  
—  
(When in Line)—  
FORWARD.

The *Captain*:—If *Right* is in front, will move straight on to his front (at a short pace) during the wheel, so as to meet the right of the leading Subdivision [or Section] as it completes the quarter circle: if *Left* is in front, will turn to the right-about, and move straight across the proper front, to the right of the whole Company: so as to be in his place on that flank when *FORWARD* is given.

In either case the leader of the rear Subdivision [or of each of the rear Sections] will fall back on the command; and move, during the wheel, to his proper place in Line.

The *Covering-serjeant* will move, during the wheel, to his place in Line: passing, if the Column was *Left* in front, round the reverse flank(s) of the rear Subdivision (or Sections).







that last formed in Line, will fall to the rear and give *Left Subdivision* [or *No. — Section*]: *Right wheel. Double*; when it has wheeled square, *Forward*; and when its front rank arrives in line with the rear rank of that last formed, *Halt: dress up*, and will fall into his place in the supernumerary rank.

The left Subdivision [or the 3 rear Sections] having come up into Line: the *Captain* will dress the whole Company on the fist of the Coverer, give *Eyes front*, and fall in on its right.

On the word STEADY: the *Covering-serjeant* and senior supernumerary Serjeant will take post in Line.

*See Note, p. 32.*

[A Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) *Left* in front will form Company to the LEFT in like manner: the leaders changing to the left flanks, and giving *Left wheel. Double, &c.*]

*Note.*—On the Caution to form Line to the reverse flank: leaders will always change to that flank, *i.e.* to the right when the Column is Right in front, and *vice versa*.

---

When it is not required to form (as above) at right angles with the present direction of the Column; the Drill Instructor will order the leading Subdivision [or Section] to **CHANGE DIRECTION**, and when it is at right angles with the future alignment, will give **RIGHT (or LEFT) FORM COMPANY**. The remaining Subdivision [or Sections] will change direction in the usual manner (*see page 24*): and will then form up in Line as described in this *No.*

---

*See pp. 137, 142.*

### No. XIII.—*File Marching, and the Flank March in Fours.*

(F. E., pp. 49-56; and 94-98.)

*N.B.* The Double march is inapplicable to File marching.

[*Formation of Fours from the Halt.*—FOURS are formed from the Halt :—To the Front or Rear, by the left files moving to the proper rear of the right files,—the whole, in forming to the Rear, first facing about : to the Right, by the left files stepping up on the right of the right files,—the whole first facing to the right : to the Left, by the left files stepping back to the left of the right files,—the whole first facing to the left. In all cases, the rear rank, on the word *FOURS*, will step back a pace of 12 inches ; after which, the right files will *face* as may be necessary, but will not move off their own ground. The length of each pace taken by the left files is 21 inches.]

COMPANY:  
TO THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT) FACE.

or

COMPANY:  
FORM FOURS:  
RIGHT (or LEFT).

Q. MARCH.

On the word *FACE* [or *RIGHT* (or *LEFT*)]—

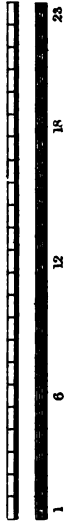
\*The *Captain* and *Covering-serjeant*, if not already there, will change to the leading flank ; the former by the original front, the latter by the rear : the *Lieutenant*, as usual, making a corresponding change in rear.

[If the Company is to move in *Fours* : the supernumerary rank, on the word *FOURS*, will step back one pace.]

---

\* The rule laid down in the F. E., Gen. Rule (7), p. 66, applies to "field manoeuvres" : not to a Company drilling singly, which should always be led by the senior Officer. (See F. E. II., Sec. 20, p. 97.)

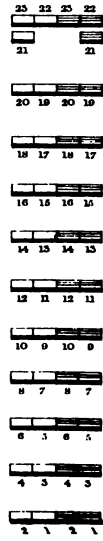
*I. A Company at Close order.*



## II. Form fours: deep.



*III.* Form fours: right.



**$\mathcal{H}$ : Form fours: left.**

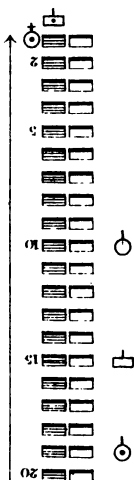




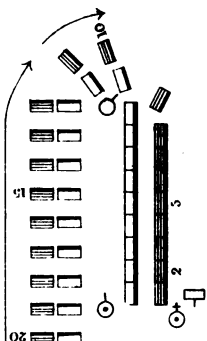


**PART I. COMPANY DRILL. N° XIII. Formations of Company from File-marching.**

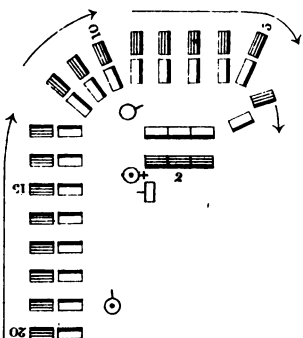
*I. A Company marching in file (Right leading).*



□



*II. Forming Company to the Right.*



*III. Forming Company to the Right-about.*

*R. D. Mad.*

(a) *Forming Company (Subdivisions, or Sections) to the Front.*

**IN DOUBLE TIME:]**  
**FRONT FORM**  
**COMPANY**  
**SUBDIVISIONS,**  
**or SECTIONS).**

**\*FORWARD.**  
**or**  
**HALT: DRESS.**

Suppose the Company moving in *Fours*:—

[*On the Command*—The front-rank man of the leading file of the Company (or of each Subdivision, or Section) marks time. The remainder:—if Right is leading, turn to the left, form Two-deep, and wheel to the right; if Left is leading, turn to the right, form Two-deep, and wheel to the left; till the quarter-circle wheel is completed: looking outwards and feeling inwards. If the formation is to be IN DOUBLE TIME, the leading file(s) will move on steadily in quick time: the remainder making a *half* turn outwards, doubling up into their places, and taking up the quick time as they successively arrive in line with the leading file(s).]

*On the Command*—

The †*Captain*:—If the formation is in Double time, moves across the front diagonally; if in Quick time, moves across at right angles to the original direction, turning towards the men during the wheel: so as to fall in on the pivot flank of the Company [or leading Subdivision or Section] at the completion of the formation.

The *Lieutenant* and *Covering-serjeant* move to their places during the formation: if Subdivisions or Sections are formed, their leaders will get to their places on the flanks by the time FORWARD (or HALT: DRESS) is given.

(b) *Forming Company to the Reverse Flank.*

Suppose the Company moving in *Fours*:—

[*On the word* COMPANY—The men at once form Two-deep:—The leading man of the rear rank then turns into the named direction, takes 2 paces to his new front, and

**ON THE**  
**LEADING FILE:**  
**RIGHT (or LEFT)**  
**FORM COMPANY.**

**STEADY.**

\* This word is not given when the formation is in Double time.

† The rear-rank man will turn with the rest, and move round into his place during the wheel.

‡ For an exception to this rule in Battalion, see p. 78.



halts: the remainder of the rear rank forming, in succession, on his left or right according as Right or Left was leading. The front-rank men will move round their respective rear-rank men, and form successively in front of them.]

The *Covering-serjeant* will mark the outer, the senior supernumerary Serjeant\* the inner, flank of the Company precisely as directed in No. XII.

The *Captain*, when the leading file halts, will place himself outside it, facing inwards: dress the men on the fist of the *Covering-serjeant*, file by file as they come up in line: then give *Eyes front*, and fall in.

On the word *STEADY*, the *Coverer* and supernumerary Serjeant will come to the 'shoulder' and take post in Line.

The supernumerary rank will form with the Company: correcting their distances from the rear rank (if necessary) when cleared by the rest of the Company.

*N.B.*—Company is formed to the *pivot* flank by the word *HALT: FRONT*.

(c) *Forming Company to the Right- (or Left-) about.*

Suppose the Company moving in *Fours*:—

ON THE  
LEADING FILE:  
RIGHT- (or LEFT-)  
ABOUT FORM  
COMPANY.  
—  
STEADY.

[On the word *COMPANY*—The men at once form Two-deep:—The leading rear-rank man then wheels about† into the named direction, takes 2 paces to his new front, and halts. The remainder march on in file, wheel on the spot where the leading file wheeled, and form successively in line as in (b).]

The *Captain*, *Coverer*, senior supernumerary Serjeant‡, and supernumerary rank will proceed as directed in (b).

---

\* The Company being considered the *leading one* of a Column forming Line to the reverse flank after breaking into *Fours*: see p. 137.

† *i.e.*, moves round half the circumference of a circle about the size of a cart-wheel. (See F. E., p. 41.)

‡ The Company being considered the *leading one* of an open Column taking ground to a flank and forming Line to the front: see p. 81.

The directions above given for a Company moving in Fours (with the exception, of course, of the direction to form Two-deep), apply equally to a Company marching in File.

*Note.*—If the Company while wheeling in File is ordered to *HALT* or *MARK TIME* when part only of the files have wheeled into the new direction, the remainder, on the word *Rear files cover*, will cover off in rear by the side-step. But if *FRONT* is to follow *HALT*, the rear files need not be ordered to cover, but will move to their places on the word *DRESS*.

#### ¶ *Formations of Fours on the March, &c.*

- (1) *Forming Four-deep while advancing or retiring, to the present front or to either flank: and Re-forming Two-deep to front or rear.*

**FORM FOURS:  
DEEP (RIGHT,  
or LEFT).**

A Company advancing, or retiring, will form Fours to its present front or to either flank, on precisely the same principle as from the halt (*see* page 38). The necessary distance between the ranks will be gained by the present rear rank, on the word *FOURS*,—instead of stepping back—stepping short one pace: on the word *DEEP (RIGHT, or LEFT)*, the right files (after the whole have turned, if necessary, to the right or left) will mark time 2 paces while the left get into their places as when halted; and on the 3rd pace, the Company will move steadily on in its new formation. [If men are required to form Fours while *marking time*, the present rear rank will, on the word *FOURS*, step back a short pace.]

**FORM TWO-DEEP  
or  
FRONT (or REAR)  
TURN.**

On the command *FORM TWO-DEEP* [if moving to front or rear], or *FRONT (or REAR) TURN* [if moving to a flank], the right files—after the whole have turned, if necessary, to the front or rear—will mark time, as before, 2 paces, while the left resume their former places: and on the 3rd pace, the Company will move on its original formation. The distance between the ranks will be corrected by the present rear-rank right files gaining 12 inches to the present front while marking time the 2nd pace.

(2) *Forming Two-deep while moving to a flank in Fours: and Four-deep while moving in Files.*

**FORM TWO-DEEP**  
or  
**FORM FOUR:**  
**DEEP.**

When a Company moving to a flank in Fours is ordered to **FORM TWO-DEEP**:—The left files, if Right is leading fall back, if Left is leading step up, into their places in File; and the rear rank then closes on the front, the right files marking time 2 paces. When a Company moving to a flank in File, gets the command **FORM FOUR: DEEP**:—On the word **FOUR**, the rear rank will incline from the front rank (by a lengthened diagonal step): on the word **DEEP**, the left files will step up, or fall back, into their places in Fours, the right files marking time 2 paces.

(3) *A Company in Fours Closing, and Re-forming Two-deep.*

**ON THE RIGHT**  
**(LEFT, or CENTRE):**  
**CLOSE.**

**Q. MARCH.**

or

*(if on the March)*  
**ON THE RIGHT**  
**(LEFT, or**  
**CENTRE):**  
**CLOSE.**

**FORWARD.**

**FROM THE**  
**RIGHT (LEFT,**  
**or CENTRE):**  
**RE-FORM**  
**TWO-DEEP.**

**Q. MARCH.**

or

*(if on the March)*  
**FROM THE**  
**RIGHT (LEFT,**  
**or CENTRE):**  
**RE-FORM**  
**TWO-DEEP.**

**FORWARD.**

A Company, having formed Fours to its proper front from the halt, or to its present front on the march, may be ordered to close on either flank, or on the centre†.—On the word **MARCH** [or, if on the march, **CLOSE**]:—The four men on the named flank, or in the centre, stand fast [or shorten their pace]; the remainder close by the side-step [or by the diagonal march]. If the men are on the march: at the word **FORWARD** (given when all have closed), the Company will move steadily on at a full pace.

On the word **MARCH** [or, if on the march, **TWO-DEEP**]:—The four men from whom the Company is to open out, stand fast [or shorten their paces]: the remainder open out by the side-step [or incline outwards by the diagonal march], the left files moving up in succession into their places as the intervals are opened, and the rear-rank men at the same time regaining their proper distances. If the men are on the march: on the word **FORWARD** (given when the formation of Two-deep is completed), the whole will move steadily forward at a full pace.

**OFFICERS** close and open out with the Company.

---

† i.e. the left file of the Right Subdivision.

No. XIV.—*The Side (or Closing) Step.*

(F. E. II., Sec. 22, p. 98.)

[In closing to the right, the touch is kept to the right ;  
in closing to the left, to the left. Each man's shoulders  
and face must be kept perfectly square to the front.]

COMPANY  
AS IN LINE  
(or COLUMN).

Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Line* or  
*Column*. (p. 8.)

(a) *In Line.*

AS A — WING  
COMPANY:  
[— PACES]  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
CLOSE.

If the number of paces is named, the *Captain*  
will remain in his place and close with the  
Company.

† If the number of paces is not named:—

Q. *MARCH.*(1) *On the word CLOSE—*

The *Captain* will place himself, facing towards  
the men, 3 paces in front of that flank of the  
Company which is nearest to the centre of the  
supposed *Line*: crossing to the left flank by the  
*front*, if the Company is supposed to belong to  
the Right Wing. See (E) page 63.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

He will close with the Company to the Point  
placed by the Drill Instructor: then give *Com-  
pany: Halt*, and (having, if on the left, changed  
by the *rear* to the right) will fall into his post  
in *Line*.

While the *Captain* is out in front, the *Covering-serjeant*  
will occupy his place: closing, as usual, with the Company.

---

† The Drill Instructor will, in this case, place a Point to  
shew where the Company is to be halted.

*(b) In Column.*

RIGHT (or LEFT)  
CLOSE.

*Q. MARCH.*

The *Captain* will always remain in his place, and close with the Company: unless he has—previously to the *caution*—taken up fresh covering, in which case he will stand fast and the Company will close to him.

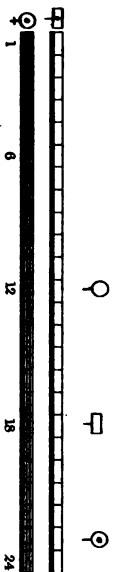
---

The *Supernumeraries* will, in all cases, close with the Company.

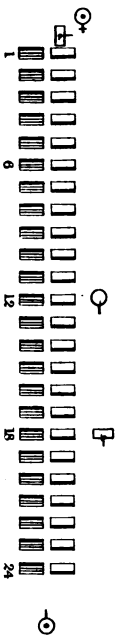


**PART I. COMPANY DRILL, Nº XV. A Company as in Column (Left in front) countermarching by Ranks.**

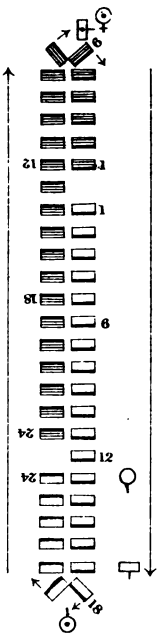
**I. On the word RANKS.**



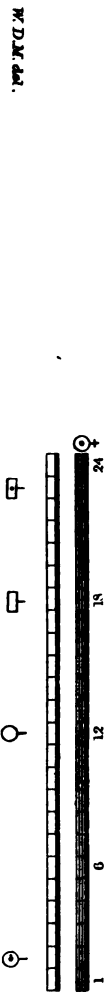
**II. After the command RIGHT AND LEFT FACE.**



**III. During the Countermarch.**



**IV. The Countermarch completed.**



## No. XV.—*Countermarching by Ranks and Files.*

(F. E. II., Sec. 23, p. 99.)

*Note.*—In countermarching by Ranks, the men will invariably countermarch to the Right: in countermarching by Files, round the front rank. In both cases, the effect of the Countermarch will be to change the pivot flank of the Column. (See page 84.)

COMPANY AS IN  
COLUMN:  
— IN FRONT.

Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Column*. (p. 8.)

(a) *By Ranks.*

[On the word *FACE*—Whether Right or Left is in front, the front rank will face to the right, the rear rank to the left.]

COUNTERMARCH  
BY RANKS.

RIGHT & LEFT  
*FACE.*

Q. *MARCH.*

(1) *On the word RANKS—*

The *Covering-serjeant* will step up, and cover the Captain.

(2) *On the word FACE—*

The *Covering-serjeant* will face to the right-about.

The *Captain* will take one pace outwards, and face inwards: he will then take one long side-step in the direction of the new front, to which the *Covering-serjeant* will now be facing.

The *Lieutenant* will move up, and place himself one pace from the reverse flank of the front rank; facing inwards.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The whole (except the *Captain*, *Covering-serjeant*, and *Lieutenant*) will step off: each rank wheeling close round to its right.

---

† The Company will in this instance be considered as in close Column: see ¶ 2, p. 84.



As the pivot man of the front rank reaches the Covering-serjeant, the *Captain* will give *Company: Halt, front: dress*, and fall in.

The *Lieutenant* and *Covering-serjeant*, on the word *dress*, will fall into their places in the new rear.

(b) *By Files.*

COUNTERMARCH  
BY FILES.

TO THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT) FACE.

LEFT (or RIGHT)  
COUNTERMARCH:  
Q. MARCH.

[On the word *FACE*—The men face into the named direction. On the word *MARCH*—They step off: the leading file wheeling short round on the front-rank man, the remainder following in file.]

The *Captain*, *Lieutenant*, and *Covering-serjeant* will act precisely as in (a).

N.B.—The Company will always be faced to the reverse, so as to countermarch up to the pivot, flank.

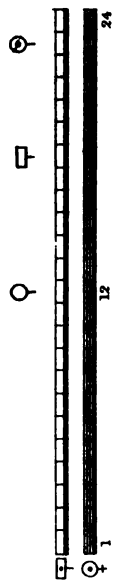
The supernumerary rank, in both (a) and (b), will face towards, and countermarch round, the reverse flank: each individual in it marking time as he arrives in his place, and halting and fronting with the Company.

A Company as in Line may be countermarched in like manner, either by Files or Ranks.

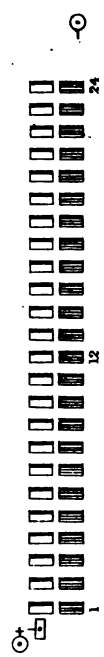
See No. XII. (D) of PART II., p. 107.

*... .. (see in front) countermarching by File.*

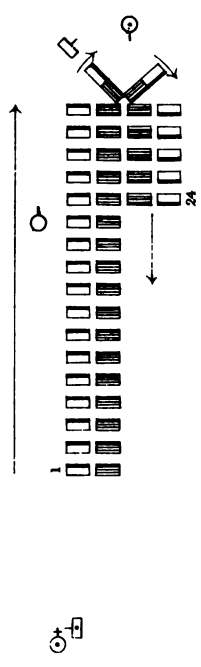
**I. On the word FILES.**



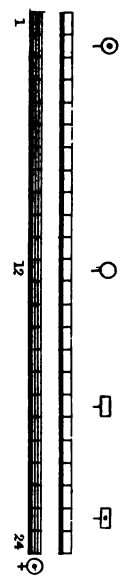
**II. TO THE LEFT FACE.**



**III. The Countermarch commencing.**



**IV. The Countermarch completed.**



*H. D. M. del.*





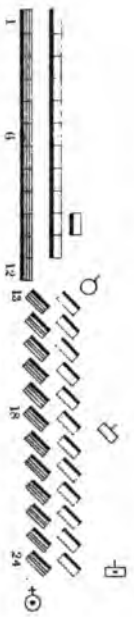
and on the reverse (B).

(A)

*I.* Left Subdivision:  
Halt, front, dress.



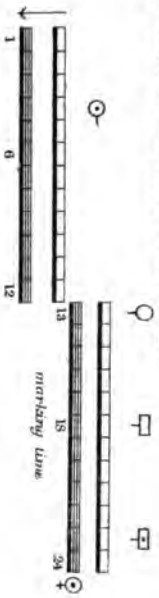
*I.* LEFT SUBDIVISION:  
RIGHT-ABOUT THREE-  
QUARTERS FACE.



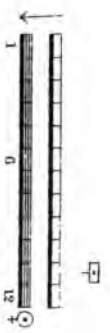
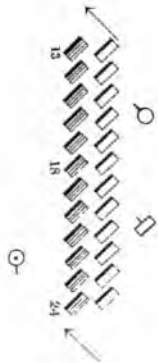
W. D. M. del.

(B)

*I.* Left Subdivision: Mark time.



*II.* Right half Turn.



THOMAS BROWNE, III.

No. XVI.—*A Company diminishing Front by forming Subdivisions: and Subdivisions forming Sections.*

(F. E. II., SECS. 24-26, pp. 100-103.)

N.B.—In diminishing the front of a Company (or Column of Subdivisions), the *pivot* Subdivision (or Sections) will always move in rear of the *reverse*.

(A) *From the Halt.*

AS A COMPANY  
IN COLUMN:—  
IN FRONT.

FORM  
SUBDIVISIONS.  
(Suppose Right in  
front)—

LEFT  
SUBDIVISION:  
RIGHT-ABOUT  
THREE-QUAR-  
TERS FACE.

Q. MARCH.

Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Column*. (p. 8.)

(Suppose Right in front.)

[On the word *FACE*—The rear-rank left-hand man of the right Subdivision will fall back and cover the 3rd file from its left, till the left Subdivision has passed him.]

(1) *On the word SUBDIVISIONS*—

The *Lieutenant* will fall back to mark the spot where the pivot (left) flank of the left Subdivision will rest.

(2) *On the word FACE*—

The † *Captain* will face to the right.

The *Covering-serjeant* will take a side-step of 21 inches to the left, and then face to his right.

(3) *On the word MARCH*—

The left Subdivision marches off diagonally to the rear.

The *Captain* and *Covering-serjeant* move across to their respective places on, and in rear of, the left of the right Subdivision.

The *Lieutenant*, when the left file of the left

---

† If the Captain is directed by the Drill Instructor to give the executive words *Left Subdivision: Right-about three-quarters face*: he will first face to the right.

Subdivision reaches him, gives *Halt, front : dress*, and remains steady.

N.B.—When Officers or men have faced to the right-about three-quarters, they will front by the left-about three-quarters : and *vice versa*. On all other occasions they front by the *right-about*. (F. E., p. 18.)

(B) *On the March.*

(Suppose Right in front.)

FORM  
SUBDIVISIONS.

*On the word* SUBDIVISIONS—

The *Captain* will give *Left Subdivision : Mark time* (in order that the reverse flank of that Subdivision may be cleared by the other Subdivision) ; instantly adding *Right half turn* : and moving across, as will also the *Covering-serjeant*, to his place on the left of the right Subdivision.

The *Lieutenant* moves across, during the movement, between the Subdivisions, to meet the pivot (left) flank of the left Subdivision : and as that flank arrives at its position in Column, gives *Front turn* and advances in his proper place.

---

[A Company in Column *Left* in front will diminish its Front on the same principle : the *right* Subdivision moving to the rear of the other.]

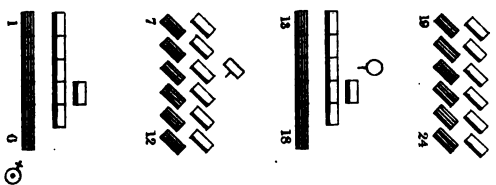
---

Sections are formed from Subdivisions precisely as Subdivisions are formed from Company : the two pivot Sections receiving from the Drill Instructor the word *RIGHT- (or LEFT-) ABOUT THREE-QUARTERS FACE* [or, on the march, from the Captain, *Mark time : Right (or Left) half turn*] ; and then respectively getting *Halt, front : dress*, [or, on the march, *Front turn*] from the Serjeant and Ensign who will lead them. The Lieutenant will move in the same manner as the Captain, the Ensign as the Lieutenant, in that formation.





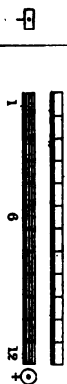
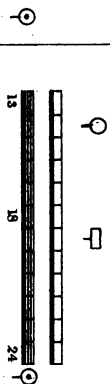
LEFT SECTIONS: LEFT  
HALF FACE.



W. D. M. del.

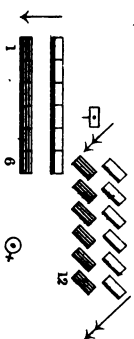
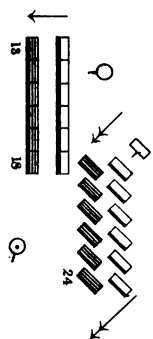
(A)

Nº 4 Section: Halt, front.  
Nº 2 Section: dress.

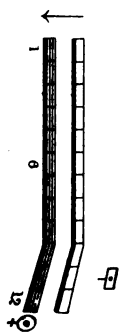
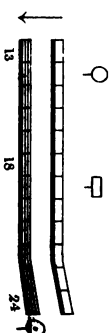


(B)

Left Sections, left half turn.  
Double.



Nº 4 Section: Front turn.  
Nº 2 Section: Quick.



Kenneth Brooks

No. XVII.—*Sections increasing Front by forming Subdivisions or Company: and Subdivisions forming Company.*

(F. E. II., SECS. 27-29, pp. 103-105.)

N.B.—In increasing the front of a Column of Sections (or Subdivisions), the rear Sections (or Subdivision) will always incline to that hand on which is the pivot flank; so that when right is in front the inclining will be to the left, and *vice versa*.

(A) *From the Halt.*

(Suppose an open Column of Sections Right in front, forming Subdivisions.)

**FORM  
SUBDIVISIONS.**

(Suppose Right in  
front)—

**LEFT  
SECTIONS:  
LEFT HALF  
FACE.**

**Q. MARCH.**

[On the word *FACE*—The rear-rank men of the pivot files of the right (1 and 3) Sections fall back, and cover the 3rd file from the left of those Sections till *Halt*: front is given.]

(1) *On the word SUBDIVISIONS—*

The *Covering-serjeant* moves out to mark the spot where the left of the front Subdivision will rest; the *Lieutenant* moves out to mark the left of the rear Subdivision.

The leaders of the 2nd and 4th Sections take their places in the supernumerary rank.

(2) *On the word FACE—*

The *Captain* will face to the right.

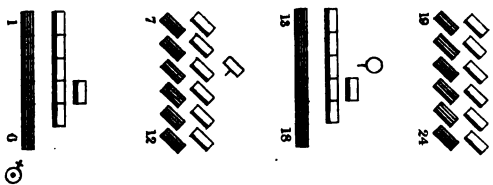
(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The left (2 and 4) Sections move off diagonally to the front, and the † *Captain* moves across to the *Covering-serjeant*. As the front ranks of the left Sections come up in line with the rear ranks of the right, the *Captain* and *Lieu-*

---

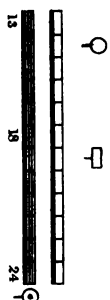
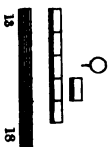
† If the *Captain* is directed by the Drill Instructor to give the executive words *Left Sections: Left half face. Q. March*, he will first face to the right.

LEFT SECTIONS: LEFT  
HALF FACE.



(A)

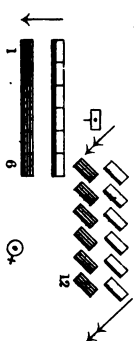
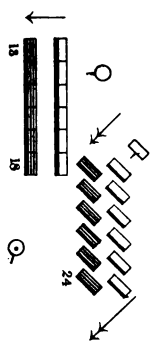
Nº 4 Section: } Halt, front:  
Nº 2 Section: } dress.



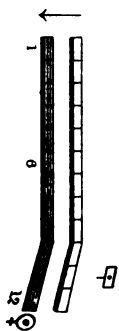
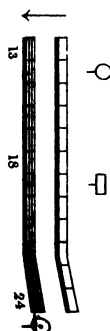
W. D. M. del.

(B)

Left Sections, left half turn.  
Double.



Nº 4 Section: } Front turn.  
Nº 2 Section: } Quick.



Francisco Brando, 1

No. XVII.—*Sections increasing Front by forming Subdivisions or Company: and Subdivisions forming Company.*

(F. E. II., SECS. 27-29, pp. 103-105.)

N.B.—In increasing the front of a Column of Sections (or Subdivisions), the rear Sections (or Subdivision) will always incline to that hand on which is the pivot flank; so that when right is in front the inclining will be to the left, and *vice versa*.

(A) *From the Halt.*

(Suppose an open Column of Sections Right in front, forming Subdivisions.)

[On the word *FACE*—The rear-rank men of the pivot files of the right (1 and 3) Sections fall back, and cover the 3rd file from the left of those Sections till *Halt*: front is given.]

**FORM  
SUBDIVISIONS.**

*Suppose Right in  
front)—*

**LEFT  
SECTIONS:  
LEFT HALF  
FACE.**

**Q. MARCH.**

(1) *On the word SUBDIVISIONS—*

The *Covering-serjeant* moves out to mark the spot where the left of the front Subdivision will rest; the *Lieutenant* moves out to mark the left of the rear Subdivision.

The leaders of the 2nd and 4th Sections take their places in the supernumerary rank.

(2) *On the word FACE—*

The *Captain* will face to the right.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

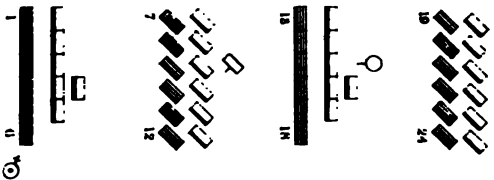
The left (2 and 4) Sections move off diagonally to the front, and the †*Captain* moves across to the *Covering-serjeant*. As the front ranks of the left Sections come up in line with the rear ranks of the right, the *Captain* and *Lieu-*

---

† If the *Captain* is directed by the Drill Instructor to give the executive words *Left Sections: Left half face. Q. March*, he will first face to the right.

*and on the March (B).*

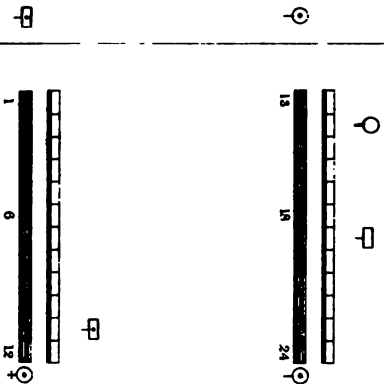
**LEFT SECTIONS: LEFT  
HALF FACE.**



H. D. M. det.

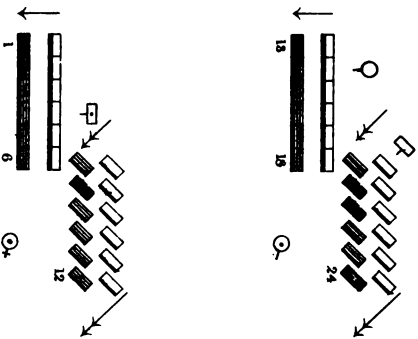
(A)

Nº 4 Section: } Hal, front:  
Nº 2 Section: } dress.

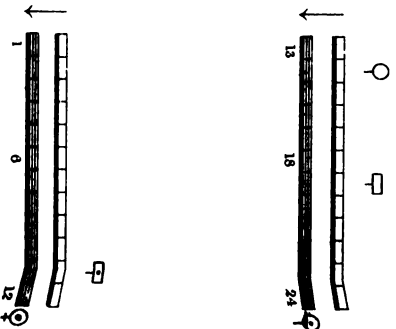


(B)

Left Sections, left half turn.  
Double.



Nº 4 Section: } Front turn.  
Nº 2 Section: } Quick.



Francis Brooke, 1888.

No. XVII.—*Sections increasing Front by forming Subdivisions or Company: and Subdivisions forming Company.*

(F. E. II., SECS. 27-29, pp. 103-105.)

N.B.—In increasing the front of a Column of Sections (or Subdivisions), the rear Sections (or Subdivision) will always incline to that hand on which is the pivot flank; so that when right is in front the inclining will be to the left, and *vice versa*.

(A) *From the Halt.*

(Suppose an open Column of Sections Right in front, forming Subdivisions.)

[On the word *FACE*—The rear-rank men of the pivot files of the right (1 and 3) Sections fall back, and cover the 3rd file from the left of those Sections till *Halt*: front is given.]

**FORM  
SUBDIVISIONS.**

(Suppose Right in front)—

**LEFT  
SECTIONS:  
LEFT HALF  
FACE.**

**Q. MARCH.**

(1) *On the word SUBDIVISIONS—*

The *Covering-serjeant* moves out to mark the spot where the left of the front Subdivision will rest; the *Lieutenant* moves out to mark the left of the rear Subdivision.

The leaders of the 2nd and 4th Sections take their places in the supernumerary rank.

(2) *On the word FACE—*

The *Captain* will face to the right.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The left (2 and 4) Sections move off diagonally to the front, and the † *Captain* moves across to the *Covering-serjeant*. As the front ranks of the left Sections come up in line with the rear ranks of the right, the *Captain* and *Lieu-*

---

† If the *Captain* is directed by the Drill Instructor to give the executive words *Left Sections: Left half face. Q. March*, he will first face to the right.

*tenant* will give *Halt, front: dress*, each to his own Subdivision: and fall in at once on their pivot (left) flank.

The *Covering-serjeant* at the same time takes his place.

When Company is to be formed *at once* from Sections:—

**FORM COMPANY.** (1) *On the word COMPANY—*

**REAR SECTIONS:**  
**LEFT (or RIGHT)**  
**HALF FACE.**

The *Coverer* will mark the pivot flank of the Company: the leaders of the 3 rear Sections take their places in the supernumerary rank.

**Q. MARCH.**

(2) *On the word FACE—*

The *Captain* will face inwards.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The *Captain* will move across to the *Coverer*, and will halt and front the rear Sections in succession as they come up into line. The *Coverer* will then take post.

The rear-rank man of the outer file of each Section will uncover as he halts; to make room for the next Section to move up.]

### (B) *On the March.*

(Suppose an open Column of Sections Right in front.)

**FORM**  
**SUBDIVISIONS.**

*On the word SUBDIVISIONS—*

The *Captain* will turn inwards, and give *Left Sections: Left half turn. Double*. He will then move outwards to where the pivot flank of the front Subdivision will rest.

The *Lieutenant*, without giving any word, inclines outwards in like manner.

The leaders of the 2nd and 4th Sections take their places in the supernumerary rank.

As soon as the right flanks of the left (2 and

4) are clear of the left flanks of the right (1 and 3) Sections, the *Captain* and *Lieutenant* will give the word *Front turn*, and when the left Sections arrive in line with the right, *Quick*: each then falling in on the pivot flank of his Subdivision.

The *Covering-serjeant* will remain in rear of the 1st Section till the 2nd Section is in line with it: then move to his place in rear of the 2nd file from the left of the leading Subdivision.

If Company is to be formed *at once* from Sections:—

**FORM  
COMPANY.**

*On the word COMPANY—*

The leaders of the three rear Sections will take their places in the supernumerary rank.

The *Captain* will turn inwards, and give *Rear Sections: Left half turn. Double*. He will then move to the pivot flank of the Company, and give the word *Front turn: Quick* to each of the rear Sections in succession as it comes up into line. The *Coverer* will then take post.

[A Column of Sections *Left* in front, will increase its Front on the same principle: the *right* (or the three rear) Sections inclining to the *right*.]

Company is formed from Subdivisions precisely as Subdivisions are formed from Sections: the rear Subdivision getting the word *LEFT (or RIGHT) HALF FACE.—Q. MARCH*, [or, if on the march, *Left (or Right) half turn: Double*] &c. The *Lieutenant* will, on the *Caution*, fall into the supernumerary rank.

*See ¶ 1, page 83.*



No. XVIII. — *Diminishing and increasing Front, by breaking off Files and bringing them again to the front.*

(F. E., pp. 56, 105.)

[The broken-off files (which, at Drill, will always break off from the *pivot flank*) must lock up well while in rear : when ordered to the front, they will make a half turn towards the pivot flank and double up into line. If additional files are broken off, those already in rear will mark time and then incline (by the diagonal march) till they cover them : when part, only, of the files in rear are brought to the front, those left in rear will incline diagonally, with a lengthened pace, so as to cover the files on the pivot flank.]

**BREAK OFF  
— FILES.**

*On the Caution—*

(Suppose a Column of Subdivisions, Right in front.)

The *Captain* leading the front Subdivision will give — *files on the left : To the right turn, Left wheel* : moving to the flank of the remainder of his front rank as the named files drop to the rear.

The *Lieutenant* leading the rear Subdivision, on reaching the spot where the files were broken off the leading Subdivision, will give the same word and act in like manner as the Captain.

The *Covering-serjeant* will move up and cover the Captain till all the files are again brought up.

**BREAK OFF  
— FILES.**

To further diminish the front : each Subdivision leader in succession will again give — *files on the left : To the right turn, Left wheel.*

**[—] FILES  
TO THE FRONT.**

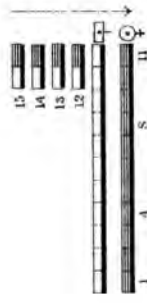
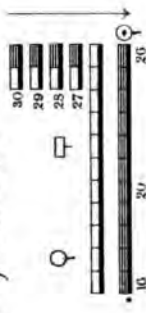
When the Instructor orders to the front any or all of the broken-off files, the Subdivision leaders will, as before, repeat his word.

See PART II., No. V.<sup>(1)</sup>, page 78.

them again to the front.

I. Drill Instructor. BREAK OFF FOUR FILES.

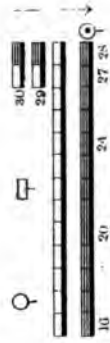
Capt. and Lieut. } Four files on the left; To the right turn,  
in succession. } Left wheel.



W. D. M. del.

II. Drill Instructor. TWO FILES TO THE FRONT.

Capt. and Lieut. } Two files to the front.  
in succession. }



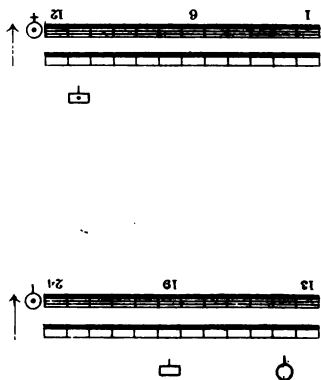
Vincent Brooks, lith.



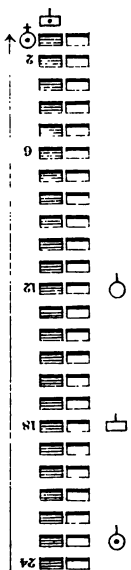


*from forming sections.*

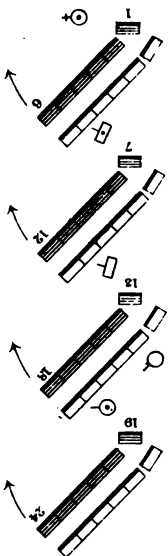
### I. The Column.



**II. TO THE RIGHT TURN:  
LEFT WHEEL.**



### III. FRONT FORM SECTIONS.



**W D Medel.**

No. XIX.—*Diminishing and increasing Front, by breaking into Files (or Fours) and reforming Sections, Subdivisions, or Company.*

(F. E. II., Sec. 31, p. 106.)

[The Company will be 'as in Column', and the advance will be made from the reverse flank.]

(From the Halt.)  
‡[ADVANCE (or  
RETIRE) BY FILES  
[or FOURS] FROM  
THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT).]

TO THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT) FACE.

or  
FORM FOURS:  
RIGHT (or LEFT).

LEFT (or RIGHT)  
WHEEL:  
Q. MARCH.

(On the Move.)  
‡[BREAK INTO  
FILES [or FOURS]  
FROM THE  
RIGHT (or LEFT).]

TO THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT) TURN.

or  
FORM FOURS:  
RIGHT (or LEFT).

LEFT (or RIGHT)  
WHEEL.

On the word FACE (or TURN) [or RIGHT (or LEFT)]—

The *Captain* and *Covering-serjeant* will change to the leading flank of the Company; the former by the front, the latter by the rear: the *Lieutenant*, as usual, making a corresponding change in rear.

[An open Column of Subdivisions [or Sections] may, in like manner, advance from the right or left of Subdivisions [or Sections]: the whole Company being thus brought into file or fours, and the Supernumeraries (who will pass by the rear, in double time) taking post in rear accordingly. The advance will always be made from the reverse flank.]

The Company, when required to increase its front, will get the word *FRONT FORM SECTIONS* [SUBDIVISIONS, or COMPANY]. See No. XIII.

‡ The Drill Instructor will give this Caution only, if—the Company being as in *close* or *quarter-distance* Column (or in Column of Subdivisions closed to quarter distance)—he intends the executive words *To the — face, or turn, (or Form fours :—)* &c. to be given by the leader of the Company [or of each Subdivision].

## No. XX.—*Forming Close Column of Sections, and Company Square.*

(F. E. II., Sec. 32, p. 106.)

In this formation the 2nd Section stands fast. The men should be cautioned to count the number of paces that take them into Column: so that by taking the same number when re-forming Company, the men of the 1st Section may turn to the rear, those of the 3rd and 4th Sections to the front, together.

\*.\* The Company should generally stand for this movement, which is chiefly a Light Infantry one (see PART III., No. XVII.), with ordered Arms, bayonets (or swords) unfixed: Troops armed with the long rifle, however, should also practise it with shouldered Arms and fixed bayonets (see PART II., No. XXXIII.).

### 1. *Forming Square.*

[On the Captain's word 'Sections'—The 1st Section faces to the left and disengages to the front; the 3rd and 4th Sections face to the right and disengage to the rear. On his word 'March'—\* The 2nd Section will fix bayonets (or swords), the remainder—being in file—will step off at the 'advance' (Riflemen at the 'shoulder'): halting, fronting, ordering Arms, and fixing bayonets (or swords), without word of command, as they arrive in Column. The distance between the Sections will be one pace of 21 inches.

FORM  
COMPANY  
SQUARE.

*On the word SQUARE—*

The *Captain* will move out 3 paces in front of the centre of the Company, facing towards it; and give

*Form close Column of Sections:*

on which the supernumerary Officers will face to their right, and

The *Coverer* will place himself in front of the leading file of the 1st Section, which he will lead into Column.

*Q. March.*

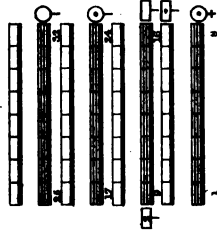
---

\* Suppose the Company standing with ordered Arms, bayonets (or swords) unfixed.

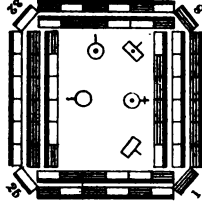
PART I. COMPANY DRILL. Nº XX. *Forming Close Column of Sections and Company Square.*

64

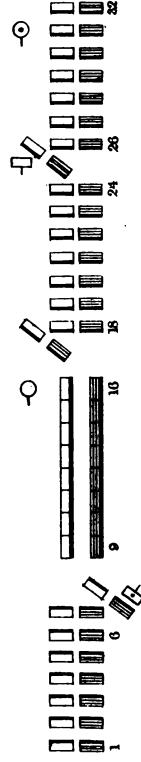
II. *The Column formed.*



III. *Prepare for Cavalry.-Ready.*



I. *Form close Column of Sections.*



*in 1st ed.*





Column having been formed:—The *Captain* will place himself on the left of the front rank of the 1st Section: the Section leaders falling in on the left flank, the remaining supernumeraries on the reverse flank, of their respective Sections.

The *Covering-serjeant* will cover the *Captain*.

The *Captain* will at once proceed to give the command *Prepare for Cavalry*; and, together with the other Officers and the non-commissioned officers, will move into the centre of the Column: the men will then face outwards so as to show a front of equal strength in every direction, those in the centre filling up the intervals if necessary.

The *Captain* will then give the word *Ready*: on which the men will move as directed in APPENDIX I. for a Square resisting Cavalry.

---

The Square will fire (on the Drill Instructor's *caution*) as directed in APPENDIX I.; by command of the *Captain*. After the kneeling ranks have fired and loaded (or, if they are not to fire, when they are required to rise), the *Captain* will give the word *Order Arms*, which, in the case of men armed with the long rifle, will apply also to the standing ranks.

[If the Drill Instructor signifies that he is about to move the Square, the *Captain* will give *Shoulder* (instead of *Order*) *Arms* which, in the case of men armed with the short rifle, will apply also to the standing ranks.]

As soon as the men have come to the 'order' (or 'shoulder') they will front into 'Column';

and the Officers and non-commissioned officers will resume their posts on the flanks.

(2) *To move the Square.*

THE COLUMN  
WILL ADVANCE  
(RETIRE, or MOVE  
TO THE —).

The *Captain*, having repeated the Drill Instructor's caution, will give [*Right-about* (or *To the right*, or *left*) *face*]. *Q. March.*

THE COLUMN  
WILL HALT.

On the word *HALT* being repeated by the *Captain*:—The Column will halt, and, if it has been moving to a flank or to the rear, will front without word of command. The *Captain* will then give *Order Arms*.

(3) *Re-forming Company.*

RE-FORM  
COMPANY.

On the word *COMPANY*—

The *Captain*, having directed the men to *Unfix bayonets* (or *swords*), will give *Re-form Company*, on which Nos. 1, 3, and 4 Sections will face outwards: and *Q. March*, on which they will move out at the 'advance' (*Riflemen*, at the 'shoulder'); the 1st, when clear, turning to the rear, the 3rd and 4th turning in succession to the front. Each of the three Sections will order Arms as it halts, and will dress up in line with the 2nd Section, without word of command: the Officers, &c., falling into their proper places.

---

See PART II., No. XXXIII.; *Note*, p. 164; and PART III., SEC. II., No. XVII.

No. XXI.—*Forming Rallying Square.*

(F. E. II., SEC. 33, p. 111.)

[The Drill Instructor will first cause the Company (if armed with the long rifle, to unfix bayonets and) to disperse; and will place an Officer, who will hold up his sword and face in the direction of the supposed enemy, as a rallying point.]

**FORM  
RALLYING  
SQUARE.**

*On the word SQUARE*—The men will run up as quickly as possible to the Officer placed as a rallying point: fixing bayonets (or swords) and ordering Arms as they reach him.

The 2 first men who come up to the Officer will form on his right and left, facing outwards: the 3 next in front, facing to the front: the 3 next in rear, facing to the rear. The next 4 men will place themselves one at each angle of the Square thus formed: the next 12, as they come up, completing the faces between those angles. After each completion of the faces of the Square, the 4 next men will place themselves one at each angle: others completing the faces as before.

(2) *To move the Square.*

**THE SQUARE  
WILL ADVANCE  
RETIRE, or MOVE  
TO THE —).**

The *Captain*, having repeated the Drill Instructor's caution, will give [*\*Shoulder Arms.*] *Inwards face*, on which the Square will face in the named direction; *Leading face: By the — dress*, on which the leading face will dress: and *Q. March*, on which the Square will step off.

*Note.*—A Square if advancing or retiring will march by the proper left; if moving to a flank, will march by the flank nearest to the proper front.

(3) *To resist Cavalry.*

**THE SQUARE  
WILL HALT.**

*On the word HALT*—The *Captain* will give *Halt*, on which the Square will halt and face outwards. He will then give *Prepare for Cavalry*.

---

\* If the men are armed with the long rifle.

*Ready*: on which last word the men will move as directed in APPENDIX I. (A).

[The Square will fire (on the Drill Instructor's *caution*) by command of the Captain: who will then give *Order Arms*, as directed at p. 55.]

(4.) *Re-forming Company.*

RE-FORM  
COMPANY.

On the word **COMPANY**—The *Captain* will give *Unfix bayonets* (or *swords*): on which the *Covering-serjeant* will mark the pivot flank of the Company, facing the supposed enemy.

He will then give *Re-form Company*: on which the men will form Company on the Coverer.

Dispersed parties may be formed, as above, in 2 or more Squares (each consisting of any number of men) according as they may be more or less dispersed; every man running to the rallying point nearest him. Each Officer on whom a Square is formed, will follow the directions above laid down for the Captain: the latter, only, giving *Re-form Company*.

See PART III., SEC. II., No. XVII.

*Practice for Assembling on Coverers.*

The Company having been dispersed, and the Covering-serjeant, or left-hand man, placed: on the word (or bugle sound) **ASSEMBLE**, the men will run in and form Company, as in Column Right in front, on the Serjeant or left-hand man; order Arms; and remain at *Attention*.

*Word of command for Dismissing a Company.*

(The men should be at the 'shoulder'.)


**TO THE RIGHT FACE.—LODGE ARMS.**

The men will leave the parade at the 'advance' (or, if *Riflemen*, at the 'shoulder').

[When men parade with side-arms, they will be dismissed thus: **TO THE RIGHT FACE.—BREAK OFF.**]

## PART II.—BATTALION DRILL.

---

 As the Drill of a Company is conducted with reference to the evolutions of a Battalion, so are the evolutions of a Battalion with a view to the manœuvres of a Brigade. All movements, as a general rule, should be covered by Skirmishers firing independently.

### (A.) FORMATION OF A BATTALION ON PARADE.

A Battalion assembles on Parade in open Column Right in front ; as follows :—

The several Companies having been formed, told off, and proved (as explained in PART I., pp. 12–14), on their private parades:—the Covering-serjeants, under the Adjutant's direction, will mark the spots where the pivot flanks of their Companies are to rest in Column on any given alignment ; taking wheeling distance (*see* p. 82).

On the sound *ADVANCE*: the Companies will be marched upon their respective Coverers into Column ; and each Captain will then dress his men, give the words *Eyes front*—*Order Arms*—*Stand at Ease*, and fall in.

On the Commanding Officer's word *TELL OFF THE BATTALION*, all the Captains take one pace to their front and face to the right.\* The Captain of No. 1 then gives No. 1 : †*Right Company* : then the Captain of No. 2, No. 2 : *Left Company* : then the Captain of No. 3, No. 3 : *Right Company* : and so on to the rear of the Column.

The Commanding Officer will next tell off the Battalion

---

\* Swords are not to be brought to the 'recover'.

† Odd numbers are *Right*, even numbers *Left*, Companies: the *Right-centre* and *Left-centre* Companies are the two immediately on the right and left of the centre of the Battalion. A *central* Company is any but either of the two flank Companies.

into Wings, and give *EYES FRONT*: on which the Captains will front, and take a pace to the rear into their places.

The Column will then be wheeled into Line. *See* p. 128.

**INSPECTION.**—When Companies in Column are required to take Open order for Inspection, they will be considered as independent Companies. Accordingly, at the Battalion Commander's *caution REAR RANKS TAKE OPEN ORDER*, the Officers and Coverer of each Company will place themselves, and at his word *MARCH* will move, as when taking Open order in *Line* (*see* page 15). The supernumerary rank will step back 4 paces.

Open order having been taken: the Battalion Commander will, by permission of the Inspecting Officer, give the word **LEADING COMPANY STAND FAST. REMAINING COMPANIES: ORDER ARMS.—STAND AT EASE.**

The Captain of each (except the leading) Company, as the Inspecting Officer approaches, will give it the commands *Attention—Shoulder Arms*. Each Captain will receive the Inspecting Officer with a salute, and will follow him during the inspection of his Company; and as the inspection of his Company is finished, will give *Rear rank take Close order: March. Order Arms.—Stand at Ease*. He will then, together with the Coverer and Lieutenant, resume his proper place in Column; the supernumerary rank closing up.

(F. E., pp. 222–226.)

#### (B.) POSTING OF OFFICERS AND COLOURS.

##### <sup>(1)</sup> *In Line (at Close order)*—

The Senior and Junior Majors are 6 paces in rear of the centre of the Right and Left Wings respectively; the Adjutant is 6 paces in rear of the Colours.

The Captain, Supernumeraries, and Covering-serjeant of each Company are posted as explained in B<sup>(1)</sup>, page 8: except the † Lieutenant of the Company on the left of the Line, who is placed on the left of its front rank, covered by a Serjeant in the rear rank.

(F. E., p. 230.)

† In *all* formations from Line this Officer and his Covering-serjeant will fall back, on the *Caution*, into the Supernumerary rank.

**N.B.**—When Companies are to move along the rear of the Line: when a Line is to advance in Double Column from the centre, or to retire from a flank, or from both flanks in rear of the centre: and in forming Column on any named Company: the Supernumerary rank will, on the *Caution*, close up 2 paces.

**THE COLOURS.** The Colour party, arranged as described at p. 67, is between the two centre Companies.

(<sup>2</sup>) *In Column of Companies—*

The Senior and Junior Majors are 2 paces from the reverse flanks of the centre of the Right and Left Wings respectively. The Adjutant is 2 paces from the reverse flank of the right-centre or left-centre Company, according as Right or Left is in front.

When a Column is ordered to *advance* or *retire*:—If the Column is at open distance, the Major of the leading Wing will place himself in rear of the pivot flank of the 2nd Company from the front, taking care not to get in front of the Captain of the 3rd Company; if at close or quarter distance, the Major of the rear Wing will place himself in rear of the line of Captains: to superintend the direction.

The Captain, Supernumeraries, and Covering-serjeant of each Company: as directed at p. 8. [When a Column is ordered to move by the reverse flank, and the Captains are not ordered to change flanks, the Lieutenants will move up to lead.]

[In *Route Marching*, whether the troops are marching in Column or in Fours, the Majors' usual places will be in rear of their respective Wings: if there is only one Major, his place will be in rear of the Battalion. Captains march in rear of their Companies, which will be led by a Subaltern or Serjeant. Company leaders when repeating the Battalion Commander's word *ATTENTION* or *MARCH AT EASE*, will look to the rear, so as to be distinctly heard by the leader next in rear.]

(F. E., pp. 66, 225, 249.)

**THE COLOURS.** In open or quarter-distance Column, the Colour party is posted in rear of the leading centre Company: at one pace distant from the rear rank, covering the 3rd, 4th and 5th files from the pivot flank. In *counter-marching*, it countermarches independently, and moves across to the rear of the new leading centre Company.

In close Column, the Colour party forms in single rank



(see p. 67) between the two centre Companies; and in countermarching can only face about, correcting its formation when the Column opens out.

(F. E., pp. 222, 249, 267.)

*Note.*—When Companies lose their order in Column, Officers will always take post as in Column *Right* in front: and the Captains will then re-number from the front (p. 59). If the Battalion is simply inverted—the regular succession of the Companies remaining unchanged—it will not be necessary to re-number.

(F. E., p. 221.)

(3) *In Column of Subdivisions (or Sections)*—

The Captain, Supernumeraries, and Covering-serjeant of each Company: as directed at p. 9.

The Colour party is one pace in rear of the leading Subdivision (or Section) of the leading centre Company.

[In Double Column, the Colour party is in rear of the 2 leading Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections).]

(4) *In Echellon of Companies*—

In an Oblique Echellon, each Captain marches on the ‘inner’ flank of his Company: in a Direct Echellon, the Captain of the leading Company marches on its outer flank; the remaining Captains on their ‘inner’ flank; aligned with the present front rank. In both cases, the Covering-serjeant of each Company is on the reverse (or ‘outer’) flank of its present front rank. (See p. 2.)

Subalterns: as in *Column*.

[In an Oblique Echellon of Subdivisions (or Sections) formed from Line, to whichever flank inclining, the Officers and Covering-serjeant of each Company retain the places they occupy in Line. See p. 34.]

The Colours form an independent Section.

(5) *In the flank march by Fours*—

The Captain, Supernumeraries, and Covering-serjeant of each Company: as directed at p. 9.

*Exceptions.*—<sup>(1)</sup> When a Column takes ground to a flank by Fours, Company leaders march on that flank of their leading four which is nearest to the ‘Company of direction’ (see p. 125): if ground is taken to the reverse flank, the Captains—unless ordered to do so—will not change

flanks, but the Lieutenants will move up and lead. <sup>(9)</sup> When a *close* Column takes ground to a flank by Fours, each Company leader—Captain or Lieutenant, as the case may be—will place himself in front of the front-rank man of his leading four: the Covering-serjeant, if on the leading flank, marching at the head of the 2nd rank. The Supernumeraries will march between the fours. (F. E., pp. 66, 98.)

## (C.) RULE FOR CHANGING FLANKS.

The Rule for changing flanks having been fully stated (*see* page 9), and the necessary directions having also been given, as occasion required, in PART I., the latter will not be repeated in PART II.

## (D.) DRESSING.

[For the principle on which Companies are dressed, *see* p. 10.]

When a halted Column is wheeled into Line: each Captain will dress his Company, when in Line, from the pivot man (*see* pp. 20, 32). When the Companies of a Battalion (or their parts) come up *successively* into Line, in which case the dressing is always made from the point of *appui* (*see* p. 66) to the opposite hand:—Captains will invariably lead up into Line on that flank of their Company (or its leading Subdivision, or Section) which is nearest to the Battalion point of *appui*; and will dress their men, when halted, from the 2nd file beyond the Covering-serjeant of the Company last formed in Line, the outward flank of which is considered the point of *appui* for the succeeding Company.

In Column, on the word *Dress*, the men correct their own dressing, unless it is otherwise directed.

(F. E., pp. 74, 220.)

## (E.) CLOSING TO CORRECT DISTANCES.

1. When too much or too little distance has been taken in forming, or wheeling into, Line, the wrong distance will be corrected by the Side-step: the closing being invariably made to, or from, the centre of the Battalion.

<sup>(1)</sup> If the number of paces a Company is to close, is

named by the Battalion Commander, its Captain remains in Line : standing fast if the Company is closed to the left in order to take in files on its right ; closing with the Company on his right if that Company is closed to the right in order to admit files into his own ; but always closing with his Company when closing towards the centre of the Battalion.

(2) If the number of paces a \* Company is to close is not named by the Battalion Commander :—On the word **CLOSE**, its Captain moves out and (crossing by the front, if in the Right Wing) places himself 3 paces in front of that flank which is nearest the centre of the Battalion, facing towards the men. On the word **MARCH**, he closes with his Company ; gives *Halt* when the required distance is taken, or (if the Company had to take in files) when the files that were out have come up into their places ; and then (repassing by the rear, if in the Right Wing) resumes his post in Line. See p. 43.

\* *N.B.*—When a *Wing* of a Battalion is ordered to close, without the numbers of the Companies being specified ; whether the paces are named or not, the Captains do not move out. The word **HALT** will be given by the Battalion Commander.

2. Should a *Column*, or any of its Companies, be ordered to close to either flank, each Captain closes with his Company : unless he has previously taken up fresh covering, in which case he will stand fast and his Company will close to him.

(F. E., pp. 98, 230.)

#### (F.) FIRINGS.

In all firings, the Captains will fall to the rear of the centre of their Company on the caution : returning to their post in Line as the men come to the 'shoulder' (or 'order') after having ceased to fire.

(1) In firing by Companies from Right to Left and *vice versâ*, or from flanks to centre and *vice versâ* : the Captain of each Company will give the word *No. — : At — yards*,

*Ready* when the preceding Company comes to the loading position, and *Present* after a pause of slow time. [When firing from centre to flanks: the right-centre Company will commence, then the left-centre Company will take up the fire, then the Company on the right of the right-centre Company, and so on (alternately) to the flanks.]

*N.B.*—If the number of rounds is ordered: each Captain, when his Company has given its fire in the last round, will give *No. —: Shoulder Arms*. If (the number of rounds *not* having been specified) any Company is at the ‘ready’ when *CEASE FIRING* sounds, its Captain will give *No. —: Half-cock Arms. Shoulder Arms*.

(2) In firing by Battalion or by Wings, and in File-firing, Captains give no word of command.

[File-firing *during formations* commences with the Company of formation, as soon as the front is clear of the Skirmishers. The outer Section of the last formed Company will reserve its fire till the succeeding Company has been dressed and got *Eyes front*: should the firing, however, be ordered to commence from the centre, each Company, when it is formed in Line and has got the word *Eyes front*, will take up the fire at once, from its flank nearest the centre of the Line.]

Troops armed with the short rifle will always, in Line, fire front-rank kneeling.

(F. E., pp. 188, 196.)

#### (G.) ALIGNMENT AND POINTS OF FORMATION.

That extremity of the \*alignment on which a formation is made, and *from* which all intermediate points are dressed, is called the Point of †*appui*: the opposite extremity of the alignment, *upon* which the Line or intermediate points are dressed, is termed the Distant point.

*E.g.*—When a Column Right in front deploys on the leading Company, the point of *appui* for the Line will be on the right of that Company; and the distant point will be on the left of the intended Line. And, similarly, were the same Column to deploy on the rear Company, the point of *appui* would be on the left of that Company; and the distant point would be on the right of the intended Line.

---

\* *i.e.* the imaginary straight line determined previously to a formation.

† *Appui*—Fr. A support.

When Line is formed on a central Company, the centre of that Company ; when on the 2 centre Companies, the centre of the Battalion ; will be the point of *appui* : and there will be a distant point on each flank of the Line.

When Companies (or their parts) come up successively into Line, the outward flank of the last formed and halted body is, as has been before stated, considered as the point of *appui* for the succeeding one : the men, in all cases, looking towards the Battalion point of *appui* for their dressing.

On every occasion of a formation in Line on a flank Company, the Adjutant will move out, on the *Caution*, to mark where the \*outward flank of the Battalion will rest : when the formation is on the centre of the Battalion or on a central Company (*see* pp. 138, 147), the Junior Major will mark the left, the Adjutant the right, of the Line.

When a mounted Officer gives a point, he will place his horse at right angles with, and facing towards, the alignment ; and the head of the horse, which must be on the same line with the foot points described below, will mark the line.

In all Deployments, and formations of Line, on any one Company, the Covering-serjeant of that Company will be placed in front of one of its flank files, the senior supernumerary Serjeant in front of the other, as a base : when Line is formed on the two centre Companies (or Subdivisions), the Coverer of each centre Company will mark its outward flank, the centre Serjeant giving a third (centre) base point. The Coverer of each of the remaining Companies will run out as it arrives within 20 paces of its point of formation, and will mark its distance ; covering in the line established by the base points. [The base marked by the two Serjeants of the named Company (or by the three central base points) is called the '*Base of formation*,' and is always determined before the formation commences : the points given by the Coverers of the re-

---

\* *i.e.* the flank furthest from the point of *appui*.

maining Companies, during the progress of the formation, are called '*intermediate points*']

\* A non-commissioned officer when marking a point will stand with recovered Arms, facing to the point of *appui*: when the men move up to dress upon him, he will hold out his inner arm at right angles to his body with the fist clenched; dropping his arm as soon as the man touching his hand is steady. See *Duties of Covering-serjeants in Battalion*.

The dressing and covering of all pivots and points must be corrected by a Field-officer from the point of *appui*: this will be done by the Major nearest the point of formation, or by the Senior Major when the formation is on the centre of the Battalion (or on a central Company). Points must always be kept clear: Companies should, therefore, be halted well in rear of them and then dressed up into Line.

Thus all Lines will be dressed from the point of *appui* on the distant point(s), and at arms' length in rear of the line of foot points.

(F. E., pp. 218-220; 229.)

THE COLOURS.—The Colours, each carried by an Officer, are formed in an independent party composed (except when the Battalion is in close Column) of 2 ranks:—the front rank consisting of the Queen's colour on the right, the Regimental colour on the left, and a Serjeant in the centre; the rear rank consisting of 3 non-commissioned officers. In close Column, the Colour party is formed in a single rank between the 2 centre Companies: its rear-rank Serjeants being on the right of the front rank if the Column is Right in front, on the left of it if Left is in front.

The Colours are posted as already stated (pp. 61, 62): and move, independently, from one formation to another, by command of the Officer carrying the Queen's colour. They will (except during the *Manual and Platoon*: see No. XXXV.) be shouldered, sloped, or ordered, with the rifles of the rank and file.

(F. E., pp. 222, 249.)

---

\* This rule does not apply to the Covering-serjeant who marks the outer flank of the *front* Company (Subdivision, or Section) of an open Column wheeling from the halt into Line, or the reverse flank of the future leading Company (Subdivision, or Section) when a halted Line breaks into open Column. See pp. 20, 22.

## SECTION I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

A Battalion in Line may, if necessary, be told off from right to left, as it is told off in Column from front to rear (see p. 59): Captains, to number their Companies, taking a pace to the front and facing to the left.

No. I.—*A Battalion in Line taking Open order, and resuming Close order.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 4, p. 232.)

(A) *Taking Open order.*

[On the word *ORDER*—The right-hand rear-rank man of each Company, and the left-hand rear-rank man of the whole Line, step back 2 paces and face to the right. On the word *MARCH*—They front, and raise their arms till their rank gets the word *Eyes front*. The Serjeant-major dresses the whole of the supernumerary rank: then gives *Eyes front*, and falls in on the right of the Staff-serjeants.]

REAR RANK  
TAKE  
OPEN ORDER.  

---

MARCH.  

---

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

(1) *On the word ORDER*—

The Senior Major moves up to the right, the Junior Major and Adjutant to the left, of the front rank of the Line.

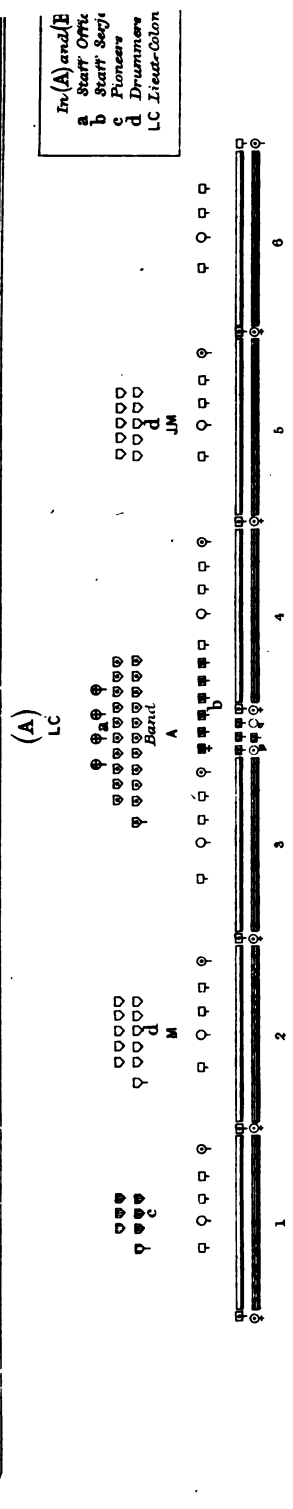
(2) *On the word MARCH*—

The Adjutant remains steady. The Majors move up to the line of Officers: the Senior Major dresses it, and gives *STEADY*.

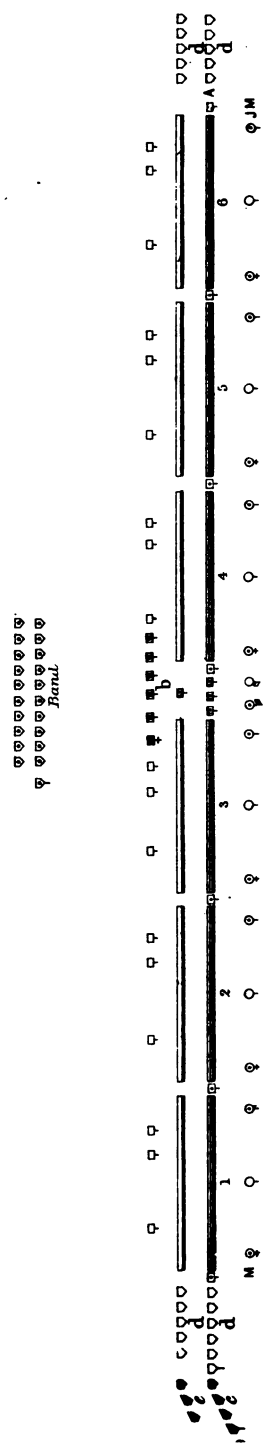
CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS.

The Captain and Subalterns of each Company

PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> I. (A) *A Battalion formed in Line at Close order.*  
 (B) *Open order, for Review (singly).*



(B)







act as in the corresponding No. (II.) of PART I. : except that the Captain does not dress the Subalterns after they have moved out to the front, but looks to his right ; all the Officers porting swords, and looking to their front, at the *Major's* word STEADY.

[The Staff Officers (*i. e.* the Paymaster, Surgeon, Assistant-surgeon, and Quartermaster) will form on the right of the front rank of the Line, at one pace distance : their swords not drawn.]

### THE COLOURS.

*On the word MARCH*—The Colours take 3 paces to the front, and dress with the line of Officers.

\* \* For directions for Officers and Colours when Open order is taken for the Manual Exercise, see No. XXXV.

### (B) *Resuming Close order.*

REAR RANK  
TAKE  
CLOSE ORDER.  

---

MARCH.

### FIELD OFFICERS.

(1) *On the word ORDER*—

The mounted Officers turn their horses' heads to the right.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—

They resume their places in Close order.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNs : as in No. II. of PART I.

[The Staff Officers face inwards on the *Caution*; and at the word MARCH, resume their places in rear of the Band.]

### THE COLOURS.

(1) *On the word ORDER*—Face to the right.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—Resume their places in Line.

## SECTION I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

No. II.—*Advancing and Retiring in Line.*

(F. E. IV., Sec. 5, p. 236.)

[The centre Serjeant of the leading rank directs; the touch being to the centre.]

(A) *Advancing.*

THE LINE WILL  
ADVANCE.

STEADY.  
Q. MARCH.

BATTALION:  
HALT.

*On the word* ADVANCE—

The Adjutant gives the general direction to the centre Serjeant, and then gives STEADY. When the men step off, he remains (with the Serjeant-major) halted in rear of the centre till the Line has advanced 20 or 30 paces; to ascertain whether the direction is correct: He then follows in rear.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS: are in their proper places in Line.

*Charging in Line.*

PREPARE TO  
CHARGE.

CHARGE.

BATTALION:  
HALT.

*On the Caution*—The front rank bring their Arms to the 'trail'; the rear rank continuing at the 'slope': and on the following word CHARGE, the front rank comes to the 'charge'; the whole breaking into double time.

*On the word* HALT—The Battalion will halt; both ranks coming to the 'shoulder', and

remaining steady in whatever position they may be.

[*Riflemen* will advance in the first instance, at the 'shoulder', with swords fixed; and on the *Caution*, the front rank will trail, the rear rank will slope. On the word *HALT*, both ranks will halt and shoulder.]

(F. E., pp. 141, 154.)

(B) *Retiring.*

[On the word *RETIRE*, and after the word *HALT: FRONT*—The two left files of the right-centre Company take 2 paces to the rear, and then one pace outwards from each other; resuming their places, in each case, as soon as the Adjutant and Serjeant-major have passed through the Line.]

N.B.—A Line will never be faced to the rear till every preparation has been made for its marching off.

*On the word RETIRE*—

The Adjutant and Serjeant-major pass through the ranks to the proper front of the Colour party, to superintend the direction of the rear-rank centre Serjeant; the Adjutant giving the word *STEADY* when it is determined. At the word *HALT: FRONT*, they will return (passing, as before, through the Line) to their places in the proper rear.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS—as in (A): the former marching in the *present* rear rank.

THE COLOURS.

*On the word RETIRE*—The Colour party faces about.

---

For a Line changing *Front* by the formation of Open Column, see No. XXIV.: by Echelon, see No. XXVII.

THE LINE WILL  
RETIRE.

STEADY.  
RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.

Q. MARCH.

BATTALION:  
HALT; FRONT.

## SECTION I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

No. III.—*Dressing a Battalion in Line.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 7, p. 237.)

THE BATTALION  
WILL DRESS  
BY THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT).

COVERERS:  
— PACES TO THE  
FRONT.

Q. MARCH.

STEADY.  
BATTALION:  
Q. MARCH.

STEADY.

## FIELD OFFICERS.

The Senior or Junior Major, according as the dressing is to be by the Right or Left, will move up and dress the Coverers, when they are in line, from the named flank: and will then give STEADY. When the Battalion has been dressed, the same Major will give a 2nd word STEADY, and resume his place.

## CAPTAINS.

If dressing is to be by the Right:—

(1) *On the word* FRONT—

Take one pace to the front, and one pace to their left: and, their Coverers having passed to the front, resume their places.

If dressing is to be by the Left:—

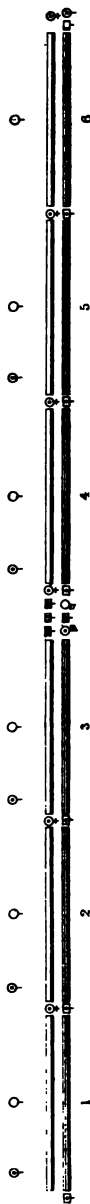
(1) *On the word* FRONT—

Change flanks: but do not move up into their places on the left of their Companies till the Coverers have moved to the front.

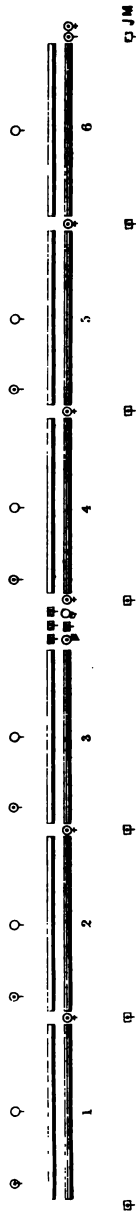
[The Captain of the left - flank Company, when he moves up, will place himself on the left of his Lieutenant.]

**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. NO III. Dressing a Battalion in Line, by the Left.**

*I. After the tuition COVERERS: SIX PACES TO THE FRONT.*

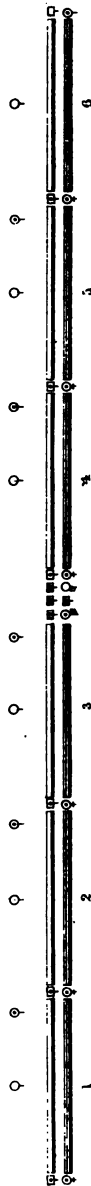


*II. After the command Q. MARCH, and the Junior Major's first word STEADY.*



*The Coverers will, as usual, give their points at arm's length.*

*III. After the Junior Major's second word STEADY.*



*The Colour party will move up with the right-centre Company, and be dressed with it by its Captain.*



(2) *On the 2nd word MARCH—*

The Line steps off. Each Captain when his Company is two paces in rear of the alignment gives *No. — : Halt, dress up*; moves out, dresses his Company from the 2nd file beyond his Covering-serjeant towards the named flank, gives *Eyes front*, and (changing flank if necessary) falls in on its right.

(3) *On the 2nd word STEADY—*

The Captains take one pace to their front and one to their left, to let the Coverers pass to the rear: and then resume their places.

SUBALTERNS.

(1) *On the word FRONT—*

The Subaltern on the left of the Line takes one pace to his left: and his Coverer having passed to the front, resumes his place.

(1) *On the 2nd word STEADY—*

The same Officer takes a pace to his left to let his Coverer pass to the rear, and then resumes his place.



## SECTION I—LINE MOVEMENTS.

No. IV.—*Advancing and Retiring by Wings.*

(F. E. IV., Sec. 8, p. 238.)

[The Right Wing is commanded by the Senior Major, and led by the centre Serjeant: the Left Wing is commanded by the Junior Major, and led by the Officer carrying the Regimental colour. The rear Wing may at any time be brought up in line with the other: no points are given.]

(A) *Advancing and Firing.*

(If the Line is advancing)—FIELD OFFICERS.

BATTALION:  
HALT.

THE BATTALION  
WILL FIRE AND  
ADVANCE BY  
WINGS.

*On the word WINGS*—The Junior Major gives  
LEFT WING: FIRE A VOLLEY, AT — YARDS. READY—PRESENT.  
The men having fired and loaded, he gives LEFT  
WING: SHOULDER ARMS. BY THE RIGHT: Q. MARCH: and  
when the Wing has advanced 30 paces, LEFT WING:  
HALT.

The Senior Major, the moment the Left Wing  
has fired, gives RIGHT WING—BY THE LEFT: Q. MARCH.  
and when his Wing has advanced 30 paces,  
RIGHT WING: HALT. On hearing Q. MARCH given  
by the Junior Major, he gives RIGHT WING: FIRE A  
VOLLEY, AT — YARDS. READY—PRESENT: and the men  
having fired and loaded, RIGHT WING: SHOULDER  
ARMS. BY THE LEFT: Q. MARCH.

The Wings continue to advance alternately;  
each being halted by its Commander when (after  
firing and re-loading) it has passed the other by  
30 paces: and being ordered to fire when the  
Wing in rear, having re-loaded, gets Q. MARCH.

(B) *Retiring and Firing.*

(From the Halt.)  
 † THE BATTALION  
 WILL FIRE AND  
 RETIRE BY  
 WINGS.

FIELD OFFICERS.

*On the word WINGS*—The Junior Major gives  
 LEFT WING: FIRE A VOLLEY, AT — YARDS. READY—PRESENT.  
 The men having fired and loaded, he gives LEFT  
 WING: SHOULDER ARMS. RIGHT-ABOUT FACE. BY THE PRE-  
 SENT LEFT: Q. MARCH: and when the Wing has  
 retired 15 paces, LEFT WING: HALT, FRONT.

The †Senior Major, the instant the Left Wing  
 halts, gives RIGHT WING: FIRE A VOLLEY, AT — YARDS.  
 READY—PRESENT. The men having fired and loaded,  
 he gives RIGHT WING: SHOULDER ARMS. RIGHT-ABOUT  
 FACE. BY THE PRESENT RIGHT: Q. MARCH: and when  
 the Wing has retired 15 paces beyond the Left  
 Wing, RIGHT WING: HALT, FRONT.

The Wings continue to retire alternately;  
 each being halted and fronted by its Commander  
 when (having re-loaded and been faced-about)  
 it has retired 15 paces beyond the other, and  
 being ordered to fire when the other Wing is  
 halted and fronted.

‡ If this caution is given while the Battalion  
 is *marching to the Rear*—the Senior Major im-  
 mediately gives RIGHT WING: HALT, FRONT: the  
 Left Wing getting the same word from its  
 Commander when it has moved on 15 paces.  
 The Right Wing will then be ordered to fire;  
 and both Wings will proceed as above described.

---

Both in advancing and retiring:—The Ad-  
 jutant will move in rear of the inner flank of  
 the Right Wing, the Serjeant-major in rear of

the inner flank of the Left ; superintending the direction.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS : are posted as in Line.

---

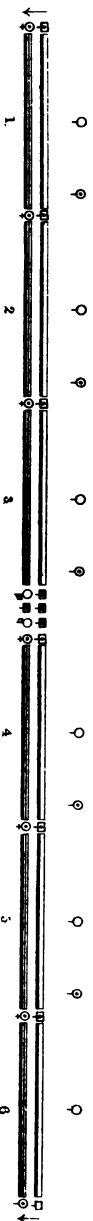
**THE COLOURS in (A) and (B).**

The Queen's colour, and the two centre and the right-hand rear-rank Serjeants, march on the inward flank of the Right Wing : the Regimental colour, and the remaining rear-rank Serjeant, on the inward flank of the Left Wing.

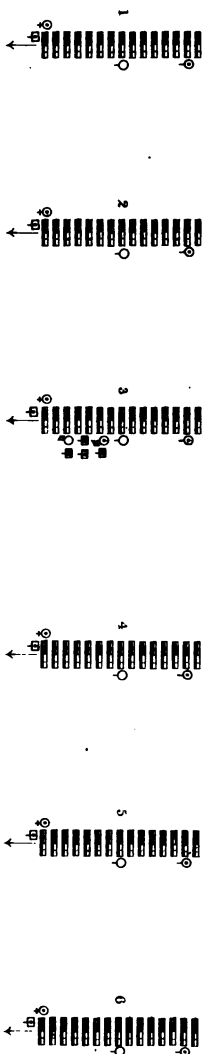


*into four.*

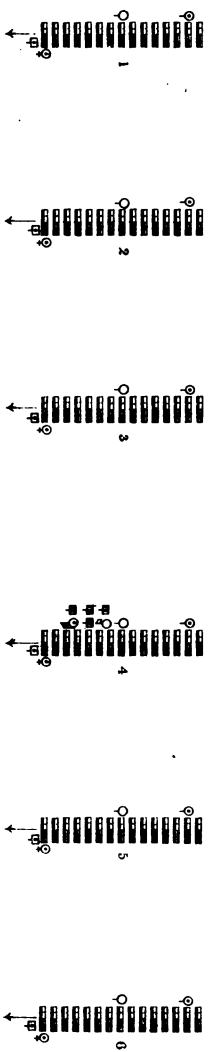
*I. The line advancing.*



*II. After the word FORM FOURS: LEFT. RIGHT WHEEL. (supposing the Fours are to pass from the Left).*



*III. After the word FORM FOURS: RIGHT. LEFT WHEEL. (supposing the Fours are to pass from the Right).*



M. D. M. del.

Invent. Dn

## SECTION I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

No. V.<sup>(1)</sup>—*When a Battalion advancing in  
Line passes Obstacles.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 9, p. 240.)

(A) *By all the Companies breaking into Fours.*

FROM THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT)  
OF COMPANIES  
PASS BY FOURS  
TO THE FRONT.

FORM FOURS:  
RIGHT.  
LEFT WHEEL.

or  
FORM FOURS:  
LEFT.  
RIGHT WHEEL.

[No. —:  
COMPANY OF  
DIRECTION.]

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Junior or Senior Major, according as the fours pass from the right or left, will superintend the dressing of the heads of Companies.

CAPTAINS.

Each Captain (having, if the movement is from the left, changed flank by the original front) will place himself on that flank of his leading four which is nearest the Company of direction; preserving his distance from the Company next him on that flank, as far as circumstances will allow. When no Company of direction is named, that Company which, if *FRONT TURN* were given, would be at the head of the Column, will direct.

The Battalion when thus broken into Fours, becomes an open Column taking ground to a flank; and the Column, should a further reduction of front be necessary, may close to either flank or on the centre. (*See* No. XVIII.)

*Note.*—If, during this movement, it be required to form **SQUARE**—the Column will be ordered to form Square on the centre: or, if it has been closed to quarter distance, to turn to the front and form on the leading Company. (*See* pp. 171, 172.)

## THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will march in rear of the usual files from the leading flank of the left-centre or right-centre Company according as the word was *FORM FOURS: RIGHT* or *FORM FOURS: LEFT*: so as to be in its proper place in Column when *HALT: FRONT* (or *FRONT TURN*) is given.

---

*Re-forming Line.* If *HALT: FRONT*, or *FRONT TURN*, is given, the Battalion will be in open Column (Left or Right in front according as the word was *FORM FOURS: RIGHT* or *FORM FOURS: LEFT*): and may be then wheeled into Line as described in No. XIX. Or, Line may be formed by the word [*IN DOUBLE TIME*:] *FRONT FORM COMPANIES*: each Company forming on its leading file, as directed in No. XIII. of PART I.\*

(B) *By breaking off Files.*

If the Obstacles are small, and opposite to parts only of the Line:—the files impeded by them may break off as from the flank of a Company in Column (*see* No. XVIII. of PART I.): always, in so doing, turning towards and wheeling in rear of their own Company; or, if in the centre of their Company, turning to the right and wheeling to the left. Additional files may break off as occasion requires; all the files, however, moving up to the front as soon as practicable.

Should a Line thus broken be halted, the broken-off files will form in rear of the Obstacles,

---

\* Should the movement have been from the *right* of Companies, the Captains—being already on the right, their proper flank in Line—will *not*, in this instance, move across (as directed at p. 40) to meet the wheeling flank of their Companies.

in lines parallel to the front ; so as to present an apparently unbroken Line, and to be able to fire.

[A Company or Subdivision (or a succession of files amounting to a Subdivision) broken off, will move by Fours.]

¶ *Advancing by double Fours (or Files) from the centre.*

**ADVANCE BY  
DOUBLE FOURS  
(or FILES)  
FROM THE  
CENTRE.**

**FORM FOURS:  
INWARDS (or  
NWARDS TURN).  
RIGHT AND  
LEFT WHEEL.**

A Line may also, if necessary, pass Obstacles by advancing by double Fours (or Files) from the centre. In this movement, each Captain will march in his usual place with his leading four (or file) : but *all* the Supernumeraries will be formed in single rank between the Wings, thus forming a 9th (or 5th) rank. The Colour party will be formed in single rank between the two centre Companies ; its front rank leading, and both front and rear ranks marching Right in front ; the Queen's colour will move between the two leading fours (or files).

(F. E., p. 255.)



## SECTION I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

No. V.<sup>(2)</sup>— *When a Battalion retiring in Line passes Obstacles, or marches through a Relieving Line.*

(F. E. IV., Sec. 10, p. 244.)

(A) *Passing Obstacles.*

OFFICERS and COLOURS : as in No. V.<sup>(1)</sup>

FROM THE  
PROPER RIGHT  
(or LEFT) OF  
COMPANIES PASS  
BY FOURS  
TO THE REAR.

FORM FOURS:  
LEFT.  
RIGHT WHEEL.  
or  
FORM FOURS:  
RIGHT.  
LEFT WHEEL.

[No. — :  
COMPANY OF  
DIRECTION.]

(B) *Marching through a Relieving Line.*

The Line will receive the command to break into Fours, when it arrives at 12 paces from the relieving Line: the latter throwing back files to let the fours of the former pass through.

If, however, the Line is *at the Halt*, and the relieving Line is advancing in its rear; the former will get the command to break into Fours from the right of Companies [FORM FOURS: RIGHT. RIGHT WHEEL] when the latter arrives within a Company's wheeling distance; and will then pass through the rear Line as above directed.

OFFICERS and COLOURS : as in No. V.<sup>(1)</sup>

*Note.*—As a general rule, the Relieving Line will be kept as far as possible unbroken: but for purposes of parade both Lines may form Four deep, and the fours of the one pass through the fours of the other.

*Re-forming Line.*—1. If HALT: FRONT, or FRONT TURN, is given, the Battalion will be in open Column (Right or Left in front according as the Companies

passed by Fours from the proper right or proper left): and may then be wheeled into Line (*see* No. XIX.) to the proper front.—2. Line may also be formed to the proper front by the command *ON THE LEADING FILES: RIGHT- (or LEFT-) ABOUT FORM COMPANIES*. In this case, all the Coverers and the supernumerary Serjeant of the leading Company—*i.e.*, the Company that would be at the head of the Column were *HALT, FRONT (or FRONT TURN)* given—will be called out in time to be dressed in line, by a mounted Officer, before the heads of the Companies reach them. The Company at the head of the Column will march upon, and form round, its senior supernumerary Serjeant; each of the other Companies forming, in like manner, on the Coverer of the Company which was next in its front in Column. *See* PART I., No. XIII. (c).—3. If it is intended to re-form Line and continue the retreat, the command will be *REAR FORM COMPANIES.—FORWARD*.

## SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

### § *Of Columns.*

Columns may be *single, i.e.*, formed of a \* row of single Companies (or parts of Companies) parallel to each other; or *double, i.e.*, formed of two such rows of Companies (or parts of Companies), one row on the flank of the other. Companies (or their parts) in single Column cover and dress to the pivot flank, to the left when Right is in front, and *vice versâ* (see page 2): but in double Column the proper left, except when it is otherwise ordered, is always the directing flank.

[In Brigade, "Contiguous Columns" are Columns in line, with intervals of six paces between them.]

(1) In *Open Column*, the Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) are at wheeling distance: *i.e.*, each is placed at a distance equal to its own front† from the one immediately in front of it, measuring from the heels of the front rank of the one to the heels of the front rank of the other. A Battalion therefore, when in open Column, occupies the same extent of ground it would cover if wheeled into Line, less the front of the leading Company.

(2) *Half-distance* and *Quarter-distance Columns* occupy respectively, as their names imply, one-half and one-quarter the space required for an open Column. The quarter-distance Column is applicable to most of the changes of position of an open Column, and is the Column formation

---

\* The Austrian and Prussian Règlements use this word (*Reih*) to describe the position of Companies in Column.

† *i.e.*, including the space occupied by the Captain.

generally adopted: it cannot reduce its front beyond breaking off one or two files from the pivot flanks.

(3) A *Close Column* is formed with the Companies at 2 paces' distance from each other, measuring from the heels of the *rear-rank* men of one Company to the heels of the front-rank men of the next. The peculiarities in a close Column consist:—first, in the arrangement of the Colour party (*see* p. 67); secondly, in the way the Column counter-marches (*see* p. 84); thirdly, in the posting of Officers when the Column takes ground to a flank by Fours (*see* p. 62). The close Column formation is applied when, in Brigade, contiguous Columns are wheeled into mass; but, as a general rule, is only used when rendered necessary by confined space. A Column while at close distance, is not capable of any diminution of front.

(4) *Double Columns*, in which all advances from the centre are made, are formed from Line on the 2 centre Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections); at the wheeling distance of the Companies (or parts of Companies) of which each single Column is composed, unless it is otherwise directed. A Double Column can be re-formed into Line from the centre in half the time that a single Column could be re-formed from either flank: inasmuch as the formation will proceed simultaneously on both flanks.

(F. E., pp. 246, 247, 298.)

#### ¶ 1. *Columns diminishing and increasing Front.*

Columns should always move with the largest front of which the ground will admit.

Should it be necessary to diminish the front of an open Column on the March: each Company in succession will diminish its front on reaching the defile, the front being again increased as soon as practicable. If the Column is at the Halt, all the Companies at once may be diminished to Subdivisions, and further diminished to Sections: and all the Sections simultaneously may be again increased to Subdivisions (or at once to

Companies). Companies in Double Column may reduce and again increase their front, in like manner. (See PART I., Nos. XVI., XVII.)

When a Column marching on an alignment encounters an Obstacle, the march will be continued direct to the Obstacle, which will be passed by diverging (whenever practicable) to the *reverse flank*, so as not to cloud the line of pivots: the alignment will again be taken up by the pivots on the other side of the Obstacle, at a point placed for that purpose. Files, as a general rule, should be broken off from the pivot flank: see PART I., No. XVIII.

A Double Column may also advance (as described for a Line, in ¶ p. 79) BY DOUBLE FOURS (OR FILES) FROM THE CENTRE: re-forming, however, as soon as possible.

(F. E., pp. 254, 255.)

#### ¶ 2. *Columns changing Front.*

A Column, without moving off the ground it occupies, may change its front to the Rear,—becoming Right instead of Left in front, and *vice versé*—by each Company countermarching. (See PART I., No. XV.)

A Column at close distance countermarches by Ranks; at any other distance, by Files.

A Column may also change its front to the Rear on its own ground,—the order of the Companies (and, consequently, the proper pivot flank) remaining unchanged,—by the 'Wheel of Subdivisions round the centre': see No. XVI. A Double Column will change front in the same manner.

---

#### *Covering of Officers in Column.*

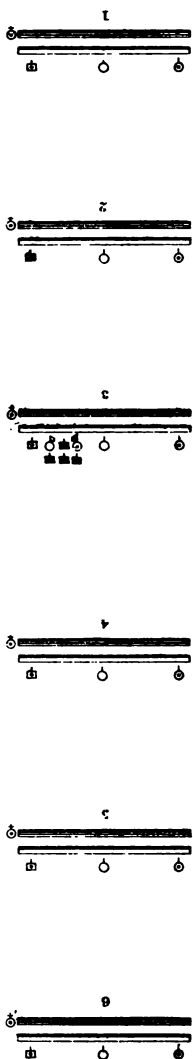
(1) The leader of the front Company (Subdivision, or Section) of a Column marching on an alignment, must move upon his marching points without regarding the men; and each leader in rear keep accurate distance from the Company (Subdivision, or Section) immediately in his front, the leader of which is the only one he should be able to see.

(2) When a close or quarter-distance Column is *wheeling*, the leader of the 2nd Company covers on the leader of the 1st: and each leader in rear should be able to see only the two leaders next in front of him. (See No. XV.)

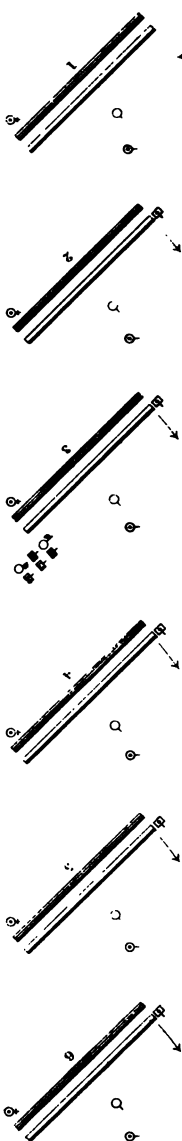


**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> VI. A Battalion in Line wheeling, from the Halt, into open Column. Right in front.**

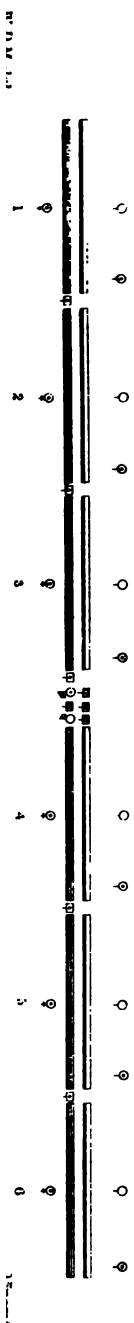
**III. The Movement completed.**



**II. During the Wheel.**



**I. After the Motion.**



## SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

### No. VI.—*A Battalion in Line wheeling into Open Column.*

(F. E. IV., SECS. 26, 27, pp. 277-279.)

#### (A) *From the Halt : backward.*

(a) By Companies.

**OPEN COLUMN  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
IN FRONT.**

**FIELD OFFICERS.**

If Right is to be in front :—

**RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.**

(1) *On the word FRONT—*

The Senior Major will move to the right of the Line.

**RIGHT (or  
LEFT) WHEEL :  
Q. MARCH.**

(2) *On the word FACE—*

The Junior Major and Adjutant will turn their horses' heads to the rear.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The Junior Major and Adjutant will move to their places in Column : *see* p. 61.

When the Companies are halted and fronted, the Senior Major will correct the covering of the Captains from the head of the Column : then move to his place.

[If the Column is to be formed LEFT in front, the Junior Major will act on the left of the Line as above explained for the Senior Major on the right : the Senior Major and Adjutant moving to their places in Column during the wheel.]



CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNs: as in the corresponding No. (VI.) of Part I. The Subaltern on the left of the Line will fall back, on the *Caution*, into the supernumerary rank.

[Captains should be careful not to *Halt*; *front* their Companies till they have wheeled well back: so that the dressing may be forward.]

(b) By Subdivisions (or Sections).

BY SUBDIVISIONS [or SECTIONS]  
ON THE LEFT  
(or RIGHT)  
BACKWARD  
WHEEL.

Q. *MARCH.*

FIELD OFFICERS: as in (a).

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNs: as in the corresponding No. (IX.<sup>(1)</sup>) of PART I.

[When the Subdivisions or Sections exceed 12 files, they will be faced about and wheeled as Companies, rear rank in front (*see* p. 29): the caution and command, in that case, being OPEN COLUMN OF SUBDIVISIONS [or SECTIONS]: RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FRONT. *RIGHT-ABOUT FACE, &c.*]

THE COLOURS in (a) and (b).

(1) *On the word FACE [or WHEEL]*—The Colour party will face to the right or left according as Right or Left is to be in front; and will disengage to the rear.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—It will wheel to the right (or left), and move to its place in Column.

(B) *On Moveable pivots: forward.*

BY COMPANIES  
[SUBDIVI-  
SIONS or SEC-  
TIONS]: RIGHT  
(or LEFT)

FIELD OFFICERS.

Move to their places in Column during the wheel.

**WHEEL.**

(*When square*)—  
**FORWARD.**

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS: as in the corresponding Nos. (VI. and IX.<sup>(1)</sup>) of PART I.

**THE COLOURS.**

The Colour party will wheel independently, and move by the shortest line to its place in Column.

---

When a Battalion is required to wheel on moveable pivots *from the Halt*, the Caution will commence with the words ON THE MOVE. (*See OBS., page 23.*)

---

## SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

No. VII.—*A Battalion formed in Line moving  
in Open Column from either Flank along  
the Rear.*

(F. E. IV., Sec. 28, p. 279.)

(A) *By Companies.*

THE BATTALION  
WILL MOVE IN  
COLUMN OF  
COMPANIES  
FROM THE  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
ALONG THE  
REAR.

(When all the Companies  
are in Column)—  
OFFICERS  
CHANGE  
FLANKS.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Major of the Wing that is to lead, having superintended the wheeling of the first 2 Companies, will follow in rear of the 2nd. The other Major and the Adjutant follow, in their places, on the *proper* pivot flanks of the Companies they cover in Line; until *CHANGE FLANKS* is given, when they change to the reverse flanks.

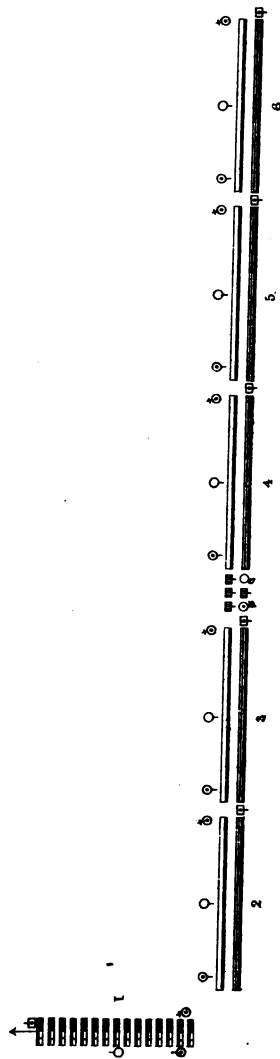
CAPTAINS.

If the Movement is from the Right :—

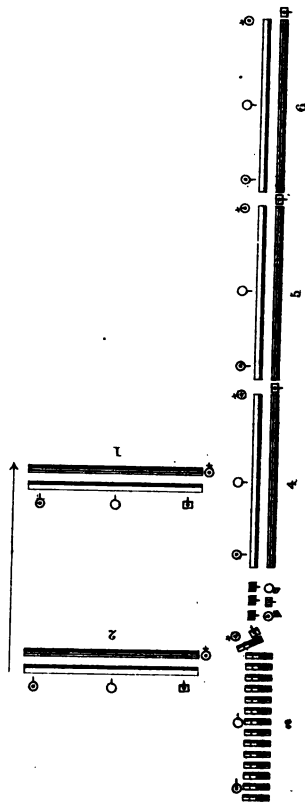
*On the word REAR*—The Captain of the right-flank Company changes his flank and, as he changes, gives No. 1.—*Form fours: left*; then, placing himself on the right of his leading four, *Left wheel: Q. March*, and moves out with his Company perpendicularly to the rear, till he arrives at 3 paces in rear of the Line. He will there halt, allowing his men to move past him till the rear four reaches him; when he will give *Front turn. By the right*: taking post, and continuing, on that flank, until ordered to change.

**ART. 11. BATTALION DRILL. N° VII. A Battalion moving in open Column of Companies from the Right along the Rear.**

I. When N° 1 is about to get the word Front turn.



II. When Nos 1 and 2 have turned to the front into Column, and No 3 is about to get the word Left wheel: Q. March.





## FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE. 89

The other Captains change flank on the *Caution*, remaining in rear of the Line: and, in succession, give the same words of command as the Captain of No. 1; so timing them as to move out their Companies the moment the preceding Company passes.

If the Movement is from the Left:—

All the Captains fall to the rear on the *Caution*.

The Captain of the left-flank Company, and the other Captains in succession from the left, will move out their Companies by the word *Form fours: right. Right wheel: Q. March:* and when clear of the supernumerary rank, will give *Front turn. By the left:* leading on the left flanks when in Column, until ordered to change.

### SUBALTERNES.

*On the Caution:* The Officer on the left of the Line falls back into the supernumerary rank, which closes up 2 paces; and, if the movement is from the Right, the Lieutenants change flanks.

*On their Captain's word 'Front turn':* the Lieutenants change flanks.

### THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will move as a Company, but in file.

#### (B) *By Subdivisions [or Sections].*

THE BATTALION  
WILL MOVE IN  
COLUMN OF  
SUBDIVISIONS  
[OR SECTIONS]  
ON THE RIGHT  
(OR LEFT)  
FROM THE REAR.

*On the Caution:* Each Captain will place himself in rear of the inner flank of the future leading Subdivision [or Section] of his Company; which he will move out into, and lead when in Column, as explained in (A). The Subalterns' words will be the same as the Captains'.

## SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

### No. VIII.—*A Battalion formed in Line advancing from a Flank in Open Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections).*

(F. E. IV., Sec. 29, p. 281.)

#### (A) *Advancing by Companies.*

RIGHT (or LEFT)  
COMPANY TO  
THE FRONT.  
REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
ON THE MOVE,  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
WHEEL.

Q. *MARCH.*

(When square)—  
*FORWARD.*

#### FIELD OFFICERS.

The Major of the leading Wing will, during the advance, be in rear of the pivot flank of the 2nd Company from the front, superintending the direction: the other Major, and Adjutant, in their places on the reverse flank of the Column.

#### CAPTAINS.

##### (1) *On the Caution—*

The Captain of the named Company, if it is the Right, changes his flank; the Captain of No. 2 falling to the rear to enable him to move up.

##### (2) *On the word MARCH—*

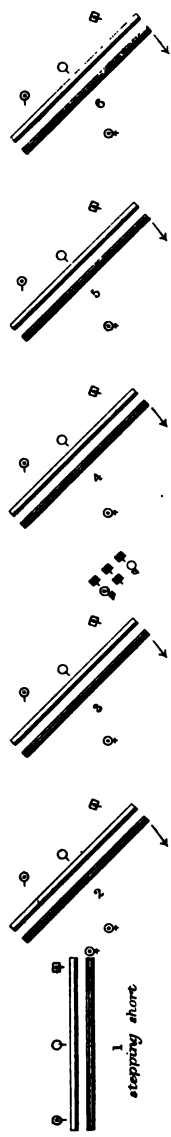
The Captain of the named Company advances with it at a short pace, till the next Company has completed about three-fourths of its 2nd wheel. He then gives *Leading Company; Forward* [or, if he has changed flank, *Leading Company: Forward. By the Left*]: and advances at a full pace.

**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N° VIII. A Battalion formed in Line advancing in Open Column from the Right.**

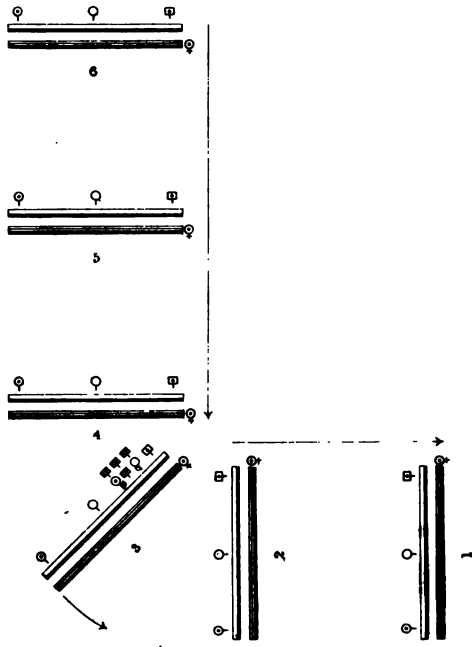
*I. On the  
Caution*



*II. During  
1st Wheel*



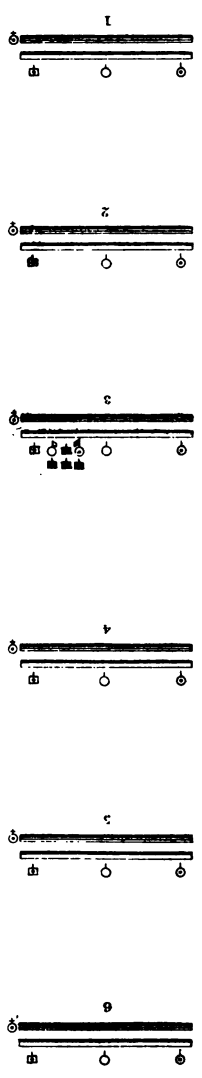
*III. During the 2nd Wheel.*



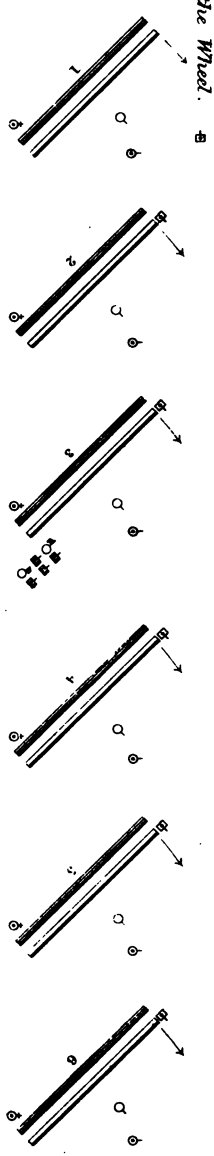


**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. NO VI. A Battalion in Line wheeling, from the Halt, into open Column. Right in front.**

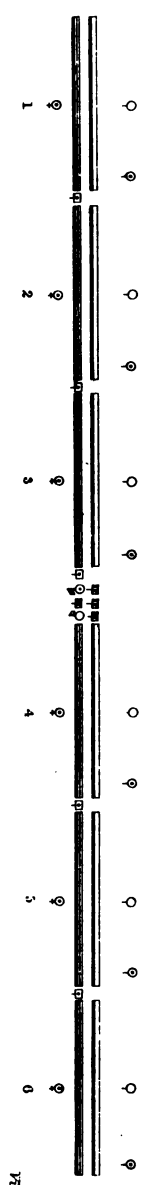
*III. The Movement completed.*



*II. During the Wheel.*



*I. After the Caution.*



W.D.M. 1861.

Vincent B.

## SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

### No. VI.—*A Battalion in Line wheeling into Open Column.*

(F. E. IV., SECS. 26, 27, pp. 277-279.)

(A) *From the Halt: backward.*

(a) *By Companies.*

OPEN COLUMN  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
IN FRONT.

*RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.*

*RIGHT (or  
LEFT) WHEEL:  
Q. MARCH.*

FIELD OFFICERS.

If Right is to be in front:—

(1) *On the word FRONT—*

The Senior Major will move to the right of the Line.

(2) *On the word FACE—*

The Junior Major and Adjutant will turn their horses' heads to the rear.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The Junior Major and Adjutant will move to their places in Column: *see* p. 61.

When the Companies are halted and fronted, the Senior Major will correct the covering of the Captains from the head of the Column: then move to his place.

[If the Column is to be formed LEFT in front, the Junior Major will act on the left of the Line as above explained for the Senior Major on the right: the Senior Major and Adjutant moving to their places in Column during the wheel.]

SUBDIVISIONS  
[or SECTIONS]:  
ON THE MOVE,  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
WHEEL

Q. *MARCH.*

(When square)—  
*FORWARD.*

pany'. If the advance is by Sections: the Major of the leading Wing will march outside the line of Section leaders.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNs.

(1) *On the Caution—*

The Captain who is to lead the Column will move out in front of his Company; placing himself one pace from it, just clear of the inner flank of the Subdivision [or Section] which will be in front when in Column: and

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

Will proceed: as directed in PART I., No. X.

The remaining Subdivision [or Section] leaders will move to their places in Column during the 1st wheel: and act, in succession, as explained in PART I., No. X.

THE COLOURS.

Wheel as a Company. They then get the word *Left half turn* if the advance is from the Right; and *vice versa*: marching diagonally till they are in rear of the pivot flank of the Company in their front, and get *Front turn*.

These Movements are performed on the March in like manner: the word of command being *RIGHT (or LEFT) COMPANY [SUBDIVISION, or SECTION] TO THE FRONT: REMAINING COMPANIES [SUBDIVISIONS, or SECTIONS] RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL.—FORWARD.*

SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN  
FROM LINE.

No. IX.—*A Battalion formed in Line advancing in Double Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections).*

(F. E. IV., Sec. 30, p. 246.)

[The Coverers of the two flank Companies give points for the 2nd wheels. See Plate.]

(A) *By Double Column of Companies.*

TWO CENTRE  
COMPANIES TO  
THE FRONT.  
REMAINING COM-  
PANIES: ON THE  
MOVE, INWARDS  
WHEEL.

*Q. MARCH.*

(When square)—  
*FORWARD.*

## FIELD OFFICERS.

The Junior Major will march in rear of the pivot flank of the 2nd Company from the rear of the left Wing, to superintend the ~~disorder~~.

The Senior Major and Adjutant, ~~having~~ ~~over~~ intended the 2nd wheel of all the ~~companies~~ will follow in rear of the Column.

## CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

The Captain of the ~~left wing~~ ~~changes~~ changes his flank: the ~~Captain of the~~ next on the left falling in ~~to the~~ him to move ~~up~~.

*word MARCH*

*Captain*



give *Forward: By the left* to both the centre Companies, when the two Companies next in rear have completed about three-fourths of their 2nd wheel. *See Note.*

[The right-centre Company, as it advances, closes on the left-centre; to fill the space vacated by the Colours.]

The other right-wing Captains act as in the advance in open Column from the Left, the other left-wing Captains as in the same advance from the Right (*see* No. VIII. A.): except that the left-wing Captains will give *Forward: By the left* to both Companies on the completion of their 2nd wheel.

#### SUBALTERNS.

*On the Caution*—The Officer on the left of the Line falls into the supernumerary rank, the whole of which will close up 2 paces. The Lieutenant of the left-centre Company changes his flank.

The other left-wing Lieutenants change flanks during the 1st wheel.

#### THE COLOURS.

*On the Caution*; the Colour party steps back 2 paces.

(B) *By Double Column of Subdivisions [or Sections].*

TWO CENTRE  
SUBDIVISIONS  
[or SECTIONS] TO  
THE FRONT.  
REMAINING SUB-  
DIVISIONS  
[or SECTIONS]:  
ON THE MOVE,  
INWARDS WHEEL.

Q. MARCH.

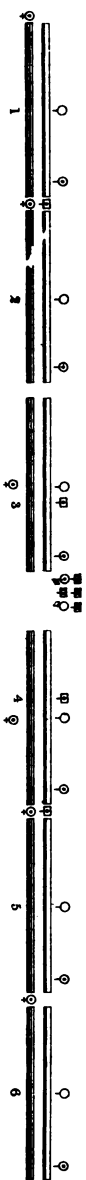
#### FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (A), substituting the word 'Subdivision' (or 'Section') for 'Company'. If the advance is by Sections: The Junior Major will march outside the line of Section leaders.

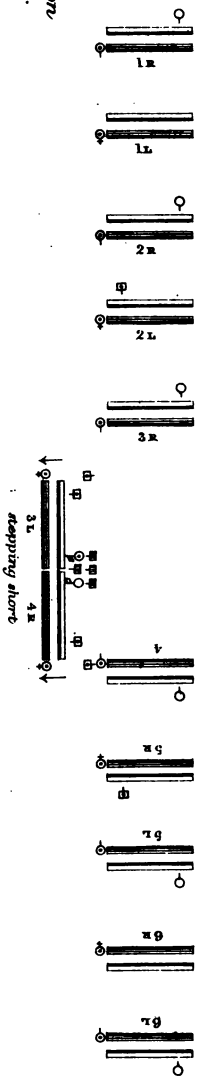


# PART II. BATTALION DRILL. Nº IX. *A Battalion formed in Line advancing in Double Column of Subdivisions.*

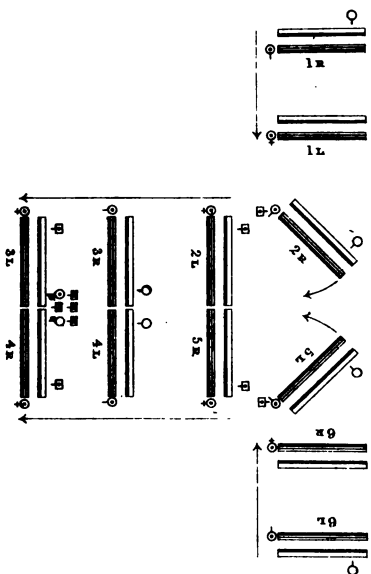
## *I. On the March.*



## *II. At the completion of the 1<sup>st</sup> wheel.*



## *III. When four of the Subdivisions have completed their 2<sup>nd</sup> wheel.*



(When square)—  
FORWARD.

## CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

The Captains of the right-centre and left-centre Companies will move out; and place themselves, the former one pace in front of the left file of his right Subdivision [or 3rd Section], the latter one pace in front of the right file of his left Subdivision [or 2nd Section].

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The 2 centre Captains will lead their inner Subdivision [or Section] to the front; stepping short as directed in (A) for the Captains of the 2 centre Companies.

[The right-centre Subdivision (or Section), as it advances, will incline to the left-centre; to fill the space vacated by the Colour party and left-centre Captain.]

Each of the other Captains: if in the Right Wing, will proceed as when a single Company in Line wheels on the move into Column of Subdivisions [or Sections] to the right; if in the Left Wing, as in the same movement when left is to be in front. See PART I., No. IX.<sup>(1)</sup>

(3) *On the word FORWARD—*

Each Wing will move as a Battalion advancing from a flank in open Column of Subdivisions or Sections (see p. 91): right-wing Captains giving *Left Subdivision* [or *No. 4 Section*]: *Right wheel*; left-wing Captains giving *Right Subdivision* [or *No. 1 Section*]: *Left wheel*; as they respectively arrive at the wheeling point of their Wing. The left-wing Captains will give the word *Forward*: *By the left* to both Subdivisions [or Sections] on the completion of their 2nd wheel. See Note.



## SUBALTERNS.

<sup>(1)</sup> *On the Caution—*

The supernumerary rank will close up 2 paces.

<sup>(2)</sup> *On the word MARCH—*

Each Subdivision [or Section] leader will act as above directed for the Captains (except the right-centre or left-centre Captain) of his Wing.

[If the movement is by Sections:—The right-wing Lieutenants and Ensigns will lead their 2nd and 1st Sections respectively; those of the Left Wing, their 3rd and 4th Sections respectively.]

---

THE COLOURS.

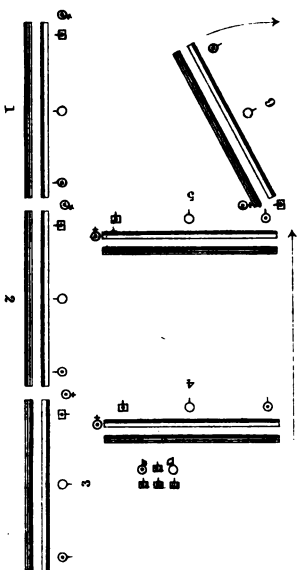
As in (A).

---

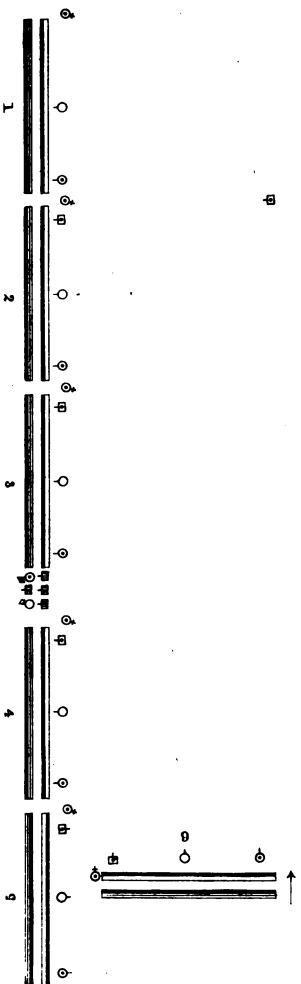
*Note.*—The *proper Left*, unless it is otherwise ordered, is always the directing flank in a Double Column: and all words of command intended for two Companies [Subdivisions, or Sections] aligned with each other in the Column, are given by the leader on that flank. After the completion of the 2nd wheel, therefore, right-wing leaders will have no word to give.



**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> X.** *A Battalion formed in Line retiring by Companies from the Left in rear of the Right.*



*II. When N<sup>o</sup> 6 is making its second wheel, and N<sup>o</sup> 3 has been fixed-about.*



*I. When N<sup>o</sup> 6 has completed its first wheel, and is retiring; and N<sup>o</sup> 5 has been fixed-about.*

## SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

No. X.—*A Battalion formed in Line retreating from a Flank, in Open Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections).*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 31, p. 286.)

[If the retreat is to be in rear of the Right of the Line,  
it will commence from the Left : and *vice versâ*.]

(A) *By Companies.*

RETIRE BY  
COMPANIES  
FROM THE LEFT  
IN REAR OF THE  
RIGHT  
(OR FROM THE  
RIGHT IN REAR  
OF THE LEFT).

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in No. VIII. (A).

CAPTAINS.

(1) If the retreat is to be in rear of the Right :—

*On the Caution—*

The Captain of the left-flank Company, falling to the rear, gives *No. — : Right-about face. Q. March :* and as the men are taking the 3rd pace to the rear, *Left wheel*. When the Company has wheeled square, he gives *Forward : By the present left*, placing himself on that flank, and proceeding along the rear of the Line till he reaches the left of the right-flank Company. He will then give *No. — : Right wheel*, at the same time changing his flank ; and when the Company has wheeled square, *Forward : By the present right*.

Each of the other Captains will fall to the rear on the *Caution* ; and in succession from the Left (except the Captain of No. 1) will proceed as directed for the Captain of the left-flank Company : taking care to face-about his

Company in time to give it *Q. March* when the Company he is to follow is within 3 paces of his proper right flank.

The Captain of No. 1 Company, when No. 2 commences its 2nd wheel, changes his flank and gives No. 1: *Right-about face. Q. March*; the word *March* being given 3 paces before No. 2's wheel is completed.

(2) If the retreat is to be in rear of the Left:—

All the Captains (except the Captain of the left-flank Company, who simply falls to the rear) change flanks on the *Caution*, remaining in rear of the Line: and their words will be \**Right-about face,—Right wheel*,—and on reaching the right of the left-flank Company, *Left wheel*: the movement proceeding, in all other respects, as in (1).

#### SUBALTERNS.

*On the Caution*: The Officer on the left of the Line falls back into the supernumerary rank, which closes up 2 paces: and if the retreat commences from the Right, the Lieutenant of each (except the left-flank) Company changes his flank.

If the retreat commences from the Left, each Lieutenant (except the Lieut. of the right-flank Company, who changes with his Captain) changes flank during the 2nd wheel of his Company.

#### THE COLOURS.

The Colour party moves independently as a Company. After completing the 2nd wheel, it will move up to the wheeling point, and mark time to gain its right position in the proper rear of the right-centre or left-centre Company.

---

\* The Captain of No. 1 will give his word '*Right-about face. Q. March*,' as he is changing flank.

FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE. 99

(B) *By Subdivisions [or Sections].*

RETIRE BY  
SUBDIVISIONS  
[or SECTIONS]  
FROM THE LEFT  
IN REAR OF THE  
RIGHT  
(or FROM THE  
RIGHT IN REAR  
OF THE LEFT).

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in No. VIII. (B).

CAPTAINS.

Each of the Captains proceeds as in (A), except that he will give the words *Right-about face* and *Q. March* to each of his Subdivisions [or Sections] in succession; always himself leading that which steps off last, so as to be at the head of his Company when the Column is fronted: and that he will make his 2nd wheel on reaching the inner flank of the right- (or left-) flank *Subdivision* [or *Section*].

SUBALTERNs.

*On the Caution:* The Lieutenants move to the rear of the centre of their Companies. If the retreat is to be by Sections, the Ensigns move to the rear of the inner flank of the Sections they will lead in Column.

As each Subdivision [or Section] gets the word *Q. March* from the Captain, its leader will move up on its inner flank and take command of it: giving *Right* (or *Left*) *wheel*.—*Forward, &c.*, as directed for the Captains.

[If the retreat commences from the Left, the Lieutenants and Ensigns will respectively lead their 3rd and 4th Sections; if from the Right, their 2nd and 1st Sections.]

---

*See Note, page 103.*

## SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

No. XI.—*A Battalion formed in Line retreating from both Flanks in rear of the Centre, in Double Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections).*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 31, 288.)

[The Coverers of the 2 centre Companies give points for the 2nd wheels. *See Plate.*]

(A) *By Double Column of Companies.*

RETIRE  
BY COMPANIES  
FROM  
BOTH FLANKS IN  
REAR OF THE  
CENTRE.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in No. IX. (A).

CAPTAINS.

The right-wing Captains (except the Captain of the right-centre Company, who simply falls to the rear) change flanks on the *Caution*, remaining in rear of the Line; and, in succession from the Right, proceed as in the retreat by Companies from the Right in rear of the Left (*see* No. X.): only that they will make their 2nd wheel on reaching the right of the *right-centre* Company, and will not give the word *Forward* as their Companies complete that wheel.

The left-wing Captains fall to the rear on the *Caution*, and in succession from the Left (except the Captain of the left-centre Company)

## FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE. 101

proceed as in the retreat by Companies from the Left in rear of the Right (*see* No. X.): only that they will make their 2nd wheel on reaching the left of the *left-centre* Company. Their word *Forward: By the present right*, at the completion of the 2nd wheel, will apply both to their own Company and to that aligned with it in Double Column: *see* Note, p. 96.

The Captain of the left-centre Company changes his flank, and gives the 2 centre Companies *Right-about face* when the 2 Companies which will precede them in the Double Column commence their 2nd wheel: giving *Q. March* when the latter are 3 paces from the completion of the wheel. The Captain of the right-centre Company will have no word of command to give.

[The 2 centre Companies will close to each other as they move off; to occupy the space vacated by the Colour party and the left-centre Captain.]

### SUBALTERNS.

*On the Caution:* The Officer on the left of the Line falls into the supernumerary rank, which closes up 2 paces.

The Lieutenant of each right-wing (except the right-centre) Company changes his flank on the *Caution* and during the 2nd wheel: the left-wing Lieutenants (except the Lieutenant of the left-centre Company, who changes with his Captain) change during the 2nd wheel.

### THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will face about with the 2 centre Companies, and then take 3 paces to the



proper rear: stepping off with those Companies when the left-centre Captain gives *Q. March*.

(B) *By Double Column of Subdivisions [or Sections]*.

RETIRE  
BY SUBDIVISIONS  
[or SECTIONS]  
FROM  
BOTH FLANKS  
IN REAR OF THE  
CENTRE.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in No. IX. (B).

CAPTAINS.

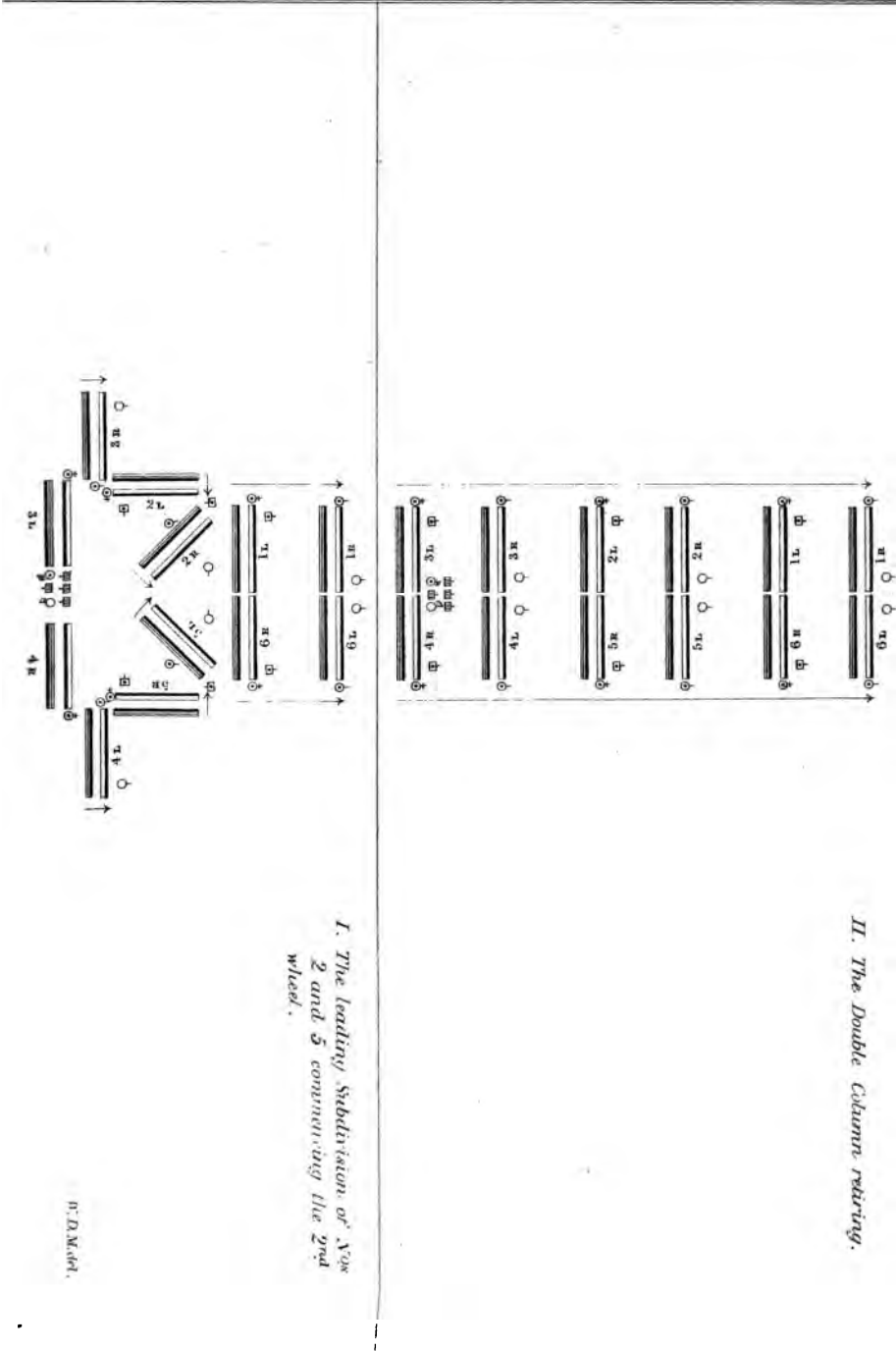
The right-wing Captains (except the Captain of the right-centre Company) change flanks on the *Caution*, remaining in rear of the Line; and, in succession from the Right, proceed as in the retreat by Subdivisions [or Sections] from the Right in rear of the Left (*see* No. X.): only that they will make their 2nd wheel on reaching the right of the *right-centre* Subdivision [or Section], and will not give the word *Forward* when the Subdivision [or Section] each is leading completes that wheel.

The left-wing Captains in succession from the Left (except the Captain of the left-centre Company) proceed as in the retreat by Subdivisions [or Sections] in rear of the Right: only that they make their 2nd wheel on reaching the left of the *left-centre* Subdivision [or Section]. Their word *Forward: By the present right*, on the completion of the 2nd wheel, will apply to both Subdivisions [or Sections].

The right-centre and left-centre Captains fall to the rear on the *Caution*. The latter will afterwards proceed as directed in (A), substituting the word 'Subdivisions [or Sections]' for 'Companies'.

[The 2 centre Subdivisions (or Sections) will close to each other as they move off.]

**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N° XI.** *A Battalion formed in Line retreating from both flanks in rear of the Centre, in Double Column of Subdivisions.*





## FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE. 103

SUBALTERNES: as in No. X. (B), observing the additional directions given in this *No.* for the Captains of their Wing.

[If the movement is by Sections:—Right-wing Lieutenants and Ensigns will lead their 3rd and 4th Sections respectively: those of the left Wing, their 2nd and 1st Sections respectively.]

### THE COLOURS.

As in (A): substituting the words 'Subdivisions [or Sections]' for 'Companies'.

---

*Note.*—The loss of distance which, in this and the preceding Movement, will necessarily result, will be corrected, at the discretion of the Battalion Commander, either by the leading Company [or the 2 leading Companies, Subdivisions, or Sections] stepping short or marking time: or by the leading Company [or the 2 leading Companies, Subdivisions, or Sections] moving on in quick time, and the remainder recovering their distance by doubling. If the former of these methods is to be adopted, the Battalion Commander will give *LEADING COMPANY* [or *TWO LEADING COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS, or SECTIONS)*]: *MARK TIME*, and subsequently *FORWARD* to the whole: if the latter, *LEADING COMPANY* [or *TWO LEADING COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS, or SECTIONS)*] *TO THE FRONT: REMAINING COMPANIES, DOUBLE*:—when the whole Battalion is in Column, or Double Column, as the case may be.

The retreat in rear of a flank, or of the Centre, may (if necessary) be effected by the Companies [or Subdivisions] facing, or forming fours, in the required direction, and so moving along the rear of the Line. In this case, the leader of each Company [or Subdivision], on reaching the inward flank of that in rear of which he is to retire, will halt till his rear file (or four) reaches him, and will then give *Rear turn. By the present* —. In double Column, the word *By the present right* will be given by the proper left-wing leaders.

## SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

### No. XII.—*A Battalion in Line forming Open, Quarter-distance, or Close Column on any named Company.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 32, p. 292.)

N.B.—In the formation of Column Right in front, on whatever Company, the Captain of the named Company changes his flank on the *Caution*: when the Column is to be left in front, he stands fast. If the Column is to be formed facing to the Rear, the above rule is reversed.

In all the following formations, each Company, after forming Fours, will disengage to the front or rear as may be necessary: and will be led to its point of entry in the Column *by the shortest line*.

#### (A) *Column in rear, or front, of the Right-flank Company.*

OPEN (QUARTER-DISTANCE, or CLOSE) COLUMN IN REAR [or FRONT] OF No. 1.

REMAINING COMPANIES:  
FORM FOURS:  
RIGHT.

Q. MARCH.

STEADY.

#### FIELD OFFICERS.

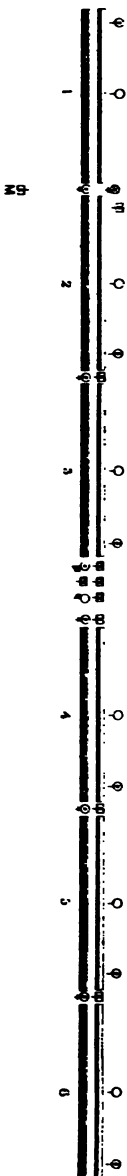
The Senior Major, on the *Caution*, moves to the future pivot flank of the named Company; placing himself in front or rear of the Serjeant giving the base point, according as Right or Left is to be in front: to superintend the covering of the Coverers and Captains. When the formation is completed, he gives STEADY and moves to his proper place in Column.

The Junior Major and Adjutant move to their places in Column during the formation.

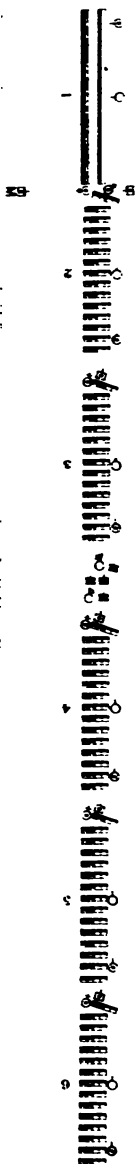


PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> XII. *A Battalion in Line forming Quarter-distance Column in rear of N<sup>o</sup> 1 Company.*

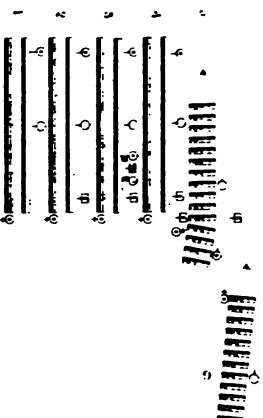
*I. After the march.*



*II. After the command RE-ALIGNING COMPANIES—FORM FORNS: RIGHT.*



*III. When all the Companies but two are in Column.*



CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

The Captain of No. 1, if Right is to be in front, changes to his left (the future pivot) flank; the Captain of No. 2 falling to the rear to let him move up.

Each Captain (except the Captain of No. 1):—

(2) *On the word RIGHT—*

Places himself on the left of his leading four.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

If Right is to be in front:—Leads his Company to his Covering-serjeant, who will be marking its future pivot flank; and on reaching him halts, allowing the men to move on past the rear of the Serjeant and in a line parallel to the Company of formation. As the four on the left of the Company reaches the Serjeant, the Captain gives *No. —: \*Halt, front: dress*, takes post on the exact spot then vacated by the Serjeant, and looks to his covering.

If Left is to be in front:—Leads his Company to the spot where its *reverse* flank will rest in the Column, and then (changing direction) leads it, in a line parallel to the Company of formation, on to the Covering-serjeant who is marking its future pivot flank. As the leading four reaches that Coverer, the Captain will give *No. —: \*Halt, front: dress*; fall in on the exact spot then vacated by the Serjeant; and look to his covering.

SUBALTERNS.

*On the Caution—*

The Officer on the left of the Line falls back

---

\* See Note, p. 109.



into the supernumerary rank, which closes up 2 paces: and, if Right is to be in front, the Lieutenant of the named Company changes flank.

The other Lieutenants move to their places during the formation.

#### THE COLOURS.

(1) *When the Companies form Fours*—The Colour party faces in the named direction.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—It moves independently by files to its place in Column: forming in single rank if the Column is formed at close distance. See page 67.

(B) *Column in front, or rear, of the Left-flank Company.*

6— COLUMN IN  
FRONT (or REAR)  
OF No. —.

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
FORM FOURS:  
LEFT.

Q. MARCH.  
STEADY.

#### FIELD OFFICERS.

The Junior Major acts as directed for the Senior Major in (A). The Senior Major and Adjutant move to their places in Column during the formation.

#### CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution*—

The Captain of the named Company, as in (A).  
The other Captains change flanks:

(2) *On the word LEFT*—

They place themselves on the right of their leading fours:

(3) *On the word MARCH*—

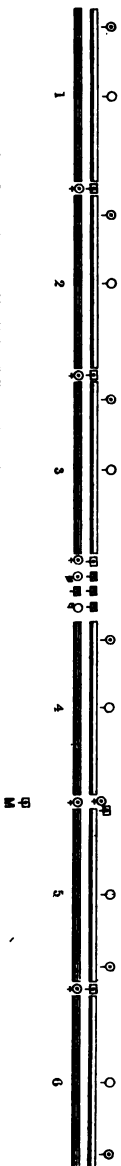
If Right is to be in front, they lead their Companies into Column as in (A) when *Left* is to be in front: if Left is to be in front, as in (A) when *Right* is to be in front.

SUBALTERNS and COLOURS: as in (A).

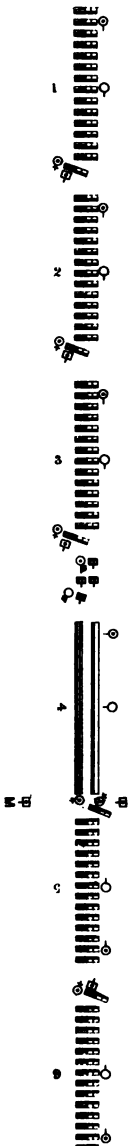


**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> XII. A Battalion in Line forming Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) on the Left-centre Company.**

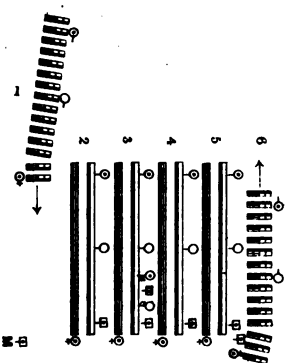
*I. After the Caution.*



*II. After the command REMAINING COMPANIES: FORM FOUR: INWARDS.*



*III. When all the Companies but two are in Column.*



# FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE. 107

## (C) *Column on any central Company.*

— COLUMN  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
IN FRONT  
ON No. —  
REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
FORM FOURS:  
INWARDS.  
Q. MARCH.  
STEADY.

### FIELD OFFICERS.

The Senior Major, when the Column is to be at quarter or close distance, will superintend the covering from the front; when it is to be at open distance, will place himself on the future pivot flank of the Company of formation: giving STEADY, in either case, when the formation is completed. The Junior Major and Adjutant: as in (A).

### CAPTAINS.

The Captain of the named Company will proceed as in (A): the Captains on the right of that Company as in (B); those on its left, as in (A).

SUBALTERNs and COLOURS: as in (A).

## (D) *Column on any named Company facing to the Rear.*

— COLUMN  
ON No. —  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
IN FRONT, FACING  
TO THE REAR.  
(Suppose the formation  
on a central Com-  
pany) —  
REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
FORM FOURS:  
OUTWARDS.

N.B.—The Company of formation will always counter-march by *Files*, by command of its Captain: being faced so that the flank which will be the pivot in the Column may lead during the Countermarch. The Companies (if any) which move to the rear of the Line will, in this instance, countermarch round the *rear* rank.

FIELD OFFICERS: as in the same formations facing to the front.

### CAPTAINS.

‡ RIGHT (or LEFT)  
COUNTER-  
MARCH:  
Q. MARCH.  
STEADY.

### (1) *On the Caution—*

The Captain of the named Company, if Right is to be in front, gives No. —: *To the left face. Right Countermarch: Q. March*; if Left is to be in front, changes his flank and gives No. —: *To the right face. Left Countermarch: Q. March.*

‡ The remaining Companies will always be ordered to counter-march to the right if Right is to be in front: and *vice versa*.

When the leading file reaches the Covering-serjeant, the Captain will give *Halt, front : dress*, and replace the Serjeant. (See p. 46.) The Captains on the left of the named Company change flanks.

(2) *On the word OUTWARDS—*

The Captains on the right and left of the named Company place themselves respectively on the left and right of their leading Fours.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

If *Right* is to be in front:—The Captains on the original right of the named Company lead their Companies into Column as directed in (A) for the Captains on the left of the named Company; those on the original left, as directed in (B) for the Captains on the right of the named Company; when *Right* is to be in front.

If *Left* is to be in front:—The Captains on the original right and left of the named Company act respectively as those on the left in (A), and on the right in (B), when *Left* is to be in front.

SUBALTERNS.

The Officer on the left of the Line falls, on the *Caution*, into the supernumerary rank. The Subalterns of the named Company proceed as in No. XV. of PART I. (p. 46): the remainder face, countermarch, and move into Column, with their respective Companies.

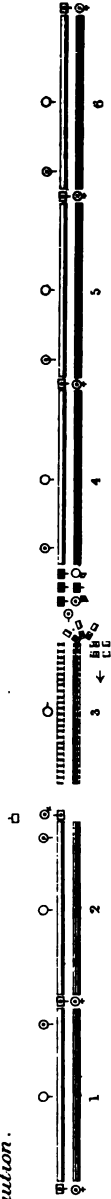
THE COLOURS.

Face and countermarch as a Company.

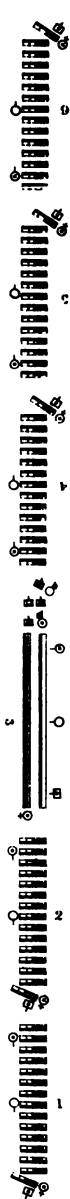
---

**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> XII. A Battalion in Line forming Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) on the Right-centre Company, facing to the Rear.**

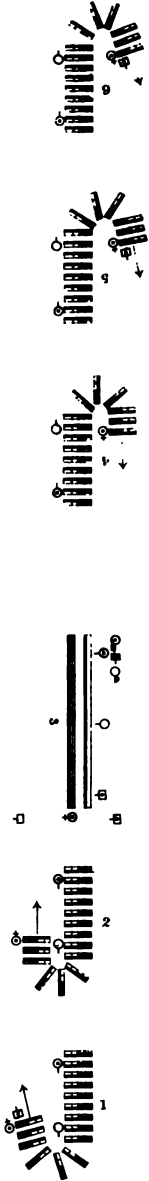
*I. On the Caution.*



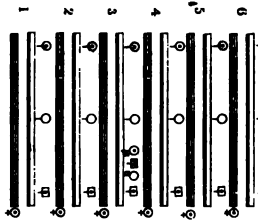
*II After the command REMAINING COMPANIES—FORM FOURS; OUTWARDS.*



*III. During the formation.*



*IV. The Movement completed.*





*Formation of Double Column.*

**DOUBLE COLUMN CAPTAINS.**

[or CLOSE (or  
QUARTER-DIS-  
TANCE) DOUBLE  
COLUMN] ON THE  
TWO CENTRE  
COMPANIES  
(or SUBDIVISIONS).

REMAINING  
COMPANIES (or  
SUBDIVISIONS):  
FORM FOURS:  
INWARDS.

**Q. MARCH.**

STEADY.

(1) *On the Caution*—The left-centre Captain will change to the left of his Company (or its inner Subdivision); giving, as he changes, *Two centre Companies* (or *Subdivisions*): *Four paces inwards Close. Q. March*: the other left-wing Captains will fall to the rear. The right-centre Captain will close with his Company (or move to the right of his inner Subdivision): the other right-wing Captains will change flanks, remaining in rear of the Line.

*On the word INWARDS*—The 2 centre Captains will stand fast. The remainder will place themselves on the pivot flank of the leading four of their Companies (or inner Subdivisions).

*On the word MARCH*—The right-wing Captains will lead their Companies (or Subdivisions) into Column as directed in B<sup>(2)</sup>: those of the Left Wing as in A<sup>(1)</sup>. See (4), p. 83.

**SUBALTERNS.**—If the Column is to be one of Subdivisions, the Lieutenants will move, on the *Caution*, to the rear of the centre of their Companies: and on the word *MARCH*, will lead their outer Subdivision into Column as directed for the Captains of their Wing.

**THE COLOURS.**—*On the Caution*: the Colour party will step back 2 paces.

*Note.*—When a Company moving in Fours is fronted, there will always be one file to come up on its left flank. In moving, therefore, from the left on a pivot point marking where the left of the Company will rest, the word *Halt, front* should not be given till the four on the left of the Company has passed the point one pace. Similarly, in moving from the Right on a pivot point marking where the left of the Company will rest, the word *Halt, front* should be given one pace before the leading four reaches the point.



## SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

No. XIII.—*Forming Quarter-distance or Close Column from any more open Column.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 12, p. 248.)

*(From the Halt.)*

(a)  
THE COLUMN  
WILL CLOSE TO  
QUARTER  
DISTANCE ON  
THE FRONT  
COMPANY (or TO  
THE FRONT).

Q. MARCH.  
STEADY.

(b)  
THE COLUMN  
WILL CLOSE TO  
QUARTER  
DISTANCE ON  
THE REAR  
COMPANY (or TO  
THE REAR).  
[or TO QUARTER  
DISTANCE ON  
(or ON) No. —].

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
[or COMPANIES  
IN FRONT:]  
RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.

Q. MARCH.  
STEADY.

## FIELD OFFICERS.

A Field officer will superintend the Captains' covering, from the Battalion point of *appui*: and, the formation being completed, will give STEADY and move to his place.

## CAPTAINS.

The named Company will stand fast.

(a) If the closing is on the *front* Company†: the Captain of each of the other Companies in succession will give No. —: *Halt: dress*, as he comes up to the named distance.

(b) If the closing is on the *rear*, or any *central*, Company: the Captain of each Company that has been faced about, as he comes up to the named distance, will give No. —: *Halt, front*: and, having corrected his covering from the rear, will front and give the word *Dress*. The remainder will proceed as in (a).

† If the caution CLOSE TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON THE LEADING COMPANY (or TO THE FRONT) is given while the Column is *on the March*, the Captain of the leading Company will immediately give No. —: *Halt; dress*.

ON THE MARCH:  
CLOSE TO  
QUARTER  
DISTANCE ON  
THE LEADING  
COMPANY (*or*  
TO THE FRONT).

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
*DOUBLE.*

When a Column on the March is intended to close to the front without halting, the words ON THE MARCH will be given as a caution to the leading Company to continue its march. The remainder, on the word *DOUBLE*, will close up in double time: the Captain of each in succession giving *No. —: Quick*, as it comes up to the named distance.

## SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

No. XIV.—*A Close or Quarter - distance Column opening from the Front, the Rear, or any named Company.*

(F. E. IV., Sec. 13, p. 250.)

(A) *Opening from the Front.*

1. From the Halt.

(From the Halt.)

OPEN TO  
QUARTER (or  
WHEELING)  
DISTANCE FROM  
THE FRONT.

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.

Q. MARCH.  
STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Adjutant, on the *Caution*, will mark the spot on which the pivot flank of the rear of the Column will rest; his horse's head being also dressed on the line of Captains.

The Major of the leading Wing superintends the Captains' covering, from the Battalion point of *appui* (as in No. XIII.); then gives *STEADY* and, together with the Adjutant, moves to his place in Column.

CAPTAINS.

The front Company will stand fast.

On the word *MARCH*—

The remainder will step off; the Captain of the rear Company marching upon the head of the Adjutant's horse.

The Captain of the 2nd Company will count his paces,\* and, having gained the named distance, will give his Company No. — : *Halt, front : dress*; looking to his covering when fronted.

Each of the other Captains will begin counting

---

\* To calculate distance for Files, see Introduction (2), page 1.

his paces when the Company in his present rear gets *Halt*: and will proceed as above directed.

[If the ground is rough, the distance for each Company may be marked by its Covering-serjeant: the Company being halted and fronted when in line with him.]

**ADVANCE BY SUCCESSIVE COMPANIES FROM THE FRONT, AT — DISTANCE.**

(If at the Halt)—

No. —

(front Company):

**Q. MARCH.**

(If on the March)—

**REMAINING COMPANIES:**

**HALT.**

A Battalion standing in close or quarter-distance Column may also open out by advancing by successive Companies from the front: the leading Company first marching off by the word of the Battalion Commander, and the remainder following in succession (by command of their Captains) as they acquire the ordered distance. [Or, the Column may be faced about, and open out in like manner, commencing with the rear Company.]

If the Column is *on the March* the Battalion Commander will halt the rear Companies: the leading Company will continue its march; the Captains of the remainder will then proceed as when the Movement is done from the Halt.

**(B) Opening from the Rear.**

**1. From the Halt.**

(From the Halt.)

**OPEN TO QUARTER (or WHEELING) DISTANCE FROM THE REAR.**

**REMAINING COMPANIES:**

**Q. MARCH.**

**STEADY.**

**FIELD OFFICERS.**

The Adjutant will mark the alignment, at a Company's distance in front of the spot where the pivot flank of the head of the Column will rest. The Major of the rear Wing superintends the Captains' covering; then gives **STEADY** and, together with the Adjutant, moves to his place in Column.

**CAPTAINS.**

The rear Company will stand fast.

*On the word MARCH—*

The remainder step off: the Captain of the leading Company marching on the head of the Adjutant's horse.

The Captain of the rear Company will call out the number of the Company next in his front, as a caution; and when it has gained its proper distance, will give *Halt*.

Each of the other Captains in succession will act in like manner; and will then face to the right-about† to correct his covering on the base points, front, and give *Dress* to his own Company.

2. On the March.

*On the Caution—*

The Captain of the rear Company will immediately give it No. —: *Halt dress*: and the movement will proceed as in 1.

† The sword is *not* to be brought to the 'recover'.

(C) *Opening from a Central Company.*

From the Halt.

OPEN TO  
QUARTER (or  
WHEELING) DIS-  
TANCE FROM  
THE REAR.

OPEN TO  
QUARTER (or  
WHEELING)  
DISTANCE FROM  
No. —.  
COMPANIES IN  
REAR: RIGHT-  
ABOUT FACE.  
Q. MARCH.  
STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Junior Major will give a point for the left-wing Captains, the Adjutant a point for the right-wing Captains, to march upon. The Senior Major will superintend the covering from the Captain of the named Company; then give *STEADY* and move to his place, the other Major and the Adjutant taking post at the same time.

CAPTAINS.

The Captain of the named Company, who will be the point of *appui* for the Battalion, will act as the Captain of the rear Company in (B).

The Captains in front of the named Company act as in (B); those in rear as in (A): marching on the Field-officer who is giving a marching point for their Wing.

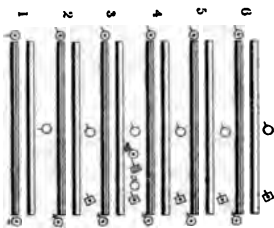
---

For Columns closing on, or opening out from, any named Company, while taking ground to a flank by Fours: see p. 126.

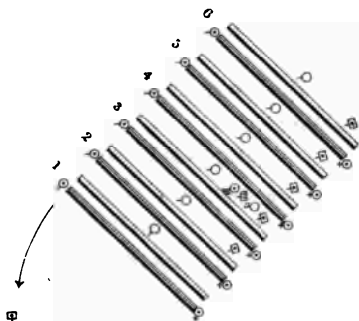


PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> XV. *A Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) wheeling to the Left on a fixed pivot*

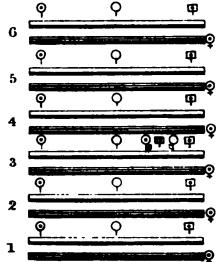
I. *On the Caution.*



II. *During the Wheel.*



III. *The Wheel completed.*



SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

No. XV.—*A Close or Quarter-distance Column wheeling on a Fixed or Moveable pivot.*

(F. E. IV., Sec. 16, p. 256.)

(A) *On a Fixed pivot.*

(Suppose Right in front.)

[*On the Caution*—If the wheel is to the pivot flank, the left-hand front-rank man; if to the reverse flank, the right-hand front-rank man; of the leading Company, becomes the pivot-man of the Column: and faces in the named direction; his rear-rank man uncovering as usual.]

COLUMN: LEFT  
[or RIGHT] WHEEL.

Q. (or D.) MARCH.

COLUMN:  
HALT.

FIELD OFFICERS.

*During the wheel*:—The Major of the leading Wing will place himself on the wheeling flank of the leading Company, to regulate its pace; watching the leader on the wheeling flank of the rear Company, in rear of which the other Major will place himself to see that the outer files retain their original relative positions. The Adjutant will see that the Companies close up to their leading files. See Note.

[The Major of the leading Wing will cover the Captains from the front when the Column halts.]

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the word WHEEL*—

Each Captain (except the Captain of the leading Company) makes a †half face to the wheeling flank, with his Company.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—

The Captain of the leading Company, if the

---

† The half-face to the wheeling flank was first introduced, into the Austrian Règlement, by the Archduke Charles, in 1807.



wheel is to the reverse flank, wheels with his Company; if to the pivot flank, acquires his new front by moving back during the wheel.

The other Captains wheel with their Companies: each circling round, and covering on the Captain in his front. (*See* page 84.)

#### SUBALTERNS.

##### *On the word WHEEL—*

If the wheel is to the pivot flank, the Lieutenants move up on the reverse flanks of their Companies, to lead them: resuming their places at the word *HALT*.

##### (B) *On a Moveable pivot.*

COLUMN: LEFT  
[or RIGHT]  
WHEEL.

COLUMN:  
FORWARD.

The wheel is made on the same principle as that on a fixed pivot: the pivot man of the Column moving with very short paces round the wheeling point, and keeping his shoulders square with his Company; and each Company in rear making a half *turn* to the wheeling flank.

FIELD OFFICERS: as in (A). [The Major of the rear Wing will cover the Captains from the rear, when the Column moves forward at the completion of the wheel.]

If the wheel is to the pivot flank, the Lieutenants fall back to their places in rear on the word *FORWARD*.

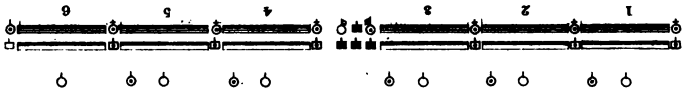
[For a Column wheeling *while taking ground to a flank*: see page 126.]

*Note.*—During the wheel (whether on a fixed or moveable pivot) the outward flank directs. The front Company wheels as usual, but with much shorter paces; each man of the remaining Companies moves round on the circumference of a circle of which the pivot man of the Column is the centre. The files on the outward flank of each Company in rear must carefully preserve their distances,

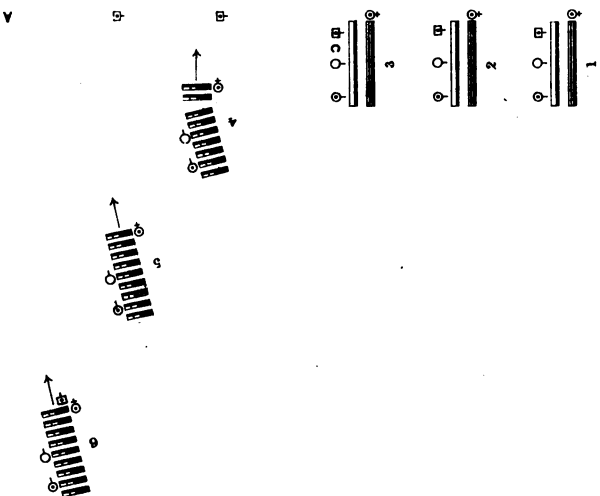


**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> XV. ¶ An Open Column (Right in front) moving into an Alignment by the flank march of Fours.**

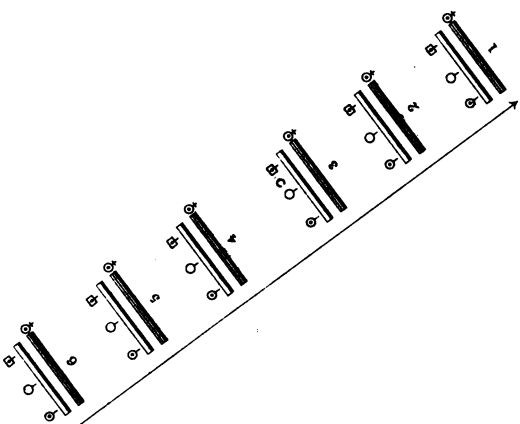
**III. The Column wheeled to the left into Line.**



**II. When 3 of the Companies have moved, and the remainder are moving (FOURS LEFT) into Column, at right angles to the new alignment.**



**I. The open Column, having arrived at about wheeling distance from the point of formation.**



**C Colour party.**

*Private Drunk, 11th.*

*W. D. M. 1861.*

and retain their original relative position to, and covering on, the leading Company: the remainder conforming to them; and the men nearest the pivot flank keeping up the inward shoulder at the commencement of the wheel, so as to gain sufficient ground to the flank and to keep their proper distance. The leader on the outer flank of the rear Company (*on whose movements the march of every man in the Column should be made to depend*) will march, *throughout the wheel*, at a full pace of 30 inches.

A Double Column, when closed to quarter or close distance, may wheel as a single Column.

---

AN OPEN COLUMN changes Direction by the successive wheel of its Companies on moveable pivots round the same point. On the Battalion Commander's caution **THE COLUMN WILL CHANGE DIRECTION TO THE—**: The Captain of the leading Company will immediately give it the word *Right* (or *Left*) *wheel*, and that Company will continue wheeling till the Battalion Commander gives **FORWARD**. Each of the other Companies in succession, on reaching the spot where the first wheeled, will receive from its leader the word *Right* (or *Left*) *wheel*; and when its front becomes perpendicular to the new direction, *Forward*.

Should the wheel be to the reverse flank, each Lieutenant will move up on that flank of his Company and lead during the change of direction: retaining the position occupied by the reverse flank when the Column was marching by the pivot flank; so that when *Forward* is given at the completion of the wheel, the pivot flanks may still be in line. Weak Companies will have to march a little past the wheeling point before

they wheel: strong Companies will wheel a little before they reach it.

If the change of Direction is to bring the pivot flank of the Column on an Alignment, *preparatory to forming Line*:—The Captain of the leading Company, on entering the alignment, must at once look to, and march steadily on, the points of Formation; the other Captains, as they enter the alignment, covering on him and the base point. If the Column is halted before all the Companies have changed their direction into the alignment, the rear Companies will move into the alignment by the flank march of Fours (as explained in the following paragraph).

¶ *An Open Column moving into an Alignment by the flank march of Fours.*

**MARCH ON  
YOUR COVERERS.**

**FORM FOURS:  
RIGHT (or LEFT).**

The Column having been marched up, obliquely, to within a few paces of wheeling distance from that point in the new alignment where the outward flank of its leading Company will rest when in Line, all the Companies will, on the Battalion Commander's word *RIGHT (or LEFT)*, move across into the alignment by fours. The Covering-serjeant of each Company will run out to mark where its pivot flank will rest in the alignment: the Captain, as he comes up to the Coverer, giving the word *No.—: Halt, front: dress*. The Major of the leading Wing will cover the Coverers from the front.

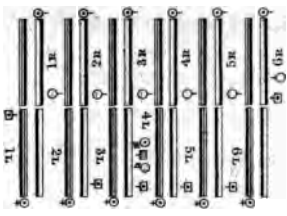
The Column will then be ready to wheel into Line.

(F. E., p. 261.)

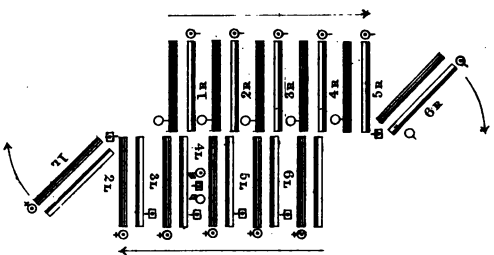


PART II. BATTALION DRILL. Nº XVI. *A Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) changing Front to the rear by the wheel of Subdivisions round the centre, from the Halt.*

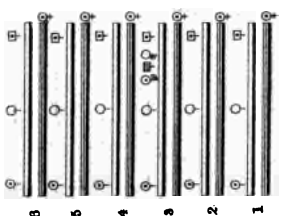
I. *After the command  
RIGHT SUBDIVISIONS,  
RIGHT-ABOUT FACE.*



II. *The Movement completed.*



III. *The Movement completed.*



## SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

No. XVI.—*A Close or Quarter-distance Column, changing Front to the rear by the wheel of Subdivisions round the Centre.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 18, p. 264.)

*N.B.*—By this movement, the front of the Column will be changed to the original rear; the order of the Companies, and consequently the pivot flank, remaining unchanged. The touch will be to the inward flanks.

(A) *From the Halt.*

[*On the Caution*—The Coverers of the front and rear Companies will give the points on which the Subdivisions will wheel the half circle. *See Plate.*]

CHANGE FRONT  
TO THE REAR.  
BY THE WHEEL  
OF SUBDIVISIONS  
ROUND THE  
CENTRE.

*RIGHT (or LEFT):*  
*SUBDIVISIONS:*  
*RIGHT-ABOUT*  
*FACE.*

*Q. (or D.) MARCH.*

*HALT; FRONT:*  
*DRESS.*

## FIELD OFFICERS.

If Right is in front: The Senior Major will superintend the wheels of the left Subdivisions; the Junior, the wheels of the right; if Left is in front, *vice versâ*. The Adjutant will see that the wheeling points are correctly placed.

## CAPTAINS.

(Suppose Right in front.)

*On the word MARCH—*

The Captain of the leading Company will wheel with his pivot Subdivision: advancing at a full pace when it has completed the half circle. Each of the other Captains, on reaching the wheeling point, will act in like manner.

## SUBALTERNS.

<sup>(1)</sup>*On the word FACE—*

The Lieutenant of each Company will place himself on the outward flank of its reverse Subdivision.



(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The Lieutenant of the rear Company will wheel with its reverse Subdivision, as explained for the Captain of the leading Company. The other Lieutenants in succession, on reaching the wheeling point, will act in like manner.

(3) *On the word FRONT: DRESS—*

The reverse Subdivisions will front: the Lieutenants falling back into their proper places in Column.

The whole will then dress by the pivot flank.

(B) *On the March.*

CHANGE FRONT  
TO THE REAR  
BY THE WHEEL  
OF SUBDIVISIONS  
ROUND THE  
CENTRE.

RIGHT (or LEFT)  
SUBDIVISIONS:  
RIGHT-ABOUT  
TURN.

‡FRONT TURN.

The movement will proceed as when done from the Halt: the reverse Subdivisions turning instead of facing. The Lieutenants will fall back into their places in rear on the word *FRONT TURN*.

‡ Turning about occupies 3 paces (*see* p. 18): the word *TURN* will therefore be given 4 paces before the two Subdivisions of each Company become aligned, so that at the 4th pace they may move on together in the new direction.

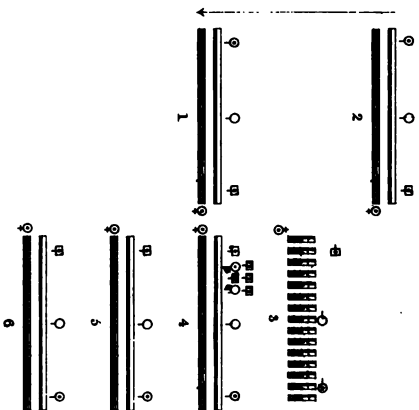
A Double Column will change front in the manner above described for a single Column.

For Columns changing front by countermarching by Files or Ranks: *see* ¶ 2, page 84.

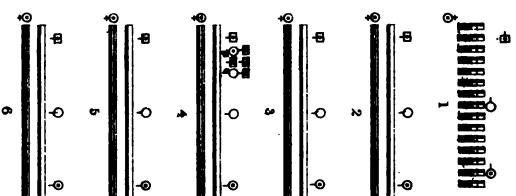


**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N° XVII<sup>th</sup> A Column (Left in front), at half distance, bringing its rear Company to the front**

*II. When N°s 1 and 2 Companies are in the new Column, and N° 3 has formed four right.*



*I. When N° 1 has got the word Form fours: right*



### SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

#### No. XVII.<sup>(1)</sup>—*Changing the Order of a Column by the successive march of the rear Companies to the Front.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 20, p. 267.)

*Note.*—When the rear Company of a Column is brought to the front (in which case the pivot flank will necessarily be changed), each Company will move out of the old Column by its present pivot flank.

BY SUCCESSIVE  
COMPANIES:  
REAR WING TO  
THE FRONT.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Major of the Wing that is to be brought up will follow in rear of the rear-but-one Company of the old Column. The other Major and Adjutant will follow in their proper places on the reverse flank of the new Column.

CAPTAINS.

(Suppose Right in front.)

<sup>(1)</sup> *On the word FRONT—*

The Captain of the rear Company will take one pace to his front, face to the right-about, and give *No. —: Form fours: left. Q. March:* standing fast, and allowing the men to move past him. When the Company is clear of the Column, he will give *Front turn. By the right:* and will fall in on that flank and lead on to the front, passing close along the pivot flanks of the other Companies.

The Captain of the next Company, and each of the other Captains in succession, as the flank

of the Company which stood immediately in his rear in the old Column is approaching him, will take one pace to his front, face to the right-about and give *No. — : Form fours: left.* As the Company passes him, he will give *Q. March* and will proceed as above directed for the Captain of the rear Company.

[When Left is in front, the rear Company and each of the others in succession will form Fours to the right, and proceed as above directed. See Plate.]

#### SUBALTERNES.

The Lieutenant of each Company changes his flank when its Captain gives *Front turn.*

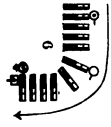
#### THE COLOURS.

The Colour party moves out of the old Column independently, in file: and follows in its proper place in rear of the leading centre Company.

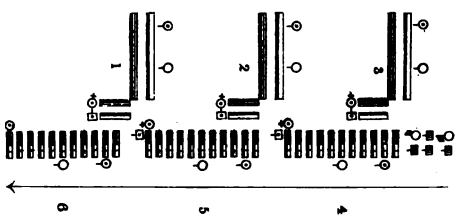
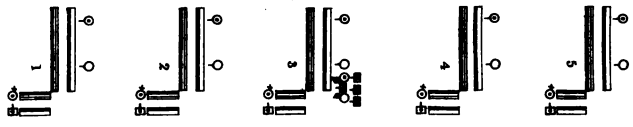


ART II. BATTALION DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> XVII<sup>(2)</sup>. *A Column at half distance (Right in front) bringing its rear Company to the front, on a Road.*

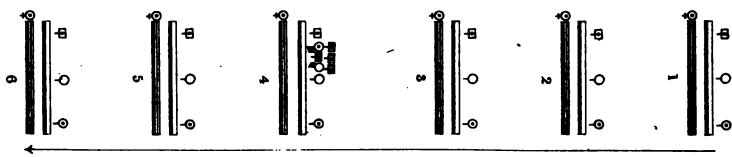
*Upon the word,*  
1. MARCH.



II. *When N<sup>o</sup> 6 is about to front form Company;*  
N<sup>o</sup> 5 to form fours left.



III. *The Column when the movement is complete*



## SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

No. XVII.<sup>(2)</sup>—*Changing the Order of an Open, Half-, or Quarter-distance Column on a Road.\**

(F. E. IV., SEC. 21, p. 268.)

(*Suppose Right in front*)—

BY FOURS FROM  
THE LEFT: REAR  
WING TO THE  
FRONT.

4<sup>th</sup> SECTIONS,  
RIGHT WHEEL:  
Q. MARCH.

FIELD OFFICERS: as in No. XVII.<sup>(1)</sup>

CAPTAINS.

(*Suppose Right in front.*)

*On the word FRONT—*

The Captain of the rear Company takes one pace to his front, faces to the right-about, and gives No. — : *Form fours: left. Right wheel:* at the same time placing himself on the right of his leading four.

*On the word MARCH—*

The rear Company (without any further command from its Captain) steps off, wheels to the right, and moves straight to the front along the rear rank of the 4th Sections of the other Companies; till it clears the front of the old Column. The Captain then gives No. — : *Front form Company*, (moving across to meet the right flank: see p. 39): and when Company is formed, falls in, giving *Forward: By the right*, and leading straight to the front.

The Captain of each of the remaining Companies wheels inwards with his 4th Section; and as

\* viz. when there is no space for the flank Movement described in the last No.



it completes the quarter circle, gives *No. 4 Section* : *Halt*.

The Captain of the Company which stood next to the rear one in the old Column, and each of the other Captains in succession, will glance over his inward shoulder, and give *No. — : Form fours left : Q. March*, in time to follow the Company in whose rear he is to march, without loss of distance : he will then proceed as directed for the Captain of the rear Company. The Captain of the front Company of the old Column may give his word *Front form Company* as soon as his leading four has gained the left of the Road.

[A Column Left in front will bring its rear Companies to the Front by Fours from the *right*, in like manner : the 1st Sections being wheeled inwards.]

#### SUBALTERNS.

As each Company gets the word *Front form Company*, its Lieutenant will move across to his place in rear of the reverse flank.

#### THE COLOURS.

*On the word MARCH*—The Colour party will move to the rear of the 3rd Section of the right-centre, or the 2nd Section of the left-centre, Company ; and will follow in rear of the latter or the former Company when it passes : according as the old Column was Right or Left in front.

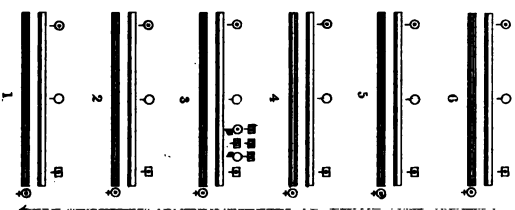
The Battalion may, if required, move on in Fours instead of forming Companies.

[The rear Wing may be brought to the front by Sections instead of Fours : in which case, however, it will be necessary to wheel up the pivot *Subdivisions*.]

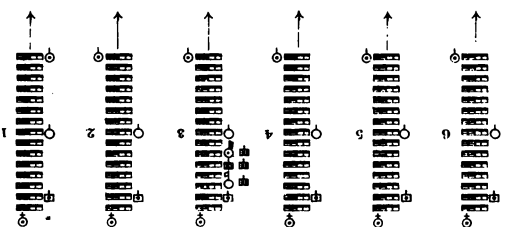


**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> XVIII. A Column at half distance (Right in front) taking ground to the Right in Fours.**

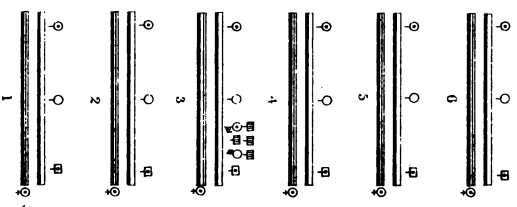
**III. After the command FRONT TURN.**



**II. After the command FORM FOURS: RIGHT. (supposing Officers not ordered to change flanks).**



**I. The Column advancing.**



## SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

No. XVIII.—*A Column taking ground to a flank in Fours: or to the front and a flank by Echelon of Sections.*

(F. E. IV., SECS. 22, 23, p. 272.)

(A) *To a flank: by Fours.*

TAKE GROUND  
TO THE RIGHT (or  
LEFT) IN FOURS.

FORM  
FOURS: RIGHT  
(or LEFT).

[Q MARCH.]

[No. —:  
COMPANY OF  
DIRECTION.]

FIELD OFFICERS: as in No. V., page 77.

CAPTAINS.

Captains do not change flanks if ground is taken to the reverse flank, unless ordered.

SUBALTERNS.

If ground is taken to the reverse flank, and the Captains are not ordered to change flanks, the Lieutenant of each Company will move up to lead.

Each Company leader (Captain or Lieutenant as the case may be) marches on whichever flank of its leading four is nearest to the Company of direction: keeping his distance from the Company next him on that flank. When no Company of direction is named, the leading Company of the Column will direct.

The Column, if at open distance, may form LINE as explained in No. V.

*Note.*—If it be required to form SQUARE:—  
The Column, if at quarter-distance, will be ordered to turn to the front and then form Square

on the leading Company ; if at open distance, to form Square on the Centre. *See* No. XXX.

¶ *A Column CLOSING AND OPENING OUT during the Flank March by Fours.*

- (1) A Column, at quarter (or open) distance, while taking ground to a flank by fours, may be ordered to *CLOSE* on (or to quarter distance on) any named Company. That Company continues moving on at a short pace: the leading four of each of the other Companies wheels one-eighth of a circle inwards (the rest of the Company following), till the required distance is gained, when it resumes the original direction — stepping short till *FORWARD* is given to the whole Column. The Column may *OPEN OUT* in like manner: the remaining Companies wheeling one-eighth of a circle outwards. In both cases, Company leaders (if not already there) will change to that flank of their leading four which is nearest the Company to, or from, which the closing is made.

[The Column, when closed to close or quarter distance, may *wheel* in any direction, on the principles laid down in No. XV. The Officer leading each Company will place himself (if not already there) on that flank of the leading four which is nearest the pivot: so that he may be able to keep his distance from that point.]

If a further reduction of Front is required:—The right Companies (if Right is in front) may mark time; the left Companies moving on and closing on the centre, the right following: if Left is in front, *vice versa*. Also, one Wing may move on, the other following: or, one of the flank Companies may move on in fours; the remainder following in succession. Before the Column is again opened out, the leading Companies must mark time (or halt) while the others resume their places: or, the rear Companies may be ordered to double.

- (2) The Companies, on open ground, may also close and open out by the command **BY THE DIAGONAL MARCH, CLOSE ON (or OPEN OUT FROM) No. —. REMAINING COMPANIES: INWARDS (or OUTWARDS) HALF TURN:** each Company leader giving *No. —: Right (or Left) half turn*, when the proper distance is acquired.

(F. E. pp. 265, 273–275.)

(B) *To the front and to a flank: by the Echelon  
March of Sections.*

[This Movement is obviously inapplicable to a close Column.]

**TAKE GROUND  
TO THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT) IN  
ECHELLON.**

*If at the Halt\*—*  
**ON THE MOVE:  
BY SECTIONS,  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
WHEEL.**

**Q. MARCH.**

*If on the March—*  
**BY SECTIONS,  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
WHEEL.**

*(When in echelon)—*  
**FORWARD.**

**FIELD OFFICERS.**

The Senior or Junior Major, according as ground is taken to the right or left, will superintend the direction.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNs will proceed as directed in Part I., No. XI.: the leader of the front Company taking up points, in the diagonal direction, to march on; and each leader in rear covering on the leading flank of the front Company, and (as usual) preserving his distance from the Company next in his front.

**THE COLOURS.**—The Colour party will move as a Section.

\* An Echelon of Sections is always formed on *moveable* pivots.

A Column may also take ground to the front and to a flank **BY THE DIAGONAL MARCH.** (*See page 18.*)

### SECTION IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

#### No. XIX.—*A Battalion in Open Column wheeling into Line.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 2, p. 227.)

Suppose an open Column of *Companies*:—

##### (A) *From the Halt.*

[*On the word LINE*—The pivot man of each Company will face as usual (*see p. 6*); but will not drop his arm till the Company that has wheeled up to him gets *Eyes front*. The Coverer of the leading Company, only, will run out.]

LEFT (or RIGHT)  
WHEEL INTO  
LINE  
STEADY.  
Q. MARCH.

##### FIELD OFFICERS.

If the Column is Right in front, the Junior Major; if Left in front, the Senior Major; will dress the pivots from the rear of the Column: giving the word *STEADY* when they are in line. The Major not occupied in correcting the pivots, and the Adjutant, will move to their places in Line during the formation.

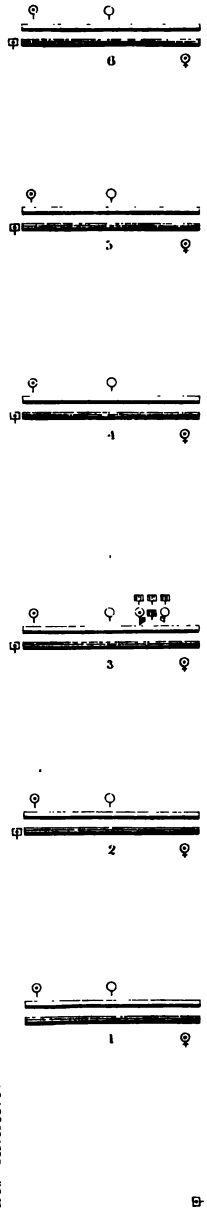
##### CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS:

Proceed as explained in the corresponding No. (V.) of PART I. *See Note.*

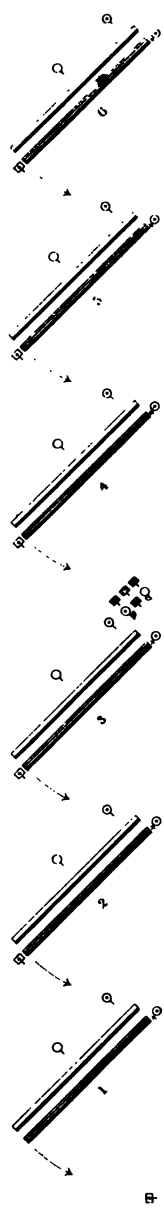
The Captain of each (except the left-centre, or right-centre) Company should call out its number in time to give *Halt* when its wheeling flank is 2 paces from the standing flank of the Company to which it is wheeling up: so that, on the word *Dress*, the dressing may be forward.

PART II. BATTALION DRILL. NO XIX. *An Open Column of Companies (Right in front) wheeling into Line, from the Halt.*

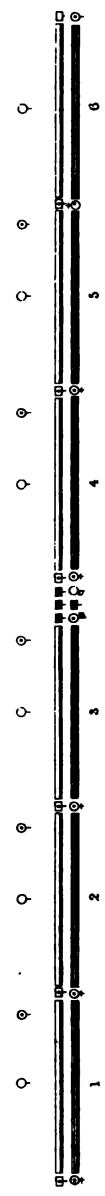
I. *After the Halt.*



II. *During the Wheel.*



III. *In Line.*







## FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN. 129

The Captain of the left-centre or right-centre Company, according as the Column was Right or Left in front, will give his word *Halt* when its wheeling flank is 2 paces from the standing flank of the Colour party: and will dress the latter with his own men.

### THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will wheel up into Line between the 2 centre Companies; and be dressed, as above stated, by the left-centre or right-centre Captain.

---

If distances are lost in the wheel into Line, they will be corrected as explained at p. 63.

---

### (B) *On Moveable pivots.*

*LEFT*  
(or *RIGHT*)  
*WHEEL INTO*  
*LINE.*  
*FORWARD.*

FIELD OFFICERS: when the formation is completed, will be in their proper places in Line.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS: as in PART I., No. V.  
THE COLOURS wheel up into Line as in (A).

---

When a Column of *Subdivisions* (or *Sections*) wheels into Line:—The Officers of each Company will proceed as directed in PART I., No. IX.<sup>(2)</sup>: the Field-officers, if the formation is from the Halt, as in (A).

---

*Note.*—In the above, and in every other formation of Line from Column, the Lieutenant of the left-flank Company will move up on its left as soon as it is formed in Line, or (if it has to be dressed from the left) on his Captain's word *Eyes front*.

# SECTION IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

No. XX.—*A Battalion in Open Column forming Line to the Front, on any named Company.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 33, p. 297.)

(A) *From the Halt.*

(a) *Line on the Leading Company.*

[Each (except the leading) Company will be wheeled back on its right or left, according as the Column is Right or Left in front; the pivot files acting as directed in PART I., No. VII.]

FORM LINE ON  
THE LEADING  
COMPANY.

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
FOUR PACES ON  
THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT)  
BACKWARD  
WHEEL

Q. MARCH.

FORM LINE:  
Q. MARCH.  
STEADY.

## FIELD OFFICERS.

If Right is in front, the Senior Major will, on the *Caution*, move up on the right of the new alignment to dress the base points (and the Coverers, as they run out); and when the formation is completed, will give *STEADY* and move to his place in Line. If Left is in front, the Junior Major will act on the left as above explained for the Senior on the right. The Adjutant, in either case, will mark the distant flank of the Line.

The Major not occupied in correcting the points will move to his place in Line during the movement; the Adjutant, on the word *STEADY*.

## CAPTAINS.

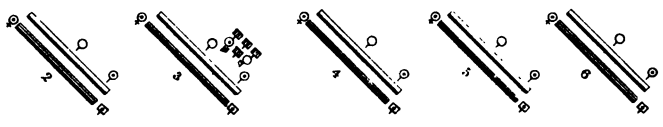
(1) *On the word COMPANY—*

The Captain of the leading Company, whether

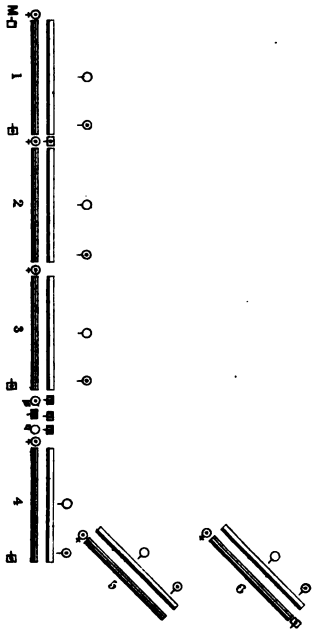


**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N° XX. An Open Column (Right in front) forming Line on its leading Company, from the Flank.**

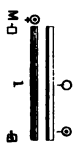
*I. After the wheel into column.*



*II. When all the Companies but two have wheeled up into Line.*



W.D.M. del.



FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN. 131

Right or Left is in front,—dressing being always from the point of *appui*—will change his flank.

The other Captains, also whether Right or Left is in front, will change flanks: *see* (D.) p. 63.

(2) *On the word WHEEL—*

The Captain of each (except the leading) Company will face inwards, and correct the position of the pivot man; as directed in PART I., No. VII.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The Captain of the leading Company will give it the word *No. —: Eyes right. Dress*, or *No. —: Eyes left. Dress*, according as Right or Left is in front: and the dressing being completed, will give *Eyes front* and take post in Line.

Each of the other Captains will halt and dress his Company in echelon (as directed in PART I., No. VII.), give *Eyes front*, and fall in on the flank from which he dressed.

(4) *On the 2nd word MARCH—*

The Companies in echelon step off. Each Captain in succession will give his Company *No. —: Right (or Left) wheel* in time for it to wheel the moment its inner flank reaches the rear-rank man on the outer flank of the last halted Company: and when it becomes parallel to the alignment, *Halt: dress up*. He will then move out, dress his men from the 2nd file beyond the Coverer of the last halted Company, give *Eyes front*, and take post in Line. *See Note, p. 132.*

SUBALTERNS.

The Lieutenant of the named Company, if Right is in front, will change flank on the *Caution*.

The other Lieutenants will change flank on the *Caution*: and again, if Left was in front, on their Captain's 2nd word *Eyes front*.

[The supernumerary rank of the Company that last forms in Line will step back to its proper distance on the Captain's word *Halt: dress up*; that of each of the other Companies, when the Company which is to form on its outer flank gets the word—*wheel*.]

THE COLOURS.—The Colour party will move up independently as a Company, in echelon.\*

[If the Line is to be formed *obliquely* to the front of the Column:—The leading Company of the Column will first be wheeled back on its reverse flank into the required direction (its Captain acting as directed in Part I., No. VII.): and the remainder will then wheel back as above described, on their reverse flanks, into echelon—taking, *in addition to the usual 4 paces*, half the number of paces wheeled back by the leading Company. The formation will then proceed as already described. If the leading Company is wheeled up on its reverse flank, the Line will be formed as in No. XXI., p. 137.]

(b) Line on the Rear Company.

[Each (except the rear) Company, whether Right or Left is in front, will be wheeled back on its proper pivot flank: *see* ¶ p. 26.]

FORM LINE ON  
THE REAR  
COMPANY.  
—  
REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.

FIELD OFFICERS.

If Right is in front the Junior Major, if Left in front the Senior Major, will dress the base points and Coverers; the Adjutant, in either case, marking the distant point; as directed in (a).

\* *Note*.—In every formation of Line on any one Company: whichever of the two centre Captains comes up into Line furthest from the Battalion point of *appui* will dress the Colour party with his own men.

FOUR PAGES ON CAPTAINS.

THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT)  
BACKWARD  
WHEEL.

Q. *MARCH.*

FORM LINE:

Q. *MARCH.*

STEADY.

(1) *On the word COMPANY—*

All the Captains, whether Right or Left is in front, will stand fast: *see* (D.) p. 63.

(2) *On the word WHEEL—*

The Captain of each (except the named) Company will proceed as directed in (a).

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The Captain of the named Company will give it the word *No. —: Eyes left. Dress*, or *No. —: Eyes right. Dress*, according as Right or Left is in front: and the dressing being completed, will give *Eyes front*, and take post in Line.

The other Captains: as in (a).

(4) *On the 2nd word MARCH—*

The Companies in echelon move off, rear rank in front. Each Captain in succession, will give his Company *No. —: Right (or Left) wheel*, so that it may wheel into the alignment when the inner flank of its *proper* front rank reaches the outer front-rank man of the Company last formed in Line. He will then give *Forward*, and when 2 paces in rear of the alignment *Halt, front: dress up*. Having dressed the Company as explained in (a), he will take post in Line.

SUBALTERNS.

If Right is in front:—The Lieutenant of the named Company will change flank on his Captain's word *Eyes front*: the other Lieutenants, on their Captain's 2nd word *Eyes front*.

[The supernumerary rank of the named Company will fall back to its proper distance on the 2nd word *MARCH*: that of each of the other Companies on the word *Halt, front: dress up*.]

COLOURS: as in (a).



## (c) Line on any central Company.

[The Companies in front of the named one, after being faced about, will be wheeled back on their proper pivot flank (*see* ¶ p. 26): those in rear of it will be wheeled back on their reverse flanks.]

FORM LINE ON  
No. —.

COMPANIES IN  
FRONT:  
RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.

FOUR PACES ON  
THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT)  
BACKWARD  
WHEEL.

Q. MARCH.

FORM LINE:  
Q. MARCH.

STEADY.

## FIELD OFFICERS:

The Senior Major will dress the Coverers from the right of the Company of formation (the Serjeant-major moving up on its left, dressing the Coverer of the Company next on the left, and then moving to the rear): and the movement being completed, will give STEADY and move (by the left of the right-centre Company: *see* p. 71) to his place in Line. The Junior Major will mark the left, the Adjutant the right, of the Line: taking post, as usual, on the word STEADY.

## CAPTAINS.

The Captain of the named Company:—

(1) *On the Caution—*

If on its left, will change his flank.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

Will dress his men from the right [*No.—: Eyes right. Dress*]; give *Eyes front*; and fall in.

The Captains in rear of the named Company will proceed as in (a): those in front of it, as in (b).

## SUBALTERNS.

The Lieutenant of the named Company, and of each Company in its rear, will change flank as in (a): those in front, as in (b).

[The supernumerary rank of the named Company will step back to its proper distance when the Company next in its rear gets—*wheel*: that of each of the other Companies on the word *Halt (front): dress up.*]

COLOURS: as in (a).

## FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN. 135

(B) *On the March.* [*On the leading Company.*]

(a) If the Column is advancing.

FORM LINE ON  
THE LEADING  
COMPANY.

FIELD OFFICERS: as in (a) p. 130.

CAPTAINS.

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
LEFT (or RIGHT)  
WHEEL.

(When in echelon)—  
‡ FORWARD.

The Captain of the leading Company will continue to advance till *FORWARD* is given: he will then give *No. —: Halt*, change his flank, and give *Dress*. Having dressed the Company, and given *Eyes front*, he will take post in Line.

The other Captains:—

(1) *On the word WHEEL—*

Change their flanks.

(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

Lead their Companies up into Line; as in the same formation from the Halt.

(b) If the Column is retiring.

The Captain of the leading Company will proceed as in (a), except that his word will be *Halt*, front: *dress*. The other Captains, without changing their flanks, will lead up into Line as in forming on the Rear Company from the Halt.

‡ The word *FORWARD* will be given when the Companies have taken a number of paces equal to one-half the number of files in each; in other words, when they have wheeled one-eighth of a circle: see page 5.

SUBALTERNS.

The Lieutenant of the leading Company will change his flank on his Captain's word *Halt (front)*: the remainder, (if advancing, on the word *WHEEL*, and) if Left was in front, on their Captain's word *Eyes front*.

COLOURS: as in (A).

---

*Note.*—A Battalion in open Column should also be practised in forming Line on its front or rear Company IN INVERTED ORDER: i.e. so as to place the right-flank Company on the left, the left-flank Company on the right, of the Line. In the former formation, Officers will stand fast on the *Caution*; in the latter, they will change flanks: see (D.) p. 63.

# SECTION IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

## No. XXI.—*A Battalion in Open Column forming Line to the Reverse Flank.*

(F. E. IV., Sec. 35, p. 302.)

(On the March.)

FORM LINE TO  
THE REVERSE,  
FLANK.

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS: as in (a) p. 130.

CAPTAINS.

*On the word* FLANK—

Whether Right or Left is in front, all the Captains will change flanks.

The Captain of the leading Company, as he is changing his flank, will give *No. — : Right wheel. Double*, or *No. — : Left wheel. Double*, according as Right or Left is in front: and when the Company is parallel to the new alignment, *Forward*. Having advanced 3 paces, he will give *Halt: dress up*; dress his men from the flank on which he came up into Line, give *Eyes front*, and take post in Line.

Each of the other Captains in succession, on reaching the outer flank of the Company last formed in Line, will give the same word: dressing his men, when in Line, as in (4) p. 131.

SUBALTERNS.

*On the word* FLANK—

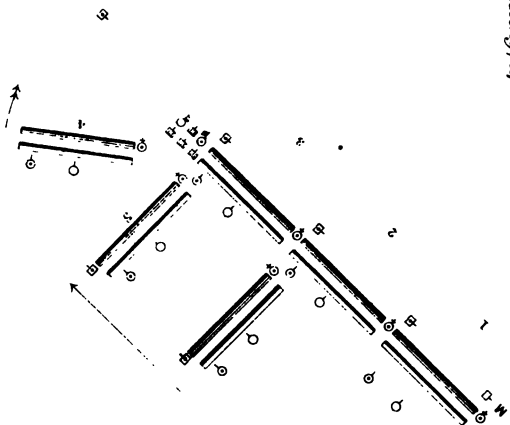
All the Lieutenants change flanks.

The supernumerary rank of each Company, when formed in Line, will step back to their proper distance from the rear rank as the rear

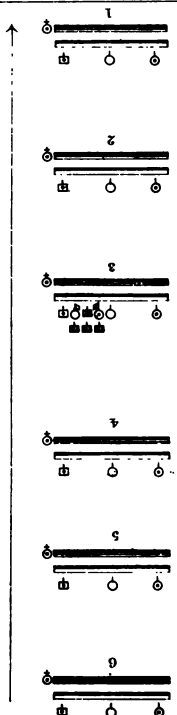


**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N° XXI.** *Abt. Open Column of Companies (Right in front) forming Line to the Reverse flank, at an angle less than a right angle.*

*II. When Nos 1, 2, and 3 have wheeled, and N° 4 is wheeling, up into Line.*



*I. Before the Caution.*



## FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN. 137

of the Column clears them: the Lieutenant, if Left was in front, again changing his flank on his Captain's word *Eyes front*.

THE COLOURS: move as a Company.

If the Line is to be formed at an angle *less than a right angle* to the front of the Column (in which case the leading Company will wheel less than the quarter circle):—

*On the Caution—*

The Captain of the 2nd Company (who will have been previously warned of the intended angle of formation) will give it the word *Left wheel*, or *Right wheel*, according as Right or Left is in front: at the same time changing his flank. He will then give *Forward: By the right (or left)*, so that the Company may advance when on a line parallel to the new alignment: and on reaching the outer flank of the leading Company, will wheel his own into the alignment as already directed.

The other Captains will continue on their original pivot flanks, till each in succession reaches the spot where the 2nd Company changed direction: and will then proceed as directed for the Captain of that Company.

---

[A Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) will form Line to the Reverse flank in like manner; see the corresponding No. (XII.) of PART I.]

*Note.*—When there is no space for *wheeling*, the Column may be ordered to break into Fours from the reverse flank, [*FORM FOURS: RIGHT (or LEFT). LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL*]: and each Company in succession form to the reverse flank on its leading file. See PART I., No. XIII.(b).

---

This Movement is usually performed on the March: when it is done from the Halt, the Captains and Lieutenants will change their flanks on the *Caution*, and on the word *Q. MARCH* the whole will proceed as above directed.

## SECTION IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

### No. XXII.<sup>(1)</sup>—*A Battalion in Double Column, on the March, forming Line to the Front.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 36, p. 304.)

*N.B.*—A Double Column should always form Line to the Front in echelon *on the March*; on the same principle as a single Column on the March (see p. 135): if the Column is required to form Line from the Halt without advancing the 2 front Companies (or Subdivisions), it will be closed to quarter distance, and then deployed as described in No. XXIII.

(Suppose a Double Column of *Subdivisions*)—

† FORM LINE ON  
THE TWO CENTRE  
SUBDIVISIONS.

REMAINING  
SUBDIVISIONS:  
OUTWARDS  
WHEEL.

(When in echelon)—  
FORWARD.

STEADY.

#### FIELD OFFICERS.

The Senior Major, assisted by the Serjeant-major, will superintend the covering from the centre: and when the formation is completed, will give STEADY and move (by the left of the right-centre Company) to his place in Line.

The Junior Major, and the Adjutant, will proceed as directed in (c) p. 134.

#### CAPTAINS.

The 2 centre Captains continue to advance with their respective Subdivisions, till the word

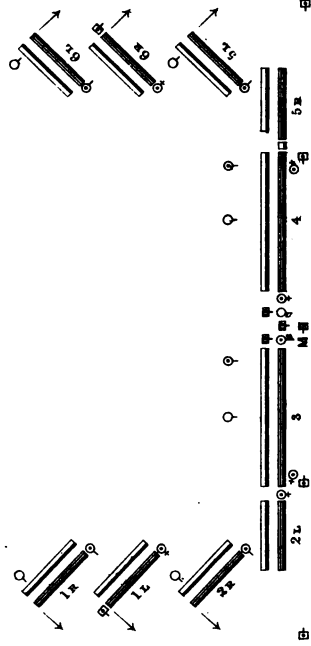
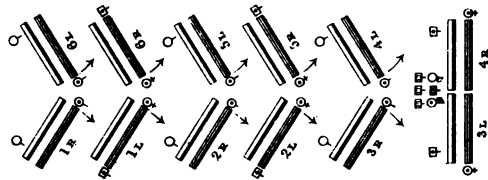
---

† The movement will be commenced at sufficient distance in rear of the alignment to allow of the advance of the 2 centre Subdivisions while the rest are wheeling forward into echelon.

PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N° XXII<sup>(1)</sup>. A Double Column of Subdivisions, on the March, forming Line to the Front.

II. When two Subdivisions of each Wing have wheeled into Line.

I. During the 1<sup>st</sup> Wheel.  
(into echelon).



24. del.





## FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN. 139

*FORWARD*: when the left-centre Captain will immediately give *Two centre Subdivisions*: *Halt*.

\* *Four paces outwards Close*: *Q. March*.

They will then move across the front of their Subdivisions; and placing themselves, the right-centre Captain on the left, the left-centre Captain on the right, of the centre Serjeant †, facing outwards, will give respectively *Left Subdivision*: *Eyes left. Dress*, and *Right Subdivision*: *Eyes right. Dress*.

Their other Subdivision having come up into Line: they will each complete the dressing of their Company, give *Eyes front*, and take post in Line.

The other Captains:—

(<sup>1</sup>) *On the word WHEEL*—

Change to the inner flank of the Subdivision each is leading.

(<sup>2</sup>) *On the word FORWARD*—

Lead their respective Subdivisions up into Line as directed for *Companies* in the formation of Line on the leading Company of a (single) open Column. See (<sup>4</sup>) p. 131.

Each Captain will—as in every other case of Line being formed from Column of Subdivisions (or Sections)—dress the *whole* of his Company, from its inner flank, when it has formed in Line.

---

\* In order to make room for the Colour party and himself.

† Who will have moved out to give a centre base point: see Plate.

## SUBALTERNS.

<sup>(1)</sup> *On the word WHEEL—*

The Lieutenants will change to the inner flank of their Subdivisions.

<sup>(2)</sup> *On the word FORWARD—*

They will lead their Subdivisions up into Line as directed for the Captains: but—as in all similar formations of Line from Column of Subdivisions (or Sections)—after giving their word *Halt: dress up*, will fall into their places in the supernumerary rank, leaving the dressing to be done by their Captains.

## THE COLOURS.

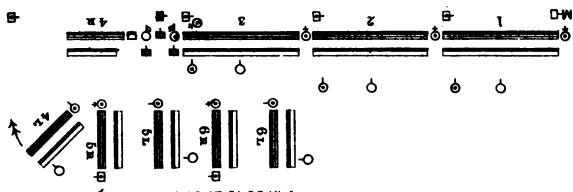
The Colours will move up into Line when the 2 centre Subdivisions close outwards to admit them.

---

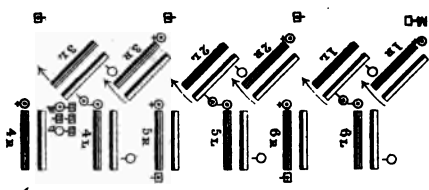
The above directions apply equally to a Double Column of *Companies* or *Sections*: except that in the former the Lieutenants will, of course, be in rear of their Companies, and have no word of command to give. In the latter, each Subaltern leading a Section will act as above directed for the Lieutenants.



PART II. BATTALION DRILL, Nº XXII<sup>a</sup>. *A Double Column of Subdivisions forming Line to the Right.*



II. *When all the Right-wing Subdivisions, and one of the Left Wing, are formed in Line.*



I. *While the Right-wing Subdivisions are wheeling into Line.*

## SECTION IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

No. XXII.<sup>(2)</sup>—*A Battalion in Double Column forming Line to the Right or Left.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 37, p. 308.)

(A) *On the March.*

[The supernumerary Serjeant of the rear Company of the named Wing will mark the inner flank of the new Line. The centre Serjeant, in giving his point, will face to the point of *appui*.]

**COLUMN: BY  
THE RIGHT.†**  
—  
**FORM LINE TO  
THE RIGHT.**  
**RIGHT WING:  
RIGHT WHEEL  
INTO LINE.**  
—  
**STEADY.**  
  
**OR**  
**FORM LINE TO  
THE LEFT.**  
**LEFT WING:  
LEFT WHEEL  
INTO LINE.**  
—  
**STEADY.**

## FIELD OFFICERS.

The Major of the named Wing will dress the Coverers from the point of formation: and when the movement is completed, will give STEADY and move to his place. The other Major will move to his place in Line during the formation. The Adjutant will mark the distant flank of the Line: taking post, as usual, on the word STEADY.

(Suppose the formation from Double Column of *Subdivisions*)—

## CAPTAINS.

[*On the words COLUMN: BY THE RIGHT—*

All the right-wing Captains will correct their covering and distance.]

*On the word LINE—*

Each Captain of the named Wing, while his Subdivisions are wheeling, moves to the inner

---

† This word will be given previous to the Caution to form to the Right; because the Column, being a Double one, will be marching by the left.

flank of his Company: and as they complete the quarter circle, will give the whole Company No. —: *Halt, dress.—Eyes front*, and take post in Line. The Captains of the other Wing will change flanks.

The latter will then proceed, in succession, as directed in PART I., No. XII.

#### SUBALTERNES.

[*On the words COLUMN: BY THE RIGHT—*

Right-wing Subdivision leaders will correct their covering and distance.]

*On the word LINE—*

The Subdivision leaders of the named Wing will fall back into their places in the supernumerary rank. The Subdivision leaders of the other Wing will change flanks.

The latter will then proceed, in succession, as directed in PART I., No. XII.

#### THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will wheel as a Subdivision.

(B) *From the Halt.*

*On the word LINE—*The Captains and Lieutenants of the named Wing will move as directed in PART I., No. IX.<sup>(2)</sup>: those of the other Wing will change flanks.

*On the word MARCH—*The named Wing will wheel into Line: the other Wing will step off, the Subdivisions forming up successively into Line as in (A).

[The same points will be given as in (A).]

FORM LINE TO  
THE —.  
— WING:  
— WHEEL  
INTO LINE.  
THE WHOLE:  
Q. MARCH.  
STEADY.

SECTION V.—DEPLOYMENTS.

No. XXIII.—*A Battalion in Close or Quarter-distance Column Deploying into Line on any named Company.*

(F. E. IV., SECS. 38-42, pp. 312-323.)

[\*Deployments are made from Column either at close or quarter distance; invariably on the base of the front Company; and, unless the ground should necessitate moving in files, by the flank march of Fours.]

N.B.—On the *Caution* to deploy on the leading Company, the Captain of that Company only, changes his flank†: on the Rear Company, the Captain of that Company is the only one who does not change his flank: on any central Company, the Captains in *front* of the named Company change flanks.

(A) *On the leading Company.*

DEPLOY ON THE  
LEADING  
COMPANY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (a) page 130.

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
FORM FOURS:  
LEFT (or RIGHT).

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the word COMPANY—*

Q. MARCH.

The Captain of the named Company, whether Right or Left is in front, changes his flank. ‡

STEADY.

\* Deploy (*i.e.* to open out): from the French *déployer*, literally 'to display, unfold'. Deployment was first introduced (into the Prussian service) in 1748. The movement was originally termed by the French, *l'ordre du tiroir*, from its resemblance to the opening the drawers of a chest.

† This rule does not apply in an *inverted* Deployment: see p. 145.

‡ To be ready to dress his men from the point of *appui*.



(2) *On the word MARCH—*

He gives *No. 1*: *Eyes right. Dress, or Eyes left. Dress* (according as Right or Left is in front): — *Eyes front*: and takes post in Line.

The other Captains:—

(1) *On the word LEFT (or RIGHT)—*

The Captain next in rear of the leading Company will take a pace to his front, and face to the right-about. The remainder place themselves on the pivot flank of their leading fours.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The Companies in Fours step off.

The Captain next in rear of the leading Company will stand fast, allowing his men to pass him till the last four reaches him. He will then (placing himself on his inner\* flank) give *No. —: Front turn*, and having advanced to 2 paces from the alignment, *Halt: dress up*; will run out, dress his men† from the 2nd file from the Covering-serjeant of the Company of formation, give *Eyes front*, and take post in Line.

Each of the remaining Captains in succession, when he hears *Front turn* given to the Company which stood next in front of him in the Column, will halt, face towards his Company, and proceed as explained for the Captain of the 2nd Company: dressing his men,† when in Line,

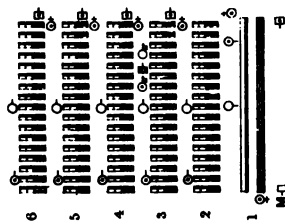
---

\* The inner flank is (as before explained) that nearest to the point of *appui* of the Line.

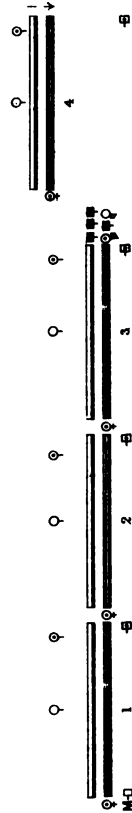
† And also those men, if any, of the following Company who are between the Coverer from whom he is dressing and his own Coverer.

PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N° XXIII. *A Battalion in Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) deploying into Line on the leading Company.*

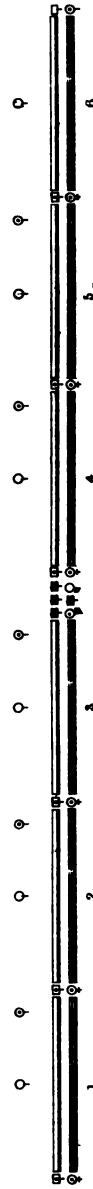
I. On the command REMAINING COMPANIES:-  
FORM FOURS: LEFT.



II. When Nos 2 and 3 have come up, and No 4 (having got the word Front turn) is coming up, into line.



*The Line  
The Column*





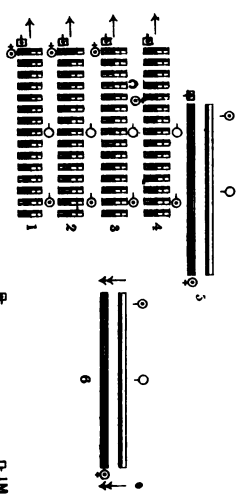


PART II. BATTALION DRILL. Nº XXIII. *A Battalion in Quarter-distance Column (Right in front) deploying into Line on the rear Company.*

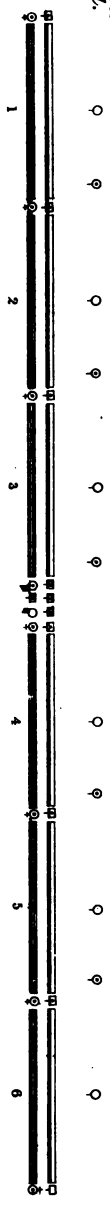
*I. On the Caution.*



*II. When Nº 6 is doubling up into line, and Nº 5 halted and frontal.*



*III. The line formed.*



*W.D.M. del.*

from the 2nd file beyond the Coverer of the last formed Company.

The Captain of the left-centre or right-centre Company will dress the Colour party with his own men. (*See Note, p. 132.*)

*N.B.*—If any Captain perceives that the Company which will precede him into Line has got the word *Front turn* too soon or too late, he should so time his own word *Front turn* as to correct the error in distance.

#### SUBALTERNES.

The Lieutenant of the leading Company, if Right is in front, will change flank on the *Caution*. The other Lieutenants will change on their Captain's word *Front turn*; and again, if Right was in front, at his word *Eyes front*.

[The supernumerary rank of each Company will step back to its proper distance as soon as its rear is clear.]

#### THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will deploy independently, as a Company: *see Note, p. 132.*

---

A Column may also be deployed on the leading Company IN INVERTED ORDER (*see Note, p. 135*). In that case the Captain of the named Company will *not*, the remainder *will*, change flank on the *Caution*.

#### (B) *On the Rear Company.*

[The Company of formation, the moment its front is clear, will be moved up in Double time to the new alignment. Each of the other Companies, in succession, will be halted and fronted when opposite to its position in the alignment; and when its front is clear, will be brought up in Quick time into Line.]

DEPLOY ON THE  
REAR COMPANY.  
*REMAINING*

#### FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (b) page 132.

COMPANIES:  
FORM FOURS:  
RIGHT (or LEFT).

CAPTAINS.

Q. MARCH.

STEADY.

(1) *On the word COMPANY—*

Whether Right or Left is in front :—The Captain of the named Company will stand fast : all the other Captains changing their flanks.

(2) *On the word RIGHT [or LEFT]—*

The Captain of the Company next in front of the named Company will take one pace to his front, and face to the right-about. The other Captains in front will place themselves on the pivot flank of their leading fours.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The Companies in Fours step off.

The Captain of the rear Company, the moment his front is clear, will give *No. — : By the left (or right) : Double March* ; and having advanced to 2 paces from the alignment marked by the base points, *Halt ; dress up*. He will then move out, dress the Company from the flank on which he came up into Line, give *Eyes front*, and take post in Line.

The Captain of the rear-but-one Company will stand fast, allowing his men to move past him till the last four reaches him. He will then give *No. — : Halt, front : dress*, and fall in on his inner flank, ready to move off. The moment his front is clear, he will give *No. — : By the left (or right) : Q. March* ; and lead his men up into, and dress them when in, Line, as directed in (A) for the Captain of the 2nd Company.

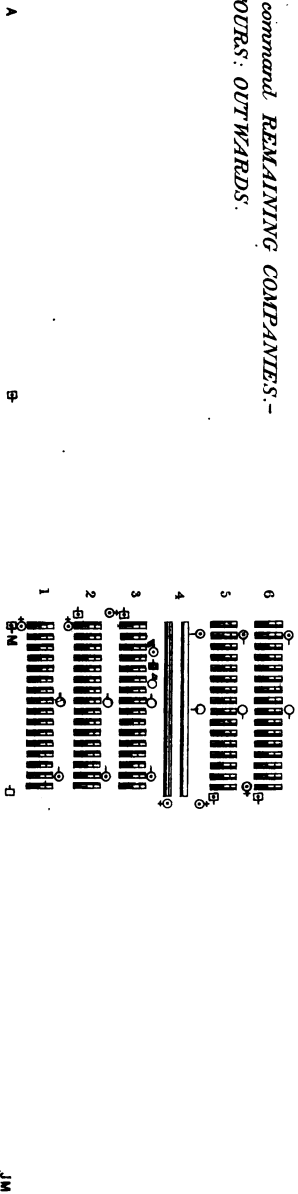
Each of the other Captains will move on with his Company till he hears *Halt : front* given to



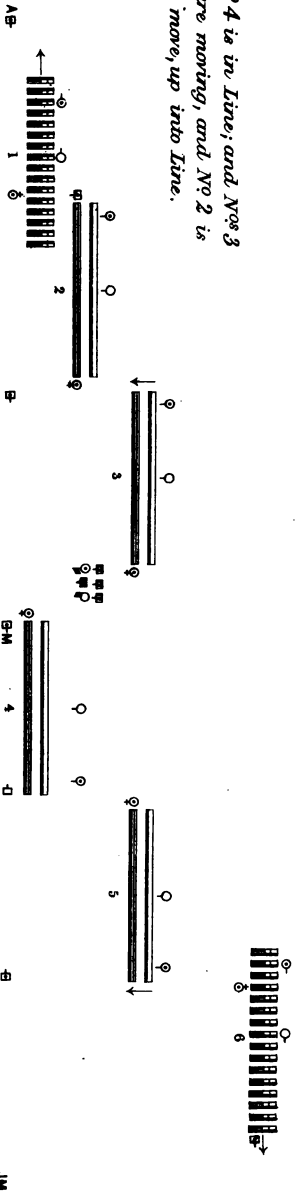


the left-centre Company.

# I. After the command REMAINING COMPANIES:- FORM FOURS: OUTWARDS.



## II. When No 4 is in Line; and Nos 3 and 5 are moving, and No 2 is about to move, up into Line.



## II. The Line formed.

W. D. M. del.

Traverse Probe, 1

the Company which stood next in rear of him in the Column. He will then halt, face towards his Company, and proceed as directed for the Captain of the rear-but-one Company:\* dressing his men, when in Line, from the 2nd file beyond the Coverer of the last formed Company. The Captain of the right-centre or left-centre Company will dress the Colour party.

\* Except that the Captain of the flank Company that comes up last into Line will simply give the word *No.—: Halt, front: dress up.*

## SUBALTERNS.

The Lieutenant of the named Company, if Right was in front, will change flank on his Captain's word *Eyes front*. The other Lieutenants will change on the *Caution*; on their Captain's word *Halt, front*; and again, if Right was in front, on his word *Eyes front*.

[The supernumerary rank of each Company will gain its proper distance as it halts in Line.]

THE COLOURS: as in (A).

(C) *On any central Company.*

DEPLOY ON No.— FIELD OFFICERS.  
COMPANY.

As in No. XXII.<sup>(1)</sup> p. 138.

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
FORM FOURS:  
OUTWARDS.

## CAPTAINS.

Q. MARCH.  
STEADY.

The Captain of the named Company will proceed exactly as directed in (B) for the Captain of the rear Company.

The other Captains:—

<sup>(1)</sup> *On the word COMPANY*—All the Captains in front of the named Company change flanks.

<sup>(2)</sup> *On the word OUTWARDS*—

The Captain of the Company next in front,

and of the Company next in rear, of the named one, will take a pace to his front and face to the right-about.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The Captains in rear of the named Company will act, in succession, as explained in (A) for the Captains in rear of the leading Company: those in its front, as directed in (B) for the Captains in front of the rear Company.

#### SUBALTERNS.

The Lieutenant of the named Company, if Right was in front, will change flank on his Captain's word *Eyes front*. The Lieutenants in front of the named Company will change as directed in (B): those in its rear, as in (A).

---

#### ¶ *Deploying from Double Column.*

A Double Column of Companies (or Subdivisions) at close or quarter distance, may deploy on the 2 leading Companies (or Subdivisions) on the same principle as a single Column deploying on a central Company: those Companies (or Subdivisions) opening out, on the *Caution*, by command of the left-centre Captain, to make room for him and the Colours; and the remaining Companies (or Subdivisions) of each Wing getting *Front turn*, in succession, when opposite to their position in the Line. If the Column was formed of Subdivisions, each Captain will as usual dress both his Subdivisions, when in Line, from the inner flank of his Company. *See No. XXII.*<sup>(1)</sup> p. 139.

Should a Double Column be ordered to deploy when it has moved up (not to the centre, but) to either extremity of an intended alignment, it will

deploy both Wings in the same direction : the deployment being made on the rear Company (or Subdivision) of the Right or of the Left Wing, according as the Column has moved up to the right or left extremity of the new alignment. The Wing in which is the Company (or Subdivision) of formation, will deploy as a single Column deploying on its *rear* Company ; the Captains and Lieutenants, if the Double Column is one of *Subdivisions*, changing places on the Caution.\* The other Wing will march off in fours, parallel to the alignment, till the former Wing's deployment is finished, and will then deploy on its *leading* Company (or Subdivision)—so completing the Line.

---

\* In order that each Captain may lead up into Line that Subdivision of his Company which will first arrive there, and so be properly placed for dressing his whole Company when the other Subdivision comes up into its place.

## SECTION V.—DEPLOYMENTS.

No. XXIV.—*A Battalion in Line changing Front by the intermediate formation of Open Column on any named Company.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 43, p. 324.)

[This Movement is simply a combination of the two described in Nos. XII. and XIX.: with this addition—that the Company of formation may, if required, be first wheeled back any given number of paces.]

*N.B.*—When front is to be changed to the Right (on whatever Company), the Column will be formed Left in front, and the named Company—if required to wheel back—will be wheeled back on its right: when front is to be changed to the Left, *vice versa*.

(A) *On a flank Company (suppose No. 1): the opposite flank thrown forward.*

OPEN COLUMN IN FIELD OFFICERS.  
FRONT OF No. 1.

*or*  
(if the change of Front is  
to be oblique to the old  
Line)—

OPEN COLUMN IN  
FRONT OF No. 1,  
WHICH WILL  
WHEEL BACK ON  
ITS RIGHT.

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
FORM FOURS:  
RIGHT.

Q. MARCH.

The Field-officers, during the two parts of the movement, act as directed in Nos. XII. and XIX.

CAPTAINS.

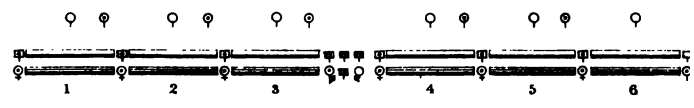
The Captain of the named Company (the right flank of which, being the point of intersection of the present and the intended Lines, will be the fixed point of *appui* of the latter), supposing it is not cautioned to wheel back, will remain perfectly steady till the 2nd part of the movement commences.

PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N° XXIV. *A Battalion in Line changing front to the Right by forming open Column of N° 1 Company.*

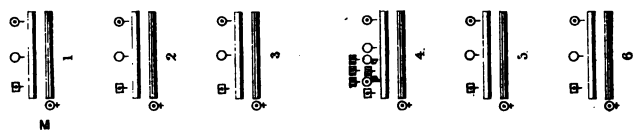
*I. After the command, REALIGNING COMPANIES, -FORM FOURS, RIGHT.*



*III. The Open Column wheeled into the new alignment.*



*II. Open Column formed in front of N° 1.*



A



## CHANGING FRONT BY OPEN COLUMN. 151

(*Column having been  
formed*)—  
STEADY.

RIGHT WHEEL  
INTO LINE.

Q. MARCH.

If the new Line is to be formed obliquely to the old Line, and the named Company is consequently cautioned to wheel back: the Captain will, on that *Caution*, wheel it back till it is perpendicular to the new alignment.\* [No. 1: *On the move; on the right backward wheel. Q. March.—Halt, dress.—Eyes front.*]

The other Captains, during the formation of the Column, will act as the Captain of each (except the named) Company in No. XII., p. 104.

The Column, when formed, will be wheeled to the right into Line, as in No. XIX., p. 128.

*See Note, p. 151.*

[The Line will, in like manner, change front to the *Left* by forming open Column in front of the *left-flank* Company: the named Company (whose Captain will change his flank on the *Caution*), unless it is intended to stand fast, being wheeled back on its left; and the Column, when formed, being wheeled to the left into Line.]

SUBALTERNs and COLOURS: as in Nos. XII. and XIX.

(B) *On a flank Company (suppose No. 1): the opposite flank thrown back.*

OPEN COLUMN IN REAR OF No. 1.  
[WHICH WILL WHEEL BACK ON ITS LEFT].

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (A).

CAPTAINS.

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:

The Captain of No. 1 will change, on the *Caution*, to his left flank (the point of formation

---

\* The direction of the new alignment will be indicated by the senior supernumerary Serjeant of No. 1, who will give a base point at 6 paces from its pivot flank, as in the ordinary case of forming Column in front of either flank Company of a Line.



**FORM FOURS:**  
**LEFT.**

**Q. MARCH.**

(Column having been  
formed)—  
**STEADY.**

**LEFT WHEEL  
INTO LINE.**

**Q. MARCH.**

for the new Line): and, if so directed in the *Caution*, will then wheel his Company back on its left till it is perpendicular to the new alignment, the direction of which will be indicated by his Covering-serjeant. [No. 1: *On the move; on the left backward wheel. Q. March.—Halt, dress.—Eyes front.*]

The formation will then proceed as in (A).

[The Line will, in like manner, change front to the *Right* by forming open Column in rear of the *left-flank* Company: the named Company (whose Captain will *not* change his flank), unless it is to stand fast, being wheeled back on its right; and the Column, when formed, being wheeled to the right into Line.]

SUBALTERNs and COLOURS: as in (A).

*See Note.*

(C) *On a central Company: one flank thrown forward, the other back.*

OPEN COLUMN  
LEFT (or RIGHT)  
IN FRONT,  
ON No. —  
[WHICH WILL  
WHEEL BACK ON  
ITS RIGHT (or  
LEFT)].

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
FORM FOURS:  
INWARDS.

**Q. MARCH.**

(Column having been  
formed)—  
**STEADY.**

**RIGHT (or LEFT)  
WHEEL INTO LINE.**

**Q. MARCH.**

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (A).

CAPTAINS.

The Captain of the named Company, if front is to be changed to the Left, will change his flank on the *Caution*: and, if so directed in the *Caution*, will then wheel back his Company as already described; the new direction being given by his Covering-serjeant.

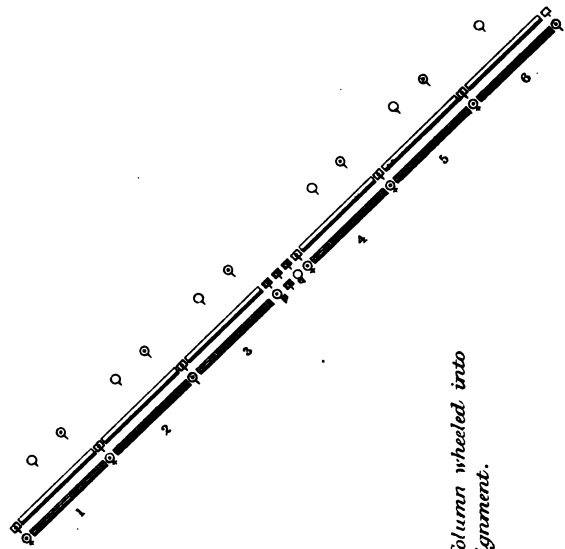
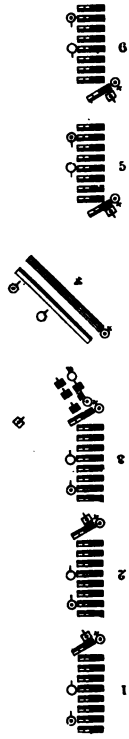
The formation will then proceed as in (A) and (B).

SUBALTERNs and COLOURS: as in (A).

*Note to (A), (B), and (C).* In order to save time, the Battalion Commander may direct the

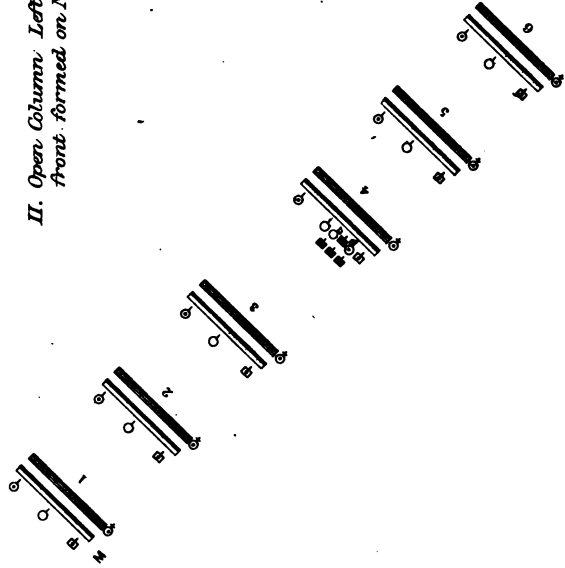
PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N° XXIV. A Battalion in Line changing Front by Open Column to the Right on the left-centre Company, obliquely to the old Line.

I. After the command REMAINING COMPANIES.- FORM FOURS; INWARDS.



The Open Column wheeled into 1st the new alignment.

II. Open Column Left in front formed on N° 4.





Captain of the Company of formation to wheel it into its place in the new Line, *as soon as the alignment is taken up by the mounted Officers.* When this is the case :—Each of the remaining Companies in succession, if moving to the *front* of the old alignment, as in (A), will get the word *Front form Company* from its Captain as its leading four reaches its Covering-serjeant, and will then be dressed in Line as usual : but if moving to the *rear* of the old alignment, as in (B), it will move on, and wheel short round, its Coverer ; will march—in rear of, and parallel to, the new alignment—straight on the outward flank of the Company next to it already formed in Line ; and, when opposite to its new front, will get the word *Halt, front : dress.—Eyes front.*

---

For changing the front of a Line by *Echellon*, see No. XXVII.

## SECTION VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

---

§ *Of Echellon.*

\* Echellon is of two kinds—the *Direct* and the *Oblique*: the former being used to advance or refuse a flank; the latter being applied when the Battalion is required to take ground diagonally at once to the front and to a flank, or when a Line is required to change its front.

A Direct Echellon is formed by Companies (or parts of Companies) marching off in succession direct to the front, or rear, commencing from either flank of a Line, at equal distances one from the other; and may be re-formed into a Line parallel to that from which it moved, by the successive formation of its component parts on any named and halted part. [An *oblique* Line cannot be formed from a Direct Echellon without a fresh adjustment of the distances between the pivot flanks of its component parts.]

An Oblique Echellon is formed from Line by wheeling forward the Companies on fixed or moveable (or their parts on moveable) pivots, *less than the quarter circle*, to either flank: and—the pivots being at wheeling distance—may, at any moment, be wheeled back into a Line parallel to that from which it was formed. Each Company (or part of a Company) will move on a line perpendicular to its own front: all the component parts, therefore, of the Echellon must be parallel to each other, in order that their several lines of direction may also be parallel: the pivot files must always be kept at their

---

\* Echellon: from the French *échelon*, literally 'a round of a ladder'.

proper distances ; and their dressing, in a line parallel to the original alignment, carefully preserved.

[When ground is to be taken obliquely to the Rear, or when—in changing the Front of a Line—a flank of the Battalion is to be thrown back, the Companies will be faced about, and wheeled forward rear-rank in front.]

For the covering of Company leaders in Oblique Echellon, *see* Note, p. 158.

¶ 1. If an Oblique Echellon, used for the purpose of taking ground diagonally to the front and to a flank, is to be composed of Companies, the Companies may be wheeled up either on fixed or moveable pivots, and *any* number of paces (less than the quarter circle) : but if it is to be formed of Subdivisions [or Sections], the wheel will always be one-eighth of a circle, and made on moveable pivots.

¶ 2. In *changing the front of a Line* by oblique echellon (in which case the Echellon will always be formed of Companies) :—The Company of formation must form double the angle with the original alignment, that the remaining Companies form ; in order that the latter may be placed perpendicularly to the lines by which they must march to their points of formation. Thus :—

(1) If the Company of formation is wheeled up from echellon into the new alignment, the same number of paces it (and the remaining Companies) originally wheeled from Line into echellon ; the remaining Companies, as they stand, will be at the proper angle for forming Line.

(2) If the Company of formation is wheeled up from echellon into the new alignment *more* paces than those it (and the remaining Companies) originally wheeled, the *remaining Companies* must wheel up half the excess over the original number of paces wheeled :—*E.g.* If the original wheel from Line into echellon was 3 paces, and the Company of formation then wheels forward (not 3, but) 5 paces more—making 8 paces in all—into the new alignment ; the remaining Companies must wheel up 1 pace, making 4 paces in all.

(3) On the same principle : If the new Line is to be formed on the prolongation of the front Company as it stands in the Echellon (*see* No. XXVI. B.), the remaining Companies will have to wheel *back*, on their pivot flanks, half the number of paces they originally wheeled forward from Line.

*N.B.* When great accuracy is required, the Companies may be wheeled into echellon on fixed pivots (the Coverers stepping their paces from the 8th file) : *see* ¶, p. 165. As a general rule, however, the wheels should be on *moveable* pivots ; as described in No. XXVII. (A), (B), and (C).

(F. E., pp. 340, 355.)

## SECTION VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

No. XXV.—*A Battalion wheeling forward by Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) from Line into Echelon.*

(F. E. IV., Sec. 53, p. 346.)

(A) *From the Halt.* [By Companies.]

WHEEL INTO  
ECHELLON OF  
COMPANIES TO  
THE RIGHT (or  
LEFT).

COMPANIES:—  
PACES RIGHT  
(or LEFT)  
WHEEL.

STEADY.

Q. *MARCH.*

THE ECHELLON  
WILL ADVANCE.

Q. *MARCH.*

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Major nearest the flank which is to lead will move up to that flank, correct the Coverers, and give STEADY. During the advance in echelon, he will place himself in rear of the Captain of the leading Company, and superintend his direction: the other Major and the Adjutant looking to the covering of the line of pivots.

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

If the wheel is to be to the left; all the Captains will change flanks. (*See Note.*)

(2) *On the word WHEEL—*

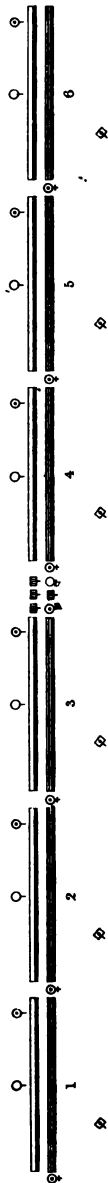
The Captains will take one pace to their front and one to their left; and, the Coverers having passed to the front, will resume their places, face inwards, and correct the covering of their respective pivot men.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

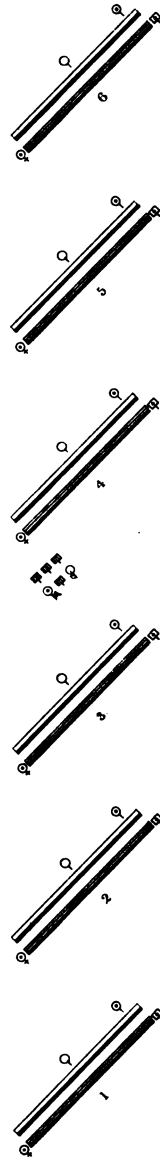
Each Captain will proceed as directed in PART I., No. (VII.).

PART II. BATTALION DRILL. NO XXV. *A Battalion wheeling into Echelon of Companies to the Right, from the Halt.*

I. *After the word COMPANIES: FOUR PACES RIGHT WHEEL.*



II. *The Echelon.*







(3) *On the 2nd word MARCH—*

The Echellon will advance: the Captain of the leading Company selecting points to march on, the remainder attending to their covering and distance (*see Note*).

SUBALTERNS.

*On the Caution—*

The Officer on the left of the Line will fall back into the supernumerary rank.

If the wheel is to be to the left, all the Lieutenants will change flanks.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will wheel up, and form an independent Section.

(B) *On Moveable pivots.* [By Companies, Subdivisions, or Sections.]

(*From the Halt.*)  
TAKE GROUND  
TO THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT) IN  
ECHELLON OF  
COMPANIES  
[SUBDIVISIONS, or  
SECTIONS].

ON THE MOVE,  
BY COMPANIES  
[SUBDIVISIONS,  
or SECTIONS]:  
RIGHT (or LEFT)  
WHEEL.

Q. *MARCH.*

(*When in echellon*)—  
*FORWARD.*

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (A).

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

If the Echellon is to be formed of Companies, the Captains (if not already there) will change to the named flank: if it is to be formed of Subdivisions [or Sections], they will remain in their places (*see Note*).

(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The Echellon will advance: the leader of the leading Company (Subdivision, or Section) selecting points to march on.

[The same directions will apply if the movement is performed by a Battalion *on the March.*]

## SUBALTERNS.

*On the Caution—*

If the Echellon is to be formed of Companies, Subalterns proceed as in (A): if of Subdivisions [or Sections], they remain in their places.

## THE COLOURS.

As in (A).

---

[If the Battalion is required to wheel into echellon to the Rear, it will be faced about; and the Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) will be wheeled forward, rear rank in front.]

If it is necessary to form **SQUARE**, the Echellon will simply be wheeled forward into Column, (Captains remaining on whichever flank of their Companies they may be marching): and Square will then be formed as directed in No. XXX.

---

*Note.*—When an Oblique Echellon is formed of Companies, Captains (if not already there) always change, on the *Caution*, to the flanks that become the pivots (*i.e.* those on which the Companies wheel forward): the Captain of the leading Company will lead the Echellon; each Captain in rear looking, for his covering and distance, along the line of pivots, to the flank to which the Battalion is inclining. In Echellon of Subdivisions (or Sections), to whichever flank inclining, each Captain retains the place he occupies in Line; keeping the dressing and distance of his right Subdivision (or 1st Section), if the inclination is to the right. *See* p. 35.

## SECTION VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

No. XXVI.—*A Battalion in Oblique Echelon of Companies re-forming Line.*

(F. E. IV., SECS. 54, 55, p. 348.)

(A) *Forming Line parallel to the original Line.*

[*On the Caution*—Pivot men will face into the Line, and raise the right (*Riflemen* the left) hand till they have been dressed.]

(*From the Halt.*)  
RE-FORM LINE.  
—  
STEADY.  
—  
Q. MARCH.

## FIELD OFFICERS.

*On the Caution*—The Major on the directing flank will dress the pivot men: and then give the word STEADY.

## CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the word LINE*—

Each Captain will take a pace to his front, and face towards his Company.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—

The Companies having wheeled back into Line, the Captain of each will give *No. — : Halt, dress.—Eyes front:* and will take post in Line.

## SUBALTERNES.

The Lieutenant of each Company, if in rear of its right, will change flank on his Captain's word *Eyes front*.

## THE COLOURS.

The Colour party wheels back into Line with the Companies : taking up its dressing with the Company that wheels back to it from Echellon.

This movement may also be performed *on the March* : the Captains marking time while their Companies wheel back on them into Line, and the Battalion Commander giving *FORWARD* when the wheels are completed. Flanks will be changed (if necessary) on the word *FORWARD*.

(B) *Forming Line oblique to the original Line.*

[This Movement is always done from the Halt.]

Suppose Line is to be formed on the prolongation of the front Company, as it stands, of an Echellon formed to the right (*see ¶ 2, page 154*) :—

FORM LINE ON  
THE LEADING  
COMPANY.  
(Suppose the original  
wheel was 4 paces)—  
REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
TWO PACES ON  
THE RIGHT BACK-  
WARD WHEEL.

STEADY.  
Q. MARCH.

FORM LINE:  
Q. MARCH.

## FIELD OFFICERS.

*On the Caution*—The Major nearest to the Company of formation will move up to dress the Coverers, and will then give *STEADY* : moving to his place in Line when the formation is completed. The Adjutant will mark the distant flank of the Battalion.

## CAPTAINS.

The Captain of the named Company will stand fast during the whole formation.

Each of the other Captains :—

*On the words WHEEL and MARCH*—

Will proceed as directed in PART I., No. VII.

*On the 2nd word MARCH—*

The Companies that were wheeled back will step off: their Captains leading them up into Line as directed in No. XX. (a), page 131.

The Captain of the left-centre Company will dress the Colour party with his own men: *see* Note, p. 132.

#### THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will move up independently into Line.

---

[If the Company of formation is to be wheeled up, the Battalion Commander will commence his *Caution* thus:—**FORM LINE ON THE LEADING COMPANY: WHICH WILL WHEEL — PACES:** and will then direct the remaining Companies to wheel (forward) the necessary number of paces. *See* page 154.]

## SECTION VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

No. XXVII.—*A Battalion in Line changing Front by Echelon.*

(F. E. IV., SECS. 56-58, pp. 356-367.)

*N.B.*—The directions given for this Movement assume that the Company of formation will be wheeled into the required direction, by its Captain, on the *Caution*; and the remainder wheeled into Echelon on *moveable pivots* by the Battalion Commander:—"the method which should generally be adopted, as being the most expeditious and convenient." [When the change of front is to be at right angles to the old Line, the Battalion Commander's *Caution* will state that the flank is to be thrown forward (or back) **THE QUARTER CIRCLE.**]

For directions for Subalterns and the Colour-party in the following formations: see p. 165.

(A) *On the right (or left) flank Company: the remainder thrown forward.*

CHANGE FRONT  
ON THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT)  
COMPANY: LEFT (or  
RIGHT) THROWN  
FORWARD  
[THE QUARTER  
CIRCLE].

REMAINING  
COMPANIES: ON  
THE MOVE, RIGHT  
(or LEFT) WHEEL:  
*Q. MARCH.*

(When in echelon)—  
*FORWARD.*

STEADY.

## FIELD OFFICERS.

The Major of the inner Wing will move up to the point of formation, to dress the base points and Coverers; the Major and the Adjutant also proceeding; as directed in (a) p. 130.

## CAPTAINS.

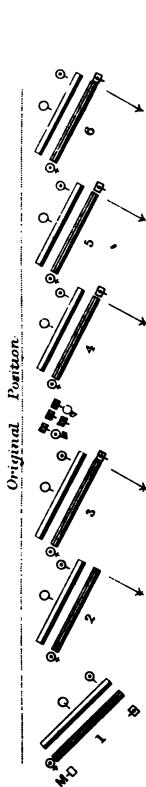
(Suppose the change of front on No. 1.)

(1) *On the Caution—*

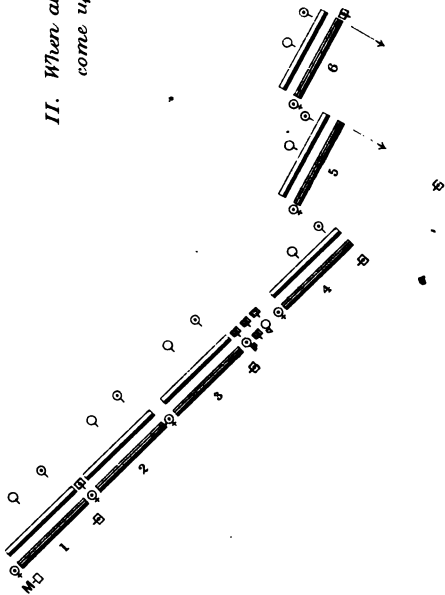
The Captain of the named Company will move out 3 paces in front of its centre, facing towards it, and will give No. 1: *On the move, Right wheel: Q. March*, [or, if the opposite flank is to be thrown forward the quarter circle, No. 1: *Right*

**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N° XXVII. A Battalion in Line changing Front on the Right-flank Company, the opposite flank thrown forward: obliquely to the old Line.**

*I. When the remaining Companies, having wheeled forward (on the move) half the paces wheeled by N° I, have got FORWARD.*



*II. When all the Companies but two have come up into Line.*



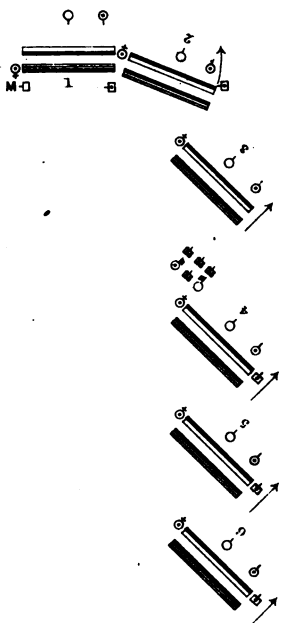




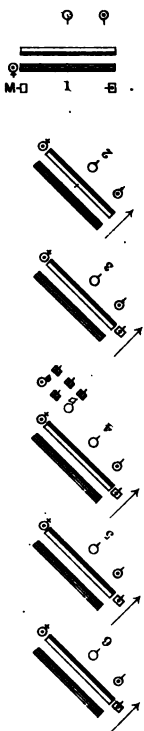


**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N° XXVII. A Battalion in Line changing Front on the Right-Flank Company, the opposite Flank thrown back: at right angles to the old Line.**

*III. When N° 2 has got the word Left wheel.*



*II. When the remaining Companies, have been faced about, wheeled (on the move) 4 paces, and got FORWARD.*



*I. After the Caution: when the Captain of N° 1 has wheeled it back into the new direction.*



W.D.M. del.

Finch's Dr.

*wheel. \*Q. March*]. When the Company has completed the required degree of wheel, he will give *Halt, dress.—Eyes front*, and fall in.

[When the formation is on the *left-flank* Company, all the Captains change flanks.]

(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The Companies in echelon will be led up into Line as in (a) p. 131.

(B) *On the right- (or left-) flank Company: the remainder thrown back.*

CHANGE FRONT  
ON THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT)  
COMPANY: LEFT (or  
RIGHT) THROWN  
BACK  
[THE QUARTER  
CIRCLE].

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.

ON THE MOVE,  
LEFT (or RIGHT)  
WHEEL:  
Q. MARCH.

(When in echelon)—  
FORWARD.

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (A).

CAPTAINS.

(Suppose the change of front on No. 1.)

(1) *On the Caution—*

The Captain of the named Company, moving out as in (A), will give No. 1: *On the move, on the right backward wheel. Q. March* [or, if the opposite flank is to be thrown back the quarter circle, No. 1: *On the right backward wheel. Right-about face. Q. March*]; and when the Company has completed the required degree of wheel, *Halt (front): dress.—Eyes front*, and will fall in.

[When the formation is on the *left-flank* Company, all the Captains change flanks.]

(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The Companies in echelon will be led up into Line, rear rank in front: as in (b) p. 133.

\* *Note.*—When a Battalion on the March is ordered to change Front on either flank Company, **ON THE MARCH**: the Captain of the Company of formation will order it to wheel at the *double*.

(C) *On a central Company, or the 2 centre Companies : one Wing thrown forward, the other back.*

(a) If the change of front is on a central Company :—

CHANGE FRONT  
ON No. —  
COMPANY:  
LEFT (or RIGHT)  
THROWN  
FORWARD  
[THE QUARTER  
CIRCLE].

COMPANIES  
ON THE  
RIGHT (or LEFT):  
RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.

ON THE MOVE,  
INWARDS WHEEL:  
Q. MARCH.

(When in echelon)—  
FORWARD.

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS: as in (c) page 134.

CAPTAINS.

(Suppose Left is to be thrown forward.)

(1) *On the Caution—*

All the Captains on the right of the named Company will change flanks.

The Captain of the named Company, moving out as in (A), will give No. —: *On the centre ; on the move, Right wheel: Q. March* [or, if Left is to be thrown forward the quarter circle, No. —: *On the centre, Right wheel. (Right Sub-division: right-about face.\*) Q. March*], and when the Company has completed the required degree of wheel, *Halt (front), dress.—Eyes front*, and will fall in. See PART I., No. VIII.

(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The Companies in echelon will be led up into Line: those that were faced about, as in (b) p. 133; the remainder, as in (a) p. 131.

(b) If the change of front is on the centre of the Battalion :—

CHANGE FRONT  
ON THE CENTRE:  
LEFT (or RIGHT)  
THROWN  
FORWARD  
[THE QUARTER  
CIRCLE].

RIGHT (or LEFT)  
WING: RIGHT-  
ABOUT FACE.

FIELD OFFICERS: as in No. XXII.<sup>(1)</sup> p. 138.

CAPTAINS.

(Suppose Left is to be thrown forward.)

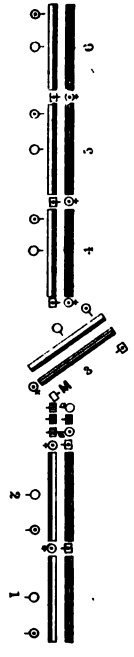
*On the Caution—* The Captain of each right-wing (except the right-centre) Company will change his flank. The Captain of

---

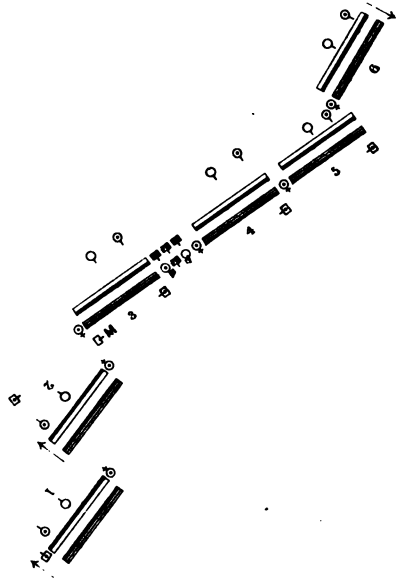
\* If the right Subdivision exceed 12 files.

PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N° XXVII. *A Battalion in Line changing front on the Right-centre Company, Left through forward; obliquely to the old Line.*

I. *When the Company of formation has been wheeled up by its Captain, and Nos 1 and 2 have got RIGHT-ABOUT FACE.*



II. *When all the Companies but three are in their places in Line.*





**ON THE MOVE,  
INWARDS WHEEL:  
Q. MARCH.**

*(When in echelon)—  
FORWARD.*

the left-centre Company, having moved out 3 paces in front of the centre Serjeant, and facing towards him, will give *Two centre Companies: On the centre; on the move, Right wheel: Q. March* [or, if Left is to be thrown forward the quarter circle, *Two centre Companies: On the centre; Right wheel.—Right-centre Company: Right-about face.—Q. March*]; and when the 2 Companies have completed the required degree of wheel, *Halt (front), dress.* Each centre Captain will then dress his own Company from the centre Serjeant (as in No. XXII.<sup>(1)</sup>), give *Eyes front*, and fall in.

[To whichever flank the wheel is made, the right-centre Captain will remain, and wheel, on the right of his Company.]

The movement will then proceed as in (a).

---

In all the foregoing formations:—

**SUBALTERNS.** The Lieutenants will (if necessary) change flank on the *Caution*, changing again at their Captain's 2nd word *Eyes front*. The supernumerary rank of each Company will in every case close up 2 paces on the *Caution*: correcting its distance at the word *Halt (front): dress up*; or when the Company that is to form on its outward flank gets the word—*wheel*. (See No. XX.)

**THE COLOURS:** move as a Company.

---

¶ When the wheels into echelon are to be made on *fixed pivots*:—The Company (or the 2 centre Companies) of formation will be wheeled



the necessary number of paces (under the superintendence of the Battalion Commander), or will wheel the quarter circle, as the case may be. The remaining Companies—those of them, if any, that are to be thrown back having been first faced about—will then be ordered by the Battalion Commander to wheel half the number of paces taken by the Coverer of the Company of formation (their Coverers stepping their paces from the 8th file from the inner flank, in the usual way); and will then be marched up into Line as already described. See *Duties of Covering-serjeants in Battalion* (No. 28).

---

*Note.*—If, during a change of front on a flank Company, it is necessary to form SQUARE, all the Companies may be wheeled up, towards the point of formation, into open Column; and Square can then be formed as in No. XXX. Or, if the change of front is on a central Company, the Companies in echelon may form independent Company Squares, as in No. XXXIII.



**PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> XXVIII. A Battalion in Line advancing in Direct Echelon of Companies from the Left**

*I. After the Quotion.*



*II. The Echelon.*



R.D.M. del.

Engraved by Broder, 1871.

## SECTION VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

No. XXVIII.—*A Battalion in Line advancing or retiring in Direct Echellon of Companies from either Flank.*

(F. E. IV., Sec. 59, p. 367.)

[If it is intended to change front to either flank at right angles, the Companies will be ordered to march off at wheeling distance : otherwise, they may be marched off at any named distance from each other.]

(A) *Advancing.*

THE BATTALION  
WILL ADVANCE  
IN DIRECT  
ECHELLON OF  
COMPANIES,  
AT WHEELING  
[or — PACES]  
DISTANCE  
FROM THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT).

## FIELD OFFICERS.

The Major of the leading Wing will superintend the direction of the Captain of the leading Company.

## CAPTAINS.

*On the Caution—*

If the movement is to be from the Left, all the Captains will change flanks ; each (except the Captain of the left-flank Company) remaining in rear of the Coverer of the Company next on his left till it moves out of the Line.

The Captain of the Company on the named flank will give *No. — : By the right (or left) : Q. March* ; and will lead straight to his front, selecting points to march upon.

Each of the other Captains, in succession, will give the same word when the Company which will precede him in the Echellon has gained the required distance : giving *Quick* as the men of that Company place the left foot, *March* as they place the right foot, on the ground.

SUBALTERNS.

*On the Caution—*

The Officer on the left of the Line falls back into the supernumerary rank, which will close up 2 paces; and if the Movement is to be from the Left, all the Lieutenants change flanks.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will form an independent Section in the Echellon.

---

[If it be required to form **SQUARE**, the Echellon may be wheeled forward (the *eighth* of a circle) into Column, and Square may then be formed as in No. XXX. Or, the Companies, as they stand in the Echellon, may form independent Company Squares, as in No. XXXIII.]

(B) *Retiring.*

THE BATTALION  
WILL RETIRE  
IN DIRECT  
ECHELLON OF  
COMPANIES  
AT WHEELING  
[or — PACES]  
DISTANCE  
FROM THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT),

FIELD OFFICERS: as in (A).

CAPTAINS.

*On the Caution—*

If the movement is to be from the Left all the Captains will change flanks: remaining in rear of the Line.

The Captain of the Company on the named flank will give No. 1: *Right-about face. By the present left (or right): Q. March*, and lead straight to the rear. Each of the other Captains, in succession, will give his Company the word *Right-about face* in time to march it off when at the proper distance from that which last moved out: taking care, at the same time, not to face his men to the rear sooner than is necessary.]

SUBALTERNS and COLOURS: as in (A).

## SECTION VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

No. XXIX.—*Re-forming Line from Direct Echelon.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 60, 61, pp. 368, 370.)

(A) *Line parallel to the original Line.*

(1) On the Leading Company.

RE-FORM LINE  
ON THE LEADING  
COMPANY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (a) page 130.

[If at the Halt—  
REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
Q. MARCH.]

CAPTAINS.

*On the Caution—*

The Captain of the named Company: if at the Halt, will give *No. —: Eyes right (or left). Dress*; if on the March, *No. —: Halt, dress*. Having dressed the Company, he will give *Eyes front*, and take post on its right.

STEADY.

The other Companies will move up, in succession, into Line: the Captains giving *Halt: dress up.—Eyes front*, and then changing their flanks if necessary.

(2) On the rear Company.

RE-FORM LINE  
ON THE  
REAR COMPANY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (b) page 132.

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
RIGHT-ABOUT  
TURN [or FACE].  
[FORM LINE:  
Q. MARCH.]

CAPTAINS.

*On the Caution—*

The Captain of the named Company will proceed as directed in (1): except that if on the March, he will give his word *Halt* when the re-

STEADY.

maining Companies get the word *RIGHT-ABOUT TURN*.

The Captain of each of the other Companies will change his flank on the word *TURN* [*or FACE*]. In leading up into Line: he will give his word *Halt, front: dress up* when his proper front rank is in line with the rear rank of the last halted Company, dress his men as usual, and take post in Line.

(3) On a Central Company.

RE-FORM LINE ON  
No. — COMPANY.

COMPANIES  
IN FRONT:  
*RIGHT-ABOUT  
TURN* [*or FACE*].

[*FORM LINE:*  
*Q. MARCH.*]

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (c) page 134.

CAPTAINS.

The Captain of the named Company: as in (2).

The Captains in front of the named company, as in (2): those in rear of it, as in (1).

(B) *Line at right angles to the original Line.*

[If the advance was from the Left, the wheel will be to the right: and *vice versé*.]

FORM LINE TO  
THE RIGHT  
(*or LEFT*).

BY  
COMPANIES:  
*RIGHT* (*or LEFT*)  
*WHEEL.*

(*When square*)—  
*FORWARD.*

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS: as in (a) page 130.

CAPTAINS.

*During the Wheel—*

The Captains will change flanks.

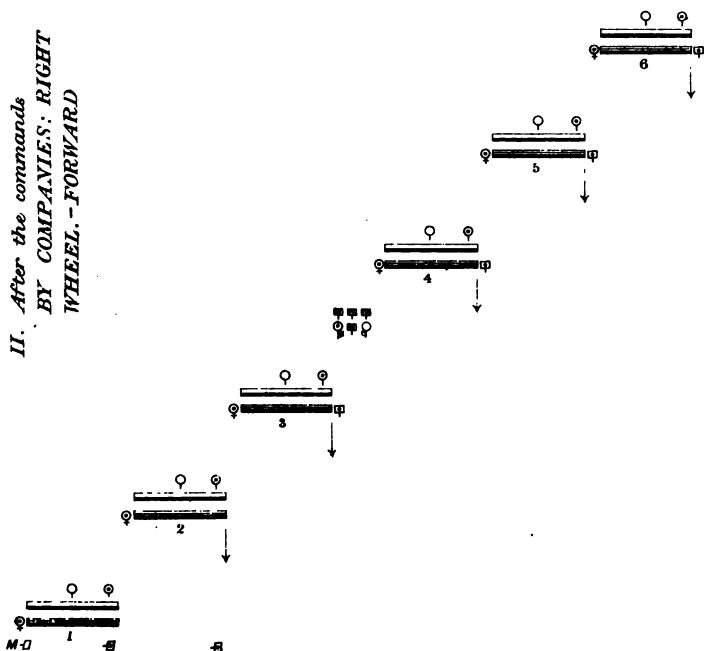
*On the word FORWARD—*

The Captain of the leading Company, and the other Captains in succession, will proceed as in (A) 1.

*Note.*—When it is necessary to form Line from direct Echelon *at an angle less than a right angle* to the original alignment: the Echelon will be wheeled forward into Column, and the Captains ordered to correct their distances, and their covering in the required direction. The Column will then be wheeled into Line.

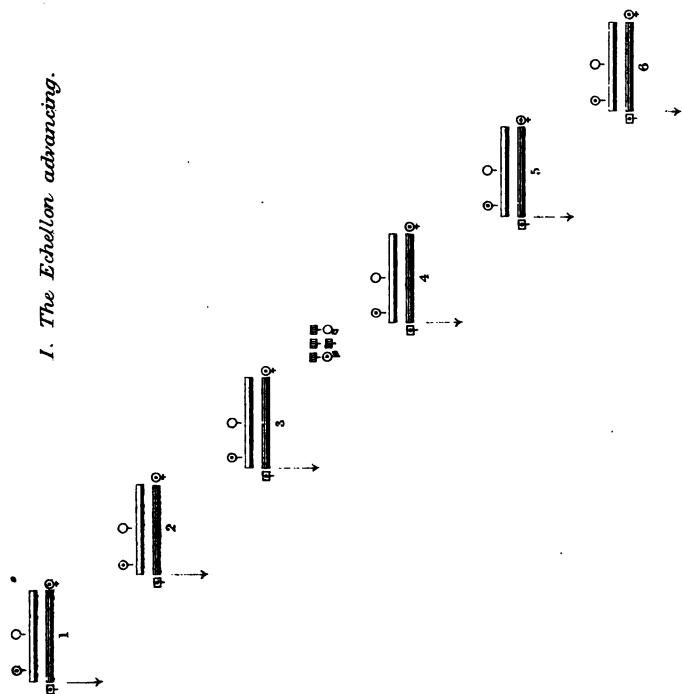
Line at right angles to the original Line.

II. After the commands  
BY COMPANIES; RIGHT  
WHEEL. - FORWARD



W.D. & H. L.

I. The Echelon advancing.



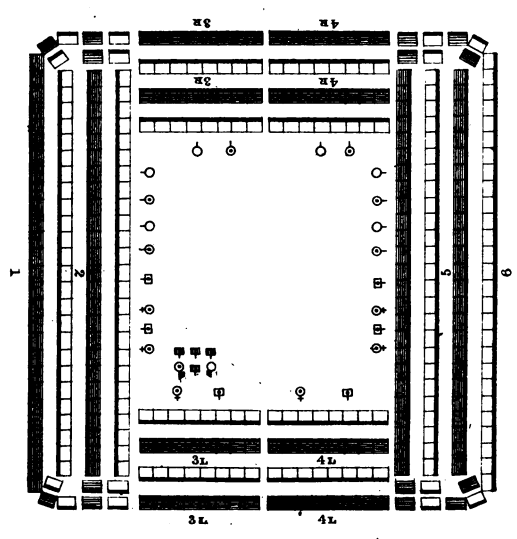
Thurmont, Brooks, 1881.







PART II. BATTALION DRILL. Nº XXX. *A Battalion four-deep Square: shewing the position of the flank files of the Front-face and rear-face Companies.*



## SECTION VII.—SQUARES.

[Square is formed from Column (or Double Column). To resist Cavalry, Squares are formed four-deep : to protect baggage, &c., against Infantry, they may be formed two-deep. In all Squares, Officers are in the centre, in rear of their own Companies : the mounted Officers, at Drill, may remain outside, to superintend the formation.]

*N.B.*—In all the following formations : the side-face Sections, after wheeling outwards, will touch towards the Company on which the Square was formed.

No. XXX.—*A Battalion in Column forming Square.*

(F. E. IV., SECS. 44–46, pp. 330–336.)

(A) *Square from Open Column.*

1. Square on the Leading Company.

ON THE LEADING CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNs.

COMPANY:  
FORM SQUARE.

(If at the Halt)—  
Q. (or D.) MARCH.

*On the word SQUARE (or MARCH)—*

The leading Company will receive from its Captain the word *Halt, dress* (or, if at the Halt, will stand fast) : its flank files facing outwards,\* and its Captain, Coverer, and Supernumeraries running round to the rear of the 2nd Company.

The 2nd Company, having closed on to the front, will halt without any word ; the Captain dropping to the rear, and the 2 outward files on each flank facing outwards.

The Captains of the remaining (except the

---

\* The outward front-rank man, and the outward-but-one rear-rank man, on each flank of the Company will make a *half* face outwards : the outward rear-rank man on each flank will make a *full* face outwards.

2 rear) Companies, as they arrive successively at quarter distance from the preceding Company, will give *No. — : Sections outwards*, and fall back into Square.

[The flank Sections, when they have wheeled the quarter circle outwards, will halt without word of command : the 2 centre Sections closing on them.]

The Captains, Coverers, and Supernumeraries of the 2 rear Companies, will run on into Square the moment the 3rd Company from the rear receives *Sections outwards* ; facing to the rear as they get into Square : and each of the two Captains, as his Company reaches the Square, will give *No. — : Halt. Right-about face*.

[The 2 rear Companies having faced about, their flank files face as described above for those of the 2 leading Companies.]

#### THE COLOURS.

Incline, during the march, towards the centre of the Company they are following : and when that Company gets *Sections outwards*, wheel to the left or right (according as Right or Left is in front), and halt in rear of its pivot Subdivision.

#### 2. Square on the Rear Company.

(From the Halt.)  
ON THE REAR  
COMPANY:  
FORM SQUARE.

RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.

Q. (or D.) MARCH.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNs.

(1) *On the word FACE—*

The whole Column will face about.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The proper rear Company will stand fast (its flank files facing as described in 1 for those of the leading Company) : and its Captain, Coverer, and Supernumeraries will run round to the rear of the proper front rank of the next Company. The Captain, Coverer, and Supernumeraries of

the last-named Company will run round to its present rear; the Company, having closed, will halt without word of command, its flank files facing as explained in 1 for those of the 2nd Company.

The Captains of the remaining (except the 2 proper front) Companies, as they close in succession on the last halted Company, will each move into Square and give *No. — : Front turn. Sections outwards.*

The Captains, Coverers, and Supernumeraries of the 2 proper front Companies, will run on into Square the moment the 3rd Company (counting from the proper front) receives *Sections outwards*; facing to the proper front as they get into Square: and each of the two Captains, as his Company comes up to the Square, will give *No. — : Halt, front.*

#### THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will incline, during the march, to the centre of the Company in whose proper rear it is moving: turning to the front with that Company, and wheeling up as in 1.

[If a Column *retiring* is required to form Square on its proper rear (*i.e.* present leading) Company:—On the *Caution*, the Captain of that Company will give *No. — : Halt, dress*: the movement then proceeding as above.]

#### 3. Square on the Centre.

[When Right is in front, the formation will be on the Left-centre Company, and *vice versa*.]

#### CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNs.

*On the word MARCH—*

The Captain of the named Company will immediately give *No. — : Sections outwards.*

The Captains and Subalterns of the Companies in rear of the named Company will proceed as in 1: those of the Wing that is faced about, as in 2.

ON THE  
LEFT (or RIGHT)  
CENTRE  
COMPANY:  
FORM SQUARE.

RIGHT (or LEFT)  
WING:  
RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.

Q. (or D.) MARCH.

THE COLOURS: as in 1 or 2.

If an open Column *taking ground to a flank by Fours* is required to form Square: the word will be ON THE LEFT- (or RIGHT-) CENTRE COMPANY: FORM SQUARE. WINGS: INWARDS TURN, on which the Captain of the named Company will give *Sections outwards*; the formation proceeding as above described.

(B) *Square from Quarter-distance Column: on the leading Company.*

ON THE LEADING  
COMPANY:  
FORM SQUARE.

[Q. (or D.) MARCH.]

SECTIONS  
OUTWARDS.

Square will be formed as in (A) 1: except that the *Battalion Commander* will give the word *SECTIONS OUTWARDS*, applying to all the side-face Companies, as the 2nd Company closes on the 1st.†

The Captains of the side-face Companies, therefore, will give no word of command: the remainder will proceed as in (A).

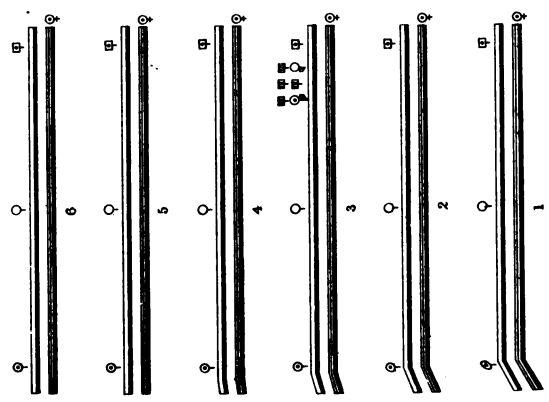
THE COLOURS, on the *Caution*, will close (or incline) to the centre of the Company they are following, that they may not interfere with the Sections as they wheel outwards.

† A Quarter-distance Column will always form Square on its proper leading Company; and if required to form Square *while taking ground to a flank by Fours*, or *retiring*, will be ordered to turn to the front before the caution to form Square is given.

(C) *Square from Close Column.*

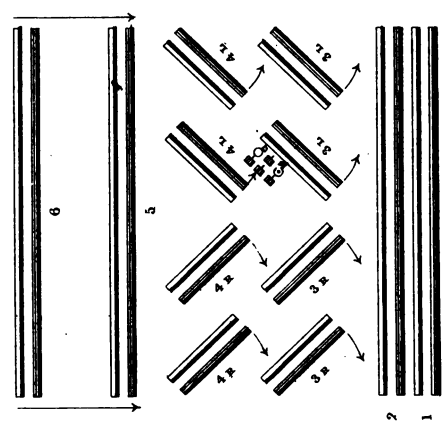
The Column should, if possible, open out to Quarter distance, and then form Square as described in (B): but if suddenly attacked, it may,

I. The Column.

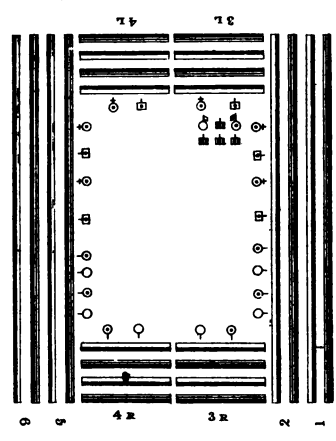


17/11/18

II. After the word SECTIONS OUTWARDS.



III. The Square formed.



Vincent Brooks, lith.





on the word **PREPARE FOR CAVALRY. READY.**, proceed as a Company in close Column of Sections ( *see* p. 55).

(D) *Square from* DOUBLE COLUMN.

ON THE TWO  
LEADING  
COMPANIES  
(or SUBDIVISIONS):  
FORM SQUARE.

[Q. (or D.) **MARCH.**]

*SUBDIVISIONS*  
(or *SECTIONS*)  
*OUTWARDS.*

1. A Double Column consisting of 10 (or more) Companies, and a Double Column of Subdivisions, will form Square on their 2 leading Companies or Subdivisions respectively, as a single Column of Companies forms on its leading Company; except that the side faces of the former will wheel outwards by *Subdivisions*. The Colour party will get to its place in Square by doubling round the flank of the 2 Companies (or Subdivisions) immediately in its rear.

*COLUMN:*  
*FORM FOURS:*  
*DEEP.*  
*ON THE*  
*CENTRE CLOSE:*  
[Q. **MARCH.**]

ON THE TWO  
LEADING  
COMPANIES:  
FORM SQUARE.

[Q. **MARCH.**]

2. A Double Column consisting of 8 or 6 Companies will form Square as follows:—The whole will form four-deep, and close to the centre. The 2 leading Companies will form the front face: the 4 (or 2) next Companies will move on, and when at *Subdivision* distance from the two Companies in front of them will each wheel outwards: the 2 rear Companies, having closed on the flanks of the side faces, will halt and face to the right about. [On the word *DEEP*: the Colour party, if on the March will mark time, if at the Halt will step back, one pace. On the word **SQUARE**: the 2 leading Companies, if on the March, will be halted.]

In both cases the left-wing leaders will (as usual in Double Column) give the necessary words of command.

2. *To resist Cavalry.*

PREPARE FOR  
CAVALRY.

READY, &c.

The Square will prepare for Cavalry as described in APPENDIX I.

[The firing words will be given (by the Battalion Commander) to the standing ranks the moment they are formed. The kneeling ranks, if they have not been ordered to fire, will rise at the Battalion Commander's word *SHOULDER (or ORDER) ARMS.*]

3. *To move the Square.*

THE SQUARE  
WILL ADVANCE  
(RETIRE, or MOVE  
TO THE —).

INWARDS  
FACE.

Q. MARCH.

HALT.

*On the word FACE*—The face that is to lead will stand fast; the faces on either side of it facing into the named direction, the face in rear of it to the right-about: and on the word *MARCH*, the Square will move off.

[The Square will march according to the rule given in the *Note* at p. 57: the Serjeant-major on the directing flank, regulating the direction.]

*On the word HALT*—The Square will halt and face outwards; every man standing perfectly steady, unless ordered to close or dress.

For formation of Two-deep Square: see p. 182.

## SECTION VII.—SQUARES.

No. XXXI.—*A Battalion in Square re-forming Column, or Double Column.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 47, p. 337.)

(A) *Re-forming Column.*

[*On the word COLUMN*—The rear Sections of the side faces will step back to wheeling distance, the pivot men of all the side-face Sections facing to the proper front of the Column. The flank men of the two leading Companies will face to the front; those of the two rear Companies, to the rear.]

RE-FORM  
COLUMN.

Q. MARCH.

## FIELD OFFICERS.

The Senior Major, having moved out of the Square, will place himself in front of the pivot flank of the leading Company, to correct the Captains' covering. The other mounted Officers will move to the reverse flank of the Column, to superintend the parallel dressing of the Companies.

## CAPTAINS.

*On the word COLUMN*—

The Captain of each side-face Company will move in front of the rear Section of his pivot Subdivision when it steps back; placing himself close to the pivot man of the front Section, ready to move out of Square. The Captains of the front-face and rear-face Companies will place themselves close to the pivot flank of the Company in rear of which they have been standing.

*On the word MARCH—*

All the Captains instantly run out, and take up their covering on the pivot flank of their Companies; the Captains of the 2 rear Companies aligning themselves with their proper rear rank and facing to the rear. The Captain of the 2nd Company will then stand fast.

The Captain of the leading Company, having advanced with it to quarter distance, will give *No. — : Halt, dress.* The Captain of each of the two rear Companies will count his paces, and as he acquires quarter distance from the Company in his proper front, will give *No. — : Halt, front : dress.*

The remaining Captains, when their Sections have wheeled back into Company, will each give *No. — : Halt, dress.*

#### THE COLOURS.

The Colour party steps back, and wheels back, with the Section it covered in the Square; then closes in rear of the usual files from the pivot flank of the Company.

#### (B) *Re-forming Double Column.*

##### 1. *Re-forming Double Column of Companies.*

If the Double Column consists of 10 (or more) Companies, and has accordingly formed Square as a single Column (*see* No. XXX.), it will be re-formed into Double Column as in (A): except that the side faces will wheel back by Subdivisions instead of Sections; and the 2 front and 4 rear Companies move off to Subdivision, instead of Section, distance. The Colour party

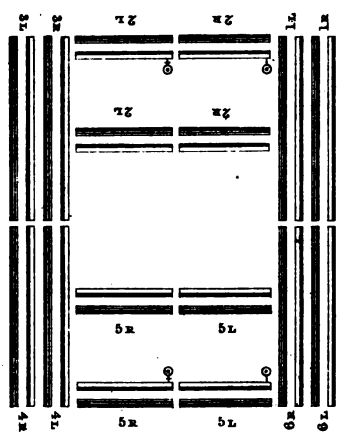
RE-FORM  
COLUMN.

Q. *MARCH.*



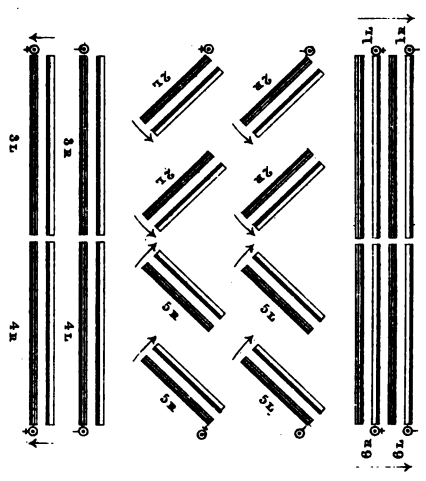
A square formed (from double column or subdivisions) on the two centre subdivisions, re-forming Double Column.

I. After the Caution.

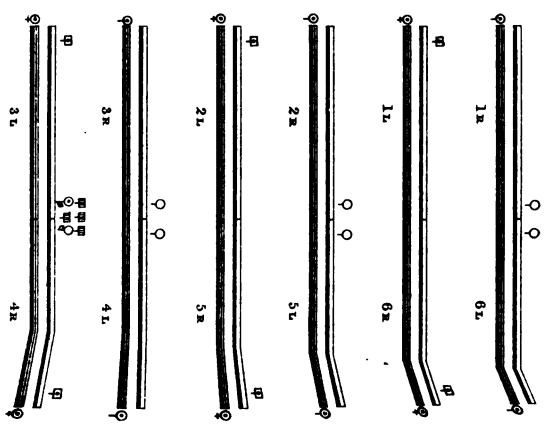


W.D.M. del.

II. On the command Q. MARCH.



III. The Double Column re-formed (at quarter distance).



Turner Brookes, Lith.

will get to its place in Column by doubling round the flank of the two Companies immediately in its front.

**RE-FORM  
COLUMN.**

**Q. MARCH.**

**COLUMN:  
FROM THE  
CENTRE,  
RE-FORM  
TWO-DEEP:**

**Q. MARCH.**

If, however, the Double Column consists of 8 or 6 Companies, and has formed Square accordingly (*see* p. 175):—On the word **Q. MARCH**, the 2 front Companies (the flank men of which will face to the front on the *Caution*) stand fast; the side-face Companies wheel back into Column; and the 2 rear Companies move back, halting and fronting when at Subdivision distance. The whole will then be formed Two-deep.

## 2. Re-forming Double Column of Subdivisions.

The Column will be re-formed as in (A). The Colour party will double round the flank of the two Subdivisions immediately in its front.

---

In both cases, the left-wing leaders will (as usual) give the necessary words of command.



## SECTION VII.—SQUARES.

No. XXXII.—*A Battalion in Line forming Square.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 48, p. 338.)

QUARTER-DIS-  
TANCE COLUMN  
RIGHT IN FRONT  
ON No. —,

or  
QUARTER-DIS-  
TANCE DOUBLE  
COLUMN ON THE  
TWO CENTRE  
SUBDIVISIONS.

REMAINING  
COMPANIES:  
FORM FOURS:  
INWARDS.

Q. (or D.) MARCH.

ON THE LEADING  
COMPANY [or THE  
TWO LEADING  
SUBDIVISIONS]:  
FORM SQUARE.  
Q. MARCH.

SECTIONS  
OUTWARDS.

When a Battalion in Line is required to form Square, it will first be ordered to form quarter-distance Column (usually on one of the 2 centre Companies), or quarter-distance Double Column on the 2 centre Subdivisions: *see* No. XII. Square will then be formed as described in No. XXX. (A).

When it is required to re-form Line: the Square will re-form Column, and then be deployed: as directed in Nos. XXXI., XXIII.

## SECTION VII.—SQUARES.

No. XXXIII.—*A Battalion in Line or Echelon forming Company Squares: and re-forming Companies.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 49, p. 339.)

1. *Forming Squares.*

FORM  
COMPANY  
SQUARES.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNs.

*On the word* SQUARES—

The Captain and Subalterns of each Company will proceed as directed in PART I., No. XX. (1): the Captain's words being:—

No. — : *Form Close Column of Sections.*

*Q. March.*

*Prepare for Cavalry.—Ready.*

[For the words of command given by each Captain when *COMMENCE FIRING* and *CEASE FIRING* is sounded: see (c) p. 227.]

2. *Re-forming Companies.*

RE-FORM  
COMPANIES.

*On the word* COMPANIES—

Each Captain will give:—

[*Unfix swords.*]

*Re-form Company.—Q. March.*

and, the Company having been re-formed, will (together with the Supernumeraries) resume his original place.

## SECTION VII.—SQUARES.

No. XXXIV.—*A Battalion in Open or Half-distance Column, or in Double Column, forming Square Two-deep : and re-forming Column.*

(F. E. IV., SEC. 52, p. 341.)

This Square being used for protecting baggage, &c., against Infantry, is commonly termed a *Baggage Square*.

(From the Halt.)

1. *Forming Square.*

(a)  
ON THE LEADING  
COMPANY,  
TWO-DEEP:  
FORM SQUARE.

Q. MARCH.  
[or \*BY SUB-  
DIVISIONS WHEEL:  
Q. MARCH.]

or

(b)  
ON THE TWO  
LEADING  
COMPANIES (or  
SUBDIVISIONS),  
TWO-DEEP:  
FORM SQUARE.

BY COMPANIES  
(or SUBDIVISIONS),  
OUTWARDS  
WHEEL  
Q. MARCH.

(a) *From Column at open or half distance.*—The formation will proceed as in No. XXX. : except that the leading Company, only, will form the front face, the rear Company, only, the rear face of the Square; and that the side-face Companies will wheel outwards by *Subdivisions*.

(b) *From Double Column.*—The 2 leading Companies (or Subdivisions) will form the front, the 2 rear Companies (or Subdivisions) the rear, face of the Square: the remaining Companies (or Subdivisions) of each Wing will wheel outwards to form the side faces.

*Moving the Square.*—When the Square is required to march: the side-faces will be ordered to form fours in the required direction, and the rear face to

\* If the Column is at half distance.

face about. On the word *HALT*; the Square will halt and face outwards, the side faces re-forming two-deep.

*2. Re-forming Column.*

RE-FORM  
COLUMN.

*Q. MARCH.*

Column will be re-formed on the same principle as in No. XXXI.: except that the front-face Company (or 2 Companies, or Subdivisions) will stand fast. The side-face Companies (or Subdivisions) will wheel back into line, and the rear-face Company (or 2 Companies, or Subdivisions) move back to the original distance.

SECTION VIII.—INSPECTION *OR* REVIEW.No. XXXV.—*Inspection (or Review) of a Battalion.*

(F. E. VII., pp. 502-506.)

[The Battalion will be drawn up in Line at Open order, with the Officers out in front (*see* No. I.): a Camp colour being placed at 80 or 100 paces in front of the centre.]

1. *Receiving the General.*

The Salute will be given when the General arrives at 50 or 60 paces from the centre of the Battalion.

‡ GENERAL  
SALUTE.  
—  
PRESENT ARMS.  
—  
SHOULDER  
ARMS.

## CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNs.

(1) *On the word PRESENT ARMS—*

Recover their swords at the 2nd motion of the 'Present'; and at the 3rd motion, lower them to the right (the edge to the left, and the point in the direction of the right foot), keeping the elbow close to the side; at the same time raising the left arm as high as the shoulder, and bringing the hand round (by a circular motion) to the peak of the shako, knuckles uppermost and fingers extended.

(2) *On the word SHOULDER ARMS—*

Recover swords at the 1st motion of the 'Shoulder', and port at the 2nd.

---

‡ Or ROYAL SALUTE: *see Queen's Regulations*, p. 31.

## OFFICERS' SALUTE IN LINE.



The Recover.  
With 2<sup>nd</sup> motion.

*PRESENT ARMS.*

With 3<sup>rd</sup> motion.



*SHOULDER*



The Port.  
*ARMS.*

## STANDING AT EASE.



At Close order.



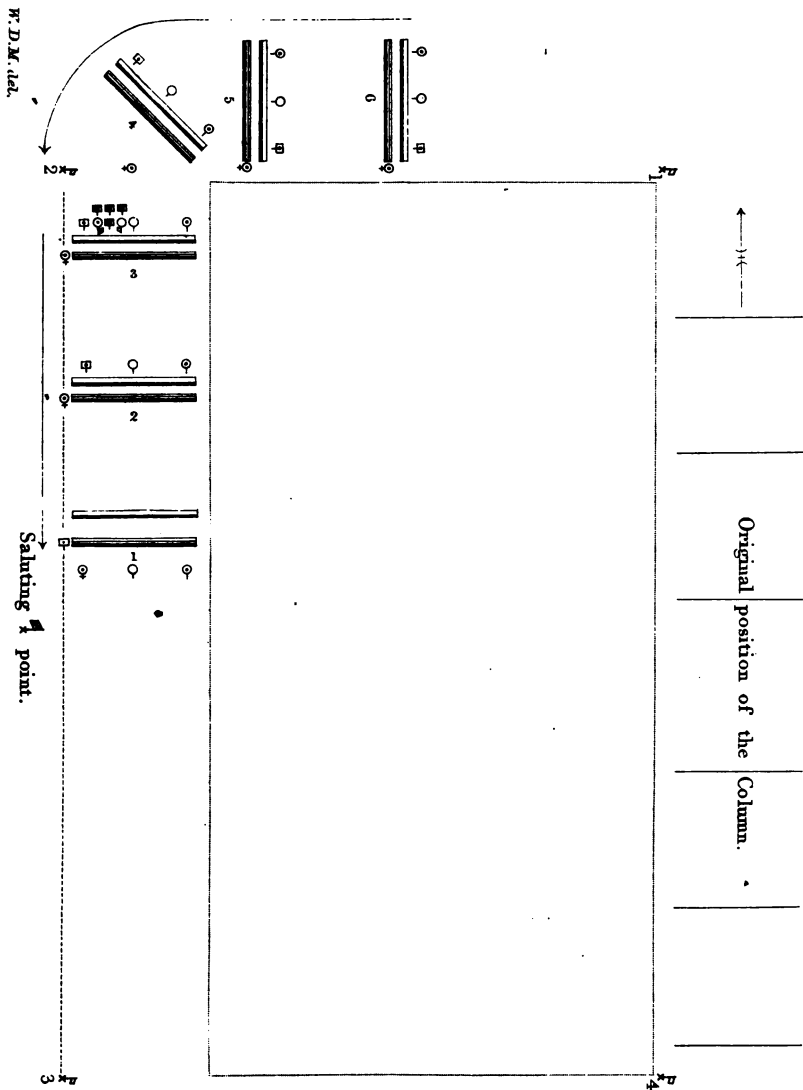
At Open order.







PART II. BATTALION DRILL. N° XXXV. *A Column Marching past in Slow time.*



## THE COLOURS.

The Colours will be allowed to fly during the GENERAL, and dropped during the ROYAL, SALUTE: see *Queen's Regulations*, p. 31. They will not be allowed to fly while the General is riding down the Line, nor will they be dropped when he passes.

REAR RANK TAKE  
CLOSE ORDER.  
*MARCH.*

OPEN COLUMN  
RIGHT IN FRONT.

*RIGHT-ABOUT  
FACE.*

*RIGHT WHEEL:  
Q. MARCH.*

When the General, having passed down the front and up the rear of the Line, is proceeding to the Camp colour placed in front of the centre, the ranks will be closed (Officers proceeding as directed in No. I.): and the Battalion will then break into open Column Right in front (see No. VI.), preparatory to marching past.

## 2. *Marching past in Slow and Quick Time.*

[The 4 Points shown in the Plate will be placed by the Adjutant. Point 1 will be placed at about a Company's wheeling distance in front of the Column, and Point 4 one or two paces in rear of the Column: the Saluting base, marked by Points 2 and 3, will be covered in a line four paces from the Camp colour. Staff Officers (excepting the Adjutant) do not march past: the Musketry Instructor will march past with his own Company.]

### (A) In Slow Time.

\* *SLOPE ARMS.* FIELD OFFICERS.

MARCH PAST IN  
SLOW TIME.

*SLOW MARCH.*

The Senior Major will march past in front of the 3rd Section of the leading Company, a little in rear of the Commanding Officer (who will be about 8 paces in front of the 3rd Section):

\* *Riflemen*, who will be standing at the 'order', will (as usual) trail as they step off.

the Junior Major and Adjutant will follow 6 paces in rear of the Column, the former being on the right. All the mounted Officers will salute (by recovering their swords and dropping the point, edge of the sword in line with the knee), as they approach the General.

#### CAPTAINS.

Each Captain in succession:—

(1) *On reaching Point 1—*

Will give the word *Left wheel*, and when his Company has wheeled square, *Forward*.

(2) *At wheeling distance from Point 2—*

Will give the word *Left wheel*, and change his flank by moving straight to his front (at a short pace) during the wheel: when the Company has wheeled square, and as the right foot comes to the ground, will give *Forward: By the right*: placing himself on that flank, just inside Point 2: and will then lead steadily on Point 3, in a line passing 4 paces from the Camp colour.

[The Covering-serjeant will change flank during the 2nd wheel: on the word *Forward*, at the completion of the wheel, the men will at once come to the 'shoulder'.]

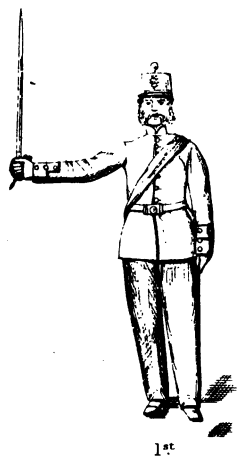
(3) *At 30 paces from the Saluting-point—*

Will recover his sword; give the word *Rear rank take Open order*; move out, in double time, to his place at Open order (*see p. 15*); take up the slow time; and bring his sword to the 'port'.

[The Covering-serjeant will move up into the place vacated by the Captain, and lead the Company: the supernumerary rank will mark time 3 paces.]



MOTIONS IN THE  
OFFICERS' SALUTE IN MARCHING PAST.



*W.D. M. del.*

*Vincent Brooks lith.*

- (4) When at 12 paces from the Saluting-point, will raise the fingers of the left hand as a signal to his Subalterns: and when at 10 paces, as his left foot comes to the ground, will commence the Salute.

[The Salute occupies 6 paces, *viz.* 4 for the motions of the sword, 2 for the motions of the left arm; commencing on the left foot, finishing on the right. Each Officer's head should be slightly turned to the Saluting-point while passing it. *See Illustrations.*]

- (5) When 6 paces past the Saluting-point, as the left foot comes to the ground, will recover and at the next pace will port his sword.

- (6) *When 20 paces past the Saluting-point—*

Will recover his sword; give the word *Rear rank take Close order*; and, turning to the right, will resume his place on the right of his Company.

[The Covering-serjeant will fall back to his place in rear: the supernumerary rank will regain its distance by stepping out.]

- (7) *As his right arm touches Point 3—*

Will give the word *Left wheel*: and resume his place on the left (the proper pivot) flank of his Company; passing by the rear, as usual, during the wheel. When the Company has wheeled square, will give *Forward: By the left*.

[The Covering-serjeant will change his flank during the 3rd wheel: on the word *Forward* at the completion of the wheel, the men will come at once to the 'slope' (Riflemen to the 'trail').]

- (8) *On reaching Point 4—*

Will give the word *Left wheel*: and, when his Company has wheeled square, *Forward*.

*N.B.*—Each Captain should take care to give his word *Left wheel* the instant he arrives at the several wheeling points, although at that moment the Company in his front will only have completed two-thirds of its wheel: otherwise, distance will be lost. He should also, as he gives the word *Forward* at each corner of the ground, at once observe some object between himself and the next point, to guide him in marching.

#### SUBALTERNS.

- (1) *During the 2nd wheel of each Company—*

The Lieutenant changes flank.

- (2) *On their Captain's word "Open order"—*

The Lieutenant and Ensign recover swords; move out (in double time, and passing round the left flank of the Company) to the same places they respectively occupy when at Open order in Line (*see* p. 15); port their swords; take up the slow time; and glance their eyes to the Captain for the saluting signal.

- (3) The Salute is performed as shown in the *Illustrations* (p. 187): the time being taken from the Captain.

- (4) *On their Captain's word "Close order"—*

They recover swords, turn to the left, and resume their places in rear (the Ensign moving in double time).

- (5) *During the 3rd wheel of each Company—*

The Lieutenant changes flank.

#### THE COLOURS.

- (1) Change flank during the 2nd wheel.

- (2) *On the right-centre Captain's word "Open order"*

—Dress with the supernumerary rank, 3 paces

from the rear rank : resuming their proper distance on the word *Close order*.

(3) Change flank during the 3rd wheel.

[The Colours will be cast loose when passing the General : and lowered to persons entitled to that honour.]

When all the Companies have passed the General, the Commanding Officer will give the word **BREAK INTO QUICK TIME. QUICK.**

(B) In Quick Time.

[A Battalion halted in open Column may be ordered to march past in *Quick*, without having previously marched past in *Slow*, time : the caution and command in that case being, **MARCH PAST IN QUICK TIME. Q. MARCH.**]

**BREAK INTO  
QUICK TIME.**

**QUICK.**

**FIELD OFFICERS.**

March past as in *Slow* time : but do not salute unless the Battalion has *not* previously marched past in *Slow* time.

**CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS :** proceed as in marching past in *Slow* time ; except that they will neither take *Open order* nor salute. [Their swords will be carried as directed at p. 3.]

**THE COLOURS :** as in (A) ; except they will not take *Open order*, or be cast loose or lowered.

[On the word *Forward : By the right* on entering the saluting alignment, the rear and supernumerary rank of each Company will lock up ; the former stepping out 3, the latter 6, paces. Both ranks will regain their usual distance, by stepping short, on the word *Forward : By the left* after the 3rd wheel.]

**BATTALION:**  
**HALT.**  
**LEFT WHEEL**  
**INTO LINE.**  
**STEADY.**  
**Q. MARCH.**

When the Column arrives on its original ground, it will be halted, and then wheeled into Line: *see* No. XIX.



### 3. *Manual and Platoon Exercise.*

The Commanding Officer will then give :—

*ORDER ARMS.—UNFIX BAYONETS.*

*STAND AT EASE.*

MANUAL AND PLATOON EXERCISE TAKING THE  
WORD FROM THE SENIOR MAJOR :

and will move to the rear of the Line.

The Senior Major will then move out to the front, and, having directed the men to take out their muzzle stoppers, will proceed to give the annexed commands. The Junior Major and Adjutant will remain in the places they occupy at Close order.

BATTALION :  
ATTENTION.  
SHOULDER ARMS.

FOR MANUAL  
EXERCISE :  
REAR RANK TAKE  
OPEN ORDER.  
MARCH.

#### CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the word ORDER—*

Each Captain will face to the right : (the sword not to be brought to the 'recover').

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

He will move to 3 paces in rear of the centre of his supernumerary rank : and as he arrives in his place, will halt, front (right-about), and remain at *Attention*.

[The Coverers will move as in taking Open order for the General Salute.]

#### SUBALTERNS.

*On the word MARCH—*

Will step back 2 paces with the supernumerary rank.

#### THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will remain, throughout the *Manual and Platoon*, posted as in Close order : the Colours kept at the 'order' and furled.

The Major will then put the Battalion through the *Manual* and *Platoon*, as laid down in APPENDIX I. : and (having first directed the men, unless they are going to load, to replace their stoppers) will fall back to his place in Line.

The Captains, when the ranks are closed, will take 2 paces to their front ; when the Senior Major moves to the rear of the Line, they will take post on the right of their Companies.

---

At the end of the Review, the Battalion will, if required, be formed in Line at Open order in its original position ; and then get the word—THE LINE WILL ADVANCE IN REVIEW ORDER: *SLOW MARCH*: being halted and ordered to Salute (as in 1) when 30 or 40 paces from the General : after which it will be directed to shoulder Arms and will wait for orders.

SECTION VIII.—INSPECTION *OR* REVIEW.No. XXXVI.—*Review of two (or more) Battalions formed in contiguous Columns at Quarter distance.*

(F. E. VII., pp. 504–508.)

\* \* The words of command given by the Brigadier having been repeated by the Commanders of Battalions, the Brigadier will hold up his sword (or order one G to be sounded on the bugle) as a signal for the latter to give their *executive* words.

*Brigadier's Word.*

OFFICERS AND  
COLOURS WILL  
TAKE POST IN  
REVIEW ORDER.

1. *Receiving the General.*

On the Brigadier's *Caution*: the Commander of each Battalion will give:—

OFFICERS & COLOURS WILL TAKE POST IN  
REVIEW ORDER.

OFFICERS & COLOURS TO THE FRONT: *Q. MARCH.*

(1) *On the word FRONT—*

The Officers recover their swords.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The Officers and Colours move up to the front, and place themselves in line, 2 paces in front of the Column: the Colours being in the centre, and the Officers—sized from flanks to centre—equidistant from each other.

The Majors will be 2 paces in front of the line of Officers, dividing the distances between the Commanding Officer (who will be 3 paces in front of the Colours) and the flanks. The Adjutant will be on the left of the line of Officers: the Regimental Staff-officers, in rear of the Battalion.

*Brigadier's Words.*

GENERAL  
SALUTE.

THE BRIGADE  
WILL SHOULDER.

OFFICERS AND  
COLOURS WILL  
TAKE POST WITH  
THEIR  
BATTALIONS.

Battalion Commanders' words:—

GENERAL SALUTE.

(Signal)—

*PRESENT ARMS.*

THE BRIGADE WILL SHOULDER.

(Signal)—

*SHOULDER ARMS.*

The General Salute will be given as in No. XXXV., but without the ranks being opened.

OFFICERS & COLOURS WILL TAKE POST WITH  
THEIR BATTALIONS.

OFFICERS & COLOURS TAKE POST:

(Signal)—

*Q. MARCH.*

(1) *On the word POST*—The Ensigns carrying the Colours will face to the left: the other Officers will face outwards from the centre.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—The whole will move back to their places in Column.

2. *Marching past in Columns: at \* Quarter distance.*

[Points will be placed by a Staff Officer, as they are placed for a single Battalion.]

Battalion Commanders' words:—

(1) *On the Brigadier's word FOURS*—

THE BRIGADE WILL TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT IN  
FOURS.

*BATTALION; FORM FOURS: RIGHT.*

(Signal)—

*Q. MARCH.*

(2) *When the Battalion has cleared the 1st Point*—  
*FRONT TURN.*

\* When a Brigade is to march past in *Open* Column, each Battalion will be halted on the completion of the wheel that brings it on to the Saluting alignment; and will then advance by successive Companies from the front at wheeling distance (see p. 113): after passing the General, it will close, on the march, to quarter distance (see p. 111).

(3) *Before the 1st Wheel commences—*

*OFFICERS: CHANGE YOUR FLANKS.*

(4) *At wheeling distance from Point 2—*

*BATTALION: LEFT WHEEL. DOUBLE. (When square)—FORWARD: ‡QUICK.—BY THE RIGHT.*

*\* SHOULDER ARMS.*

(5) *When the Battalion has passed the General—*

*\* SLOPE ARMS.*

(6) *At Point 3—*

*BATTALION: LEFT WHEEL. DOUBLE. (When square)—FORWARD: ‡QUICK.—BY THE LEFT.*

(7) *At Point 4—*

*BATTALION: LEFT WHEEL. DOUBLE. (When square)—FORWARD: ‡QUICK.*

‡ It may sometimes be necessary to continue at the Double for a short distance after the word *FORWARD*; to prevent crowding, or to correct distance. [An interval of 25 paces should be preserved between the Columns.]

The mounted Officers, only, will salute.

Captains, Lieutenants, and Colours change back to their original flanks on the word *BY THE LEFT*.

After marching past, the leading Column will be halted (on the Brigadier's *Caution*) by word of its own Commander, on the original alignment: and the remaining Columns halted in succession, by their Commanders, as they close upon the leading Column to 6 paces' interval.

The *mass* will then be wheeled into *line* of Columns, and the intended movements commenced.

At the end of the Review, the Columns will, if required, be formed on their original ground in Review order (*see* p. 192); and will then be ordered to advance in Slow time: being halted and ordered to salute when at a convenient distance from the General.

---

\* These words will be given only to troops armed with the long rifle. In Quarter-distance Column, *Riflemen* march past at the 'trail'.

## DUTIES OF COVERING-SERGEANTS.

### *General Rules.*

1. WHEN the Captain of a Company changes his flank, the Coverer (except in closing, when required to give a point, or when required to fall in on the reverse flank \*) will change with him; passing, on all occasions, by the *rear*. When both the Captain and Coverer change by the rear, the latter will always *follow* the former. A Coverer, both in moving out to give a point and in changing his flank, will move in Double time.

2. Whenever the Captain moves from the front rank (*not* for the purpose of changing his flank), the Coverer—unless required to give a point—will take his place and preserve it till his return. When both the Captain and Coverer move out during a formation in Line, the rear-rank man of the pivot file will move up into the place that the Captain occupied.

3. Sergeants, when moving with their Companies or the Battalion, remain with unfixed swords; except while escorting the Colours and when in Square. They stand at ease and come to *Attention* with the men; but the only motions of the rifle they perform with them are the 'shoulder', the 'slope' (or 'trail'), and the 'order', as laid down for the short rifle.

4. Coverers giving points for the formation of Line, will stand with recovered Arms, facing towards the point of *appui*. [This rule does not apply to the Coverer marking the outer flank of the *front* Company (Subdivision, or Section) of an open Column wheeling into Line; who will stand as directed in No. 19, p. 209.]

When Companies form *successively* from Line into Column: Coverers will take up their covering with recovered Arms; but will each come to the 'shoulder' when correctly covered. [This rule does not apply to the Coverer giving a base point in front of a *flank* Company of formation: *see* below.] When Coverers mark the points for their Companies to form upon *simultaneously* in Column (as in forming on Parade, *see* p. 59), they will take up their distances

---

\* See Nos. 20, 21, 22, 23, 26-29.

and covering with recovered Arms; all coming to the 'shoulder' together on the word **STEADY** from the Adjutant, or other person who has dressed them. The Coverer (or supernumerary Serjeant) giving a base point in front (or rear) of the named Company when Column is formed from Line on either flank Company, and the Coverer giving a base point when a Column is closed or opened out, will remain at the 'recover' until the word **STEADY** is given by the Field-officer who is superintending the covering: *see* Nos. 11-13.

*See Field Ex., pp. 65, 183, 221.*

(a) In all Deployments and formations of *Line* on any one Company, the Covering-serjeant of that Company will be placed in front of, and at arm's length from, one of its flank files; the senior supernumerary Serjeant in front of, and at arm's length from, the other; as a base\*: when *Line* is formed on the two centre Companies (or Subdivisions), the Coverer of each centre Company will—in like manner—mark its outer flank, the front-rank centre Serjeant giving a 3rd (centre) base point. These base points will not fall into their places in *Line* till the Major's word **STEADY** at the completion of the formation. The Coverer of each of the remaining Companies will run out as it arrives within 20 paces of its point of formation, to mark where its outer flank will rest in *Line*; covering in the line established by the base points; and falling into his place in *Line* when the 2nd Company from his own (towards the distant point) gets the word *Eyes front*.

A Coverer (or other non-commissioned officer) when marking a point, will invariably face to the point of *appui*: thus, if the formation is on the right-flank Company, he will face to the right; if on the left-flank Company, to the left; if on a central Company, or on the centre of the Battalion, inwards. In order that the *Line* may be dressed at arms' length in rear of the line of points, each Coverer, when his Company approaches him, will hold out his inner arm at right angles to the body (with the fist clenched†); dropping his arm as soon as the man opposite to his fist is steady.

---

\* *See* Note, p. 210.

† A Serjeant, while extending an arm in this manner, will hold his rifle at the position of the 'recover' with the hand of the other arm; resting the butt against his chest.

The dressing and covering of all foot points will be corrected on the distant mounted point by the Major nearest the point of formation ; or by the Senior Major, on the two distant points, when the formation is on the centre of the Battalion (or on a central Company). *See* p. 66.

*N.B.*—In formations from Subdivisions (or Sections), each Coverer will take up distance for his whole Company.

(b) In the formation of *Column* from *Line* on any named Company :—If the formation is on either flank Company, and the named Company is to be the leading one of the Column, its Coverer will give the base point for the Column ; placing himself 6 paces in front of, and facing towards, his Captain. [If the named Company is to be the rear one of the Column, its senior supernumerary Serjeant will give the base point, 6 paces in *rear* of the Captain.] The base point will stand fast till the Major's word *STEADY* on the completion of the formation. When the formation is on any central Company (whether Right or Left is to be in front), the Coverer of the named Company will mark the future pivot flank of the Company which will form next in front of his own, covered on his Captain but facing to the front : the future pivot flank of the Company which will form next in rear of the named one, will be marked (on the word *FORM FOURS: INWARDS*) by its own Coverer.

The remaining Coverers take up their covering in Column as directed in No. 11 (pp. 202–206).

Each Coverer marking the future pivot flank of a Company, will fall into his place in Column when that Company gets the word *Halt, front : dress*.

---

§ The directions given in the following pages do not apply to the Coverer of the Officer on the left of the Line ; except in No. 2, where he is specifically mentioned. In all formations *from* Line he will fall back (on the *Caution*) into the Supernumerary rank, in every formation of Line will move up on the left of his Company, with his Officer : he will also accompany the latter whenever he changes flank.

By "the Supernumerary Serjeant" will be meant the *senior* Supernumerary Serjeant.



## SEC. I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

- |   |   |                               |
|---|---|-------------------------------|
| <p>1. Taking<br/>Open order,<br/>and resuming<br/>Close order.<br/>(p. 68.)</p> | <p>The Coverer of each Company will proceed<br/>as directed in PART I., No. II.</p>   | <p>F. E. IV.,<br/>p. 232.</p> |
| <hr style="width: 20%; margin: 10px auto;"/>                                    |   |                               |
| <p>2. Dressing a<br/>Battalion in<br/>Line.<br/>(p. 72.)</p>                    | <p><i>On the Caution</i>—If the Line is to dress by the<br/>Right, each Coverer will at once move up into<br/>his Captain's place: if by the Left, will first<br/>(by taking a pace to the rear, and a side-pace<br/>to the left) make way for his Captain to pass<br/>to the rear, and will then move up on the<br/>right of his Company.</p> <p><i>On the word MARCH</i>—The Coverers (including<br/>the Coverer of the Officer on the left of the<br/>Line) will take the named number of paces<br/>straight to their front, face to the named flank,<br/>and cover; recovering Arms as they face.<br/>[A Field-officer will then dress them, and give<br/>STEADY.]</p> <p><i>On the 2nd word STEADY</i>—They will come to the<br/>'shoulder' and resume their places in Line:<br/>the Captains making way for them to pass.</p> | <p>F. E. IV.,<br/>p. 237.</p> |
| <hr style="width: 20%; margin: 10px auto;"/>                                    |   |                               |
| <p>3. Advancing<br/>and Retiring<br/>by Wings.<br/>(p. 74.)</p>                 | <p>Coverers remain posted as in Line. No<br/>points will be given when Line is re-formed<br/>on the leading Wing.</p>   | <p>F. E. IV.,<br/>p. 238.</p> |
| <hr style="width: 20%; margin: 10px auto;"/>                                    |   |                               |
| <p>4. A Battalion<br/>in Line passing<br/>Obstacles.<br/>(p. 77.)</p>           | <p>When the Companies have passed by Fours<br/>from the <i>left</i> to the front and re-form Line to<br/>the front on their leading files, each Coverer<br/>will act as directed in (a), p. 39. When the<br/>Companies, having passed by Fours to the<br/>rear, re-form Line to the right- (or left-) about,<br/>Coverers will proceed as directed in (c), p. 40.</p>   | <p>F. E. IV.,<br/>p. 240.</p> |

SEC. II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

5. A Line  
wheeling into  
Open Column.  
(p. 85.)

(A) Wheeling back from the Halt: by Companies.

F. E. IV.,  
pp. 276-278.

The Coverer whose Company will be the leading Company of the Column, will proceed as directed in PART I., No. VI. (A).

Each of the other Coverers:—

*On the word FACE*—Will face to the right-about.

*On the word MARCH*—Will step off in the proper rear rank of his Company: halting, fronting, and moving to his proper place in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank, on his Captain's word *Halt, front: dress.*

(B) Wheeling forward on Moveable pivots: by Companies.

Each Coverer will proceed as directed in PART I., No. VI. (B).

When a Line wheels into open Column of *Subdivisions* (or *Sections*) from the Halt, the Coverer of the future leading Company will proceed as directed in PART I., No. IX.<sup>(1)</sup> (A): the remaining Coverers standing fast on the *Caution*, and moving to their places in Column during the wheel. When the wheel is made on Moveable pivots, all the Coverers will act as directed in PART I., No. IX.<sup>(1)</sup> (B).

6. A Battalion  
moving in  
Open Column  
from either  
flank along  
the Rear.  
(p. 88.)

*On the Caution*—If the Movement is from the Right, each Coverer will change flank with his Captain, then move up on the left of the front rank of his Company: if from the Left, will take his Captain's place when the latter falls to the rear. In either case, each Coverer will lead the front rank of his Company (or of its future leading Subdivision, or Section), while it is

F. E. IV.,  
p. 278.

## DUTIES OF COVERING-SERJEANTS

moving in Fours to the rear of the Line : and on the word *Front turn*, will move to the rear of the 2nd file from the flank on which the Captain is marching.

---

(A) From the Halt : by *Companies*.

7. A Battalion formed in Line advancing in Open Column from either flank.

(p. 90.)

*On the Caution*—If the advance is from the Right, the Coverer of the named Company will change his flank ; the Coverer of No. 2 taking a pace to the rear with his Captain.

F. E. IV.,  
p. 280.

*During the 1st wheel*—If the advance is from the Right, each Coverer (except the Coverer of No. 1) will move to his place in Column.

If the advance is from the Left, the Coverers will fall back into their places in Column directly the word MARCH is given.

(B) From the Halt : by *Subdivisions* (or *Sections*).

The Coverer of the Company which is to lead the Column, will proceed as directed in PART I., No. X.

The remaining Coverers will move to their places in Column during the 1st wheel.

---

When these Movements are done on the March, *all* the Coverers will move to their places in Column during the 1st wheel.

8. A Battalion formed in Line advancing in Double Column.

(p. 93.)

*On the Caution*—The Coverers of the 2 flank Companies will mark the points on which the Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) of their respective Wings will make their 2nd wheel ; both facing towards the Line, and the Coverer of No. 1 making allowance for the distance which the right-centre Company (Subdivision, or Section) will have to incline to the left-centre to fill the space vacated by the Colours

F. E. IV.,  
p. 283.

and left-centre Captain. The Coverers of the 2 centre Companies will move to the rear of the outer flank of their inner Subdivision (or Section).

*On the word MARCH*—The Coverers of the 2 centre Companies will move off in their proper places in Column. The remaining Coverers (except those giving the wheeling points) will proceed as directed in PART I., No. VI. (B), or No. IX.<sup>(1)</sup>(B), according as the Double Column is to be one of Companies, or of Subdivisions (or Sections).

Each of the 2 Coverers giving the wheeling points will face about, and move off in his place in rear of his own Company (or its outer Subdivision, or Section) when it has completed its 2nd wheel.

---

(Suppose the Retreat by *Companies*)—

9. A Battalion formed in Line retreating in Open Column from a Flank. (p. 97.)

*On the Caution*—The Coverer of the flank Company in rear of which the Retreat is to be made, will fall back and give a point (at a distance equal to the breadth of a Company and 3 paces) in rear of the next Company's Captain: facing towards the Line. On this point the remaining Companies will make their 2nd wheel.

F. E., IV.,  
p. 286.

Each of the other Coverers will take post in rear of the 2nd file from the left or right of his Company according as the retreat is to commence from the Right or Left.

*During the 2nd wheel*—All the Coverers (except the Coverer giving the wheeling point) will change flanks.

The Coverer giving the wheeling point will face about in time to march off in his place in the proper rear of his Company when it comes up to him.

[If the movement is by *Subdivisions* (or *Sections*), the Coverer giving the wheeling point will take distance accordingly.]

---

(Suppose the Retreat by Subdivisions)—

10. A Battalion formed in Line retreating in Double Column from both Flanks in rear of the Centre.

(p. 100.)

*On the Caution*—The Coverers of the 2 centre Companies will fall back and give the points for the 2nd wheels, at Subdivision distance and 3 paces in rear of the 2nd files from the outer flanks of the 2 centre Subdivisions; facing towards the Line. The remaining Coverers of the Right Wing will place themselves in rear of the 2nd file from the left, those of the Left Wing in rear of the 2nd file from the right, of their Companies.

F. E. IV.,  
p. 288.

*During the 2nd wheel*—All the Coverers (except those giving the wheeling points) change flanks.

The 2 Coverers giving the wheeling points will face about in time to step off in their places in the proper rear of the 2 centre Subdivisions.

[If the movement is by *Companies* or *Sections*, the Coverers giving the wheeling points will take distance accordingly.]

---

*Note.*—When this or the preceding movement is to be effected by the Companies (or Subdivisions) moving along the rear in *Files* or *Fours*:—The point, or points, will be given close in rear of the Line: each of the remaining Coverers will lead his Company (or Subdivision) while in file or fours, and on the word *Rear turn* will place himself in the proper rear of the 2nd file from its outer flank.

11. Formation of Column on any named Company.  
(p. 104.)

(A) In rear, or front, of the Right-flank Company.

F. E. IV.,  
p. 292.

*N.B.*—The Serjeant (Covering or Supernumerary, as the case may be) who is giving the *base*

*point for the Column* when the formation is on either flank Company, will stand fast till the Major's word **STEADY** at the completion of the formation. Each Coverer making the *future pivot flank of a Company* will fall into his place in Column when that Company gets the word '*Halt: front*'. (See p. 197.)

(<sup>1</sup>) *If Right is to be in front.*

*On the Caution*—The Coverer of the named Company will move across by the *front*; and place himself, with recovered Arms, 6 paces in front of, and facing towards, his Captain (who will have changed his flank). The Coverer of No. 1 will take a pace to the rear with his Captain.

*On the word RIGHT*—The Coverer of No. 2 will step back and mark the spot where the left of his Company will rest in Column: covering on the Captain and Coverer of No. 1.

The remaining Coverers will place themselves, as usual, in front of their leading fours.

*On the word MARCH*—The Companies in fours step off. Each Coverer in succession, when within 20 paces of the pivot flank of the Column, will run on to take covering and distance for his own Company, in rear of the pivot flank of that last formed.

(<sup>2</sup>) *If Left is to be in front.*

*On the Caution*—The *Supernumerary Serjeant* of No. 1 will give the base point, with recovered Arms, 6 paces in rear of its Captain (who will not change his flank).

*On the word RIGHT*—The Coverer of No. 1 will take up his own distance\* in front of his Captain, cover on him and the supernumerary Serjeant, and face to the right-about: thus marking the future pivot flank of No. 2.

---

\* *i.e.* the named distance, calculated for his own Company.

## DUTIES OF COVERING-SERJEANTS

The remaining Coverers will place themselves, as usual, in front of their leading fours.

*On the word MARCH*—The Companies in fours step off. Each Coverer, in succession, when within 20 paces of the line of Coverers, will run on to mark the future pivot flank of the Company which will form next in front of his own; covering on the rear base, and then facing to the right-about. In moving back to his place in rear of his own Company, he will pass by its *reverse* flank.

---

(B) In front, or rear, of the Left-flank Company.

<sup>(1)</sup> *If Right is to be in front.*

*On the Caution*—All the Coverers change flanks: the Supernumerary Serjeant of the named Company will then mark the base point, 6 paces in rear of the Captain, as in A<sup>(2)</sup>.

*On the word LEFT*—The Coverer of the named Company marks the future pivot flank of that which will form next in his front; as in A<sup>(2)</sup>.

The remaining Coverers proceed as in A<sup>(2)</sup>.

<sup>(2)</sup> *If Left is to be in front.*

*On the Caution*—The Coverer of the named Company marks the base point, 6 paces in front of his Captain, as in A<sup>(1)</sup>. All the other Coverers change their flanks.

*On the word LEFT*—The Coverer of the Company next to the named one steps back to mark the spot where the right of his Company will rest in Column.

The remaining Coverers proceed as in A<sup>(1)</sup>.

---

(C) On any Central Company.

*On the Caution*—The Coverer of the named Company, whether Right or Left is to be in

front, will mark the future pivot flank of the Company which will form, in the Column, next in front of his own: he will cover on his Captain (who, if right is to be in front, will have changed his flank), placing himself square with the Line; and will then face to the right-about. All the Coverers on the right of the named Company change their flanks.

*On the word INWARDS*—The Coverer whose Company will stand next in rear of the named one, steps back to mark its future pivot flank.

The remaining Coverers on the *right* of the named Company, if Right is to be in front act as in A<sup>(2)</sup>; if Left, as in A<sup>(1)</sup>. Those on the *left* of the named Company, if Right is to be in front proceed as in A<sup>(1)</sup>: if Left, as in A<sup>(2)</sup>.

---

(D) Column on any named Company facing to the Rear.

*On the Caution*—The Coverer of the named Company, if Left is to be in front, changes flank with his Captain. While his Company is being countermarched by files, he will proceed as in No. XV., of PART I., page 45.

The *Supernumerary* Serjeant of the named Company, if it is either of the *flank* Companies, will give the base point for the Column: if a *central* Company, will mark the future pivot flank of that which will form next in front of his own.

The remaining Coverers:—

(*Suppose the formation on a central Company*)—

The Coverers on the left of the named Company will change flanks on the *Caution*.

If Right is to be in front, the Coverers on the original *right* of the named Company will take



up covering and distance in the Column for the Company which will stand next in front of their own: those on the original *left*, for their own Company.

If Left is to be in front: *vice versa*.

[When a halted *Double Column* is formed from Line, the Coverer of the left-centre Company will give a base point 6 paces in front of his Captain. When the Column is to be formed of Subdivisions, the Supernumerary Serjeant of each Company will take up covering and distance for its rear Subdivision.]

### SEC. III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

12. Forming Quarter-distance or Close Column from any more open Column.

(p. 110.)

(a) Closing to the Front: on the Halt, or by halting the Column.

F. E. IV.,  
p. 248.

*On the Caution* [or (if the Column is on the March) on his Captain's word "*Halt: dress*"]

—The Coverer of the leading Company will give a base point; placing himself 6 paces in front of, and facing towards, his Captain; and covering on the line of Captains. He will resume his place in Column when the Field-officer who has been superintending the covering gives *STEADY*.

(b) Closing on the Rear: from the Halt.

*On the Caution*—The Coverer of the rear Company will place himself 6 paces in rear of his Captain; covering, and resuming his place, as directed in (a) for the Coverer of the leading Company.

[If the Closing is on a central Company, no base point will be given.]

13. A Close or Quarter-distance Column opening out.

(p. 112.)

(a) Opening from the Front.

*On the Caution*—The Coverer of the leading Company will proceed as directed in No. 12<sup>(a)</sup>.

[When the ground is rough :—Each of the other Coverers in succession will run out when the Company in his present rear is halted ; and, placing himself clear of the flank of the Column, will mark the proper distance for his own Company : falling into his place in Column when his Captain gives *Halt, front : dress.*]

(b) Opening from the Rear.

*On the Caution*—The Coverer of the rear Company will proceed as directed in No. 12<sup>(b)</sup>.

[In opening from a central Company, no base point will be given.]

F. E. IV.,  
p. 250.

14. A Close or Quarter-distance Column wheeling on a fixed pivot.

(p. 115.)

*On the Caution*—The Coverer of the leading Company will run out to mark the spot where the outward flank of the Column will rest when the wheel is completed : standing with shouldered Arms and his left arm raised. He will resume his place in Column on the word COLUMN : HALT.

[When a Column wheels on a moveable pivot, the Coverer of the leading Company does not move out.]

F. E. IV.,  
p. 256.

15. A Close or Quarter-distance Column Counter-marching by Subdivisions round the Centre.

(p. 119.)

(a) From the Halt.

*On the Caution*—The Coverers of the front and rear Companies will mark the points on which the pivot and reverse Subdivisions of the Column, respectively, will wheel : the Coverer of the front Company placing himself in front of the inner file of its reverse Subdivision ; the Coverer of the rear Company, in rear of the inner file of its pivot Subdivision : and both facing to the centre of the Column. [They will resume their places with their Companies on the word HALT, FRONT : DRESS.]

F. E. IV.,  
p. 265.

(b) On the March.

*On the word RIGHT-ABOUT TURN*—The Coverers of the front and rear Companies will give their points as directed in (a): taking post with their Companies on the word *FRONT TURN*.

- 
16. Changing the Order of a Column.  
(p. 121.) Each Coverer will step short while his Company is moving out of the old Column: taking the Lieutenant's place when that Officer changes his flank on the Captain's word *Front turn*.
- 

F. E. IV.,  
p. 267.

- 
17. Changing the Order of a Column on a Road.  
(p. 123.) Each Coverer will lead the front rank of his Company, as usual, while it is moving in fours to the front: moving to his place in rear of the 2nd file from the new pivot flank when his Captain gives *Front form Company*.
- 

F. E. IV.,  
p. 268.

18. A Column taking ground to a flank.  
(p. 125.)

(a) By Fours.

F. E. IV.,  
p. 272.

While a Column is taking ground to a flank, the Coverers, if on the leading flank, will be responsible for the dressing of the heads of Companies. When no Company of direction is named, the leading Company of the Column will direct.

In *close* Column, the Coverer of each Company, if on its leading flank, will march at the head of the 2nd rank. *See* p. 63.

[When an open Column moves into an *Alignment by Fours*, the Coverer of its leading Company (who will take his distance from the point on which the Column originally marched), and each of the other Coverers, will run out to take up distance and covering for the pivot flank of his Company. They will be covered from the front by the Major of the leading Wing.]

(b) In Echelon of Sections.

Each Coverer will retain his position.

---

SEC. IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

19. Wheeling  
into Line from  
Open Column.  
(p. 128.)

(A) From the Halt: from Column of *Companies*.

F. E. IV.,  
p. 227.

The Coverer of the leading Company will proceed as directed in PART I., No. V. (A).

Each of the other Coverers:—

*On the word LINE*—If Right is in front, will place himself on the right of the front rank of his Company; if Left is in front, will stand fast.

*On the word MARCH*—If Right is in front, will remain and wheel on the right of his Company; if Left is in front, will move up on the right of his front rank during the wheel; preserving his Captain's place in Line.

He will as usual take post in Line on his Captain's word *Eyes front*.

(B) On Moveable pivots: from Column of *Companies*.

Each Coverer will act as directed in PART I., No. V. (B).

---

When an open Column of *Subdivisions* (or *Sections*) wheels into Line from the Halt, the Coverer of the leading Company will proceed as directed in PART I., No. IX.<sup>(2)</sup> (A): the remaining Coverers standing fast on the *Caution*, and moving to their places in Line during the wheel. When the wheel is made on Moveable pivots, all the Coverers will act as directed in PART I., No. IX.<sup>(2)</sup> (B).

20. Forming  
Line to the  
Front from  
Open Column.  
(p. 130.)

(A) From the Halt.

F. E. IV.,  
p. 297.

(a) *Line on the leading Company*.

(Suppose Right in front)—

*N.B.*—In all the following formations: the 2 Serjeants of the named Company who mark the

## DUTIES OF COVERING-SERJEANTS

base of formation will stand fast till the Major's word *STEADY* at the completion of the Movement.

The Coverer of each (except the leading Company) will change flank.

The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the leading Company will mark the base points: the former at arm's length in front of its outer, the latter at arm's length in front of its inner, flank file\*; both facing, as usual, to the point of *appui* (in this case the right), with Arms at the 'recover'.

*On the word WHEEL*—The Coverer of each (except the leading) Company will proceed as directed in PART I., No. VII.

*On the 2nd word MARCH*—The Companies in echelon step off: each Coverer, as he arrives within 20 paces of the alignment, running out, and covering (on the base points placed in front of No. 1) at arm's length from the spot where the outward flank (in this case the left) of his Company will rest in Line: and taking post in Line when the 2nd Company from his own has got the word *Eyes front*.

[The Coverer whose Company comes up last but one into Line, will take post when the *next* Company to his own gets *Eyes front*.]

[When the Column is Left in front:—The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the leading Company will give the base points as above directed: the former placing himself in front of its *right*, the latter in front of its *left*, flank file; and both facing to the left (the point of *appui* in this case). The Coverer of each of the other Companies will step his 4

---

\* *Note*.—In all formations of Line (except on a central Company) the Coverer of the named Company, in giving his base point, will take the flank furthest from the point of *appui*.

paces from the 8th file from its *left*; marching (while in echelon) on, and running out to mark, its *right* flank.]

*N.B.*—If the Line is to be formed *obliquely* to the front of the Column:—The leading Company will first be wheeled back, on its reverse flank, into the required direction. The remainder will then be wheeled back into echelon; their Coverers taking, *in addition to the usual 4 paces*, half the number of paces wheeled back by the leading Company. If the leading Company is wheeled up, the remaining Coverers will proceed as in No. 21.

(b) *Line on the rear Company.*

The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the rear Company will give the base points as in (a): the Coverer, as therein directed, taking whichever flank is furthest from the point of *appui*.

The remaining Companies having been faced to the right-about (*see* ¶, p. 26), each Coverer will proceed as in (a): except that, in giving his point, he must allow one pace extra distance to enable his Company to pass clear of him to the rear; taking a pace forward the moment it has passed, so as not to interfere with the inner flank of the next Company coming up into Line.

(c) *Line on any central Company.*

The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the named Company will give the base points in front of it as in (a): except that, whether Right or Left is in front, the Coverer will place himself opposite to its left, the Supernumerary Serjeant opposite to its right, flank file.\*

The Coverers in rear of the named Com-

---

\* The centre of the Company will be the point of *appui* (*see* p. 66): the 2 Serjeants will therefore face inwards, *viz.* towards each other.

## DUTIES OF COVERING-SERJEANTS

pany will proceed as in (a) : those in its front, as in (b).

(B) Line, on the March, on the leading Company.

The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the leading Company will run out to give the base points, as in the same formation from the Halt, when its Captain gives *Halt : dress* [or, if the Column is retiring, *Halt, front : dress*].

Each of the remaining Coverers : if the Column is *advancing*, will take his Captain's place when the latter changes flank ; if the Column is *retiring*, will change, during the wheel into echelon, to the outer flank of his present front rank ; running out to give his point, when he arrives 20 paces from the alignment, as in the same formation from the Halt.

21. An Open Column forming Line to the Reverse flank. (p. 136.)

The Coverer of each Company, when his Captain changes flank, will take the place he has left.

When the Captain of the leading Company gives *Right* (or *Left*) *wheel* : its Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant will run out and mark the base of formation, at arm's length in front of the ground which the Company will occupy when in Line ; placing themselves as directed in No. 20. They will take post in Line, as usual, on the word *STEADY*.

The Coverer of each of the other Companies will march on its reverse flank till within 20 paces of his ground, when he will run out to take up his covering : giving his point, and taking post in Line, as directed in No. 20 (a).

[Columns of Subdivisions (or Sections) will be formed to the reverse flank in like manner : Co-

F. E. IV.,  
P. 302.

verers taking distance, as usual, for their whole Companies. See PART I., No. XII.]

22. A Double Column, on the March, forming Line to the Front. (p. 138.)

(Suppose a Double Column of *Subdivisions*)—

F. E. IV.,  
p. 304.

The Coverer of each of the 2 centre Companies, when his inner Subdivision is halted, will give a base point, where the outward flank of his whole Company will rest in Line; facing, as usual, to the point of *appui* (the centre of the Battalion). They will both take post in Line as directed in No. 20 (a).

[The centre Serjeant will give a centre base point; facing to the right.]

The remaining Coverers of each Wing, when their Captains change flank, will take the places they have left. When they run out to take up their covering, they will, as usual, allow distance for their whole Company; covering on the central base points, and taking post in Line as directed in No. 20 (a).

[When a Double Column is required to form Line from the Halt, without advancing the 2 front Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections), it will be closed to quarter distance and then deployed: Coverers proceeding as directed in No. 24.]

23. A Double Column forming Line to a Flank. (p. 141.)

(A) *On the March.*

F. E. IV.,  
p. 308.

*On the word LINE*—The Supernumerary Serjeant of the rear Company of the named Wing will mark the inner flank of the intended Line: each Coverer of that Wing proceeding as directed in PART I., No. V. (A) or No. IX.<sup>(2)</sup> (A), according as the Double Column consists of Companies or of Subdivisions, except that he will face to the point of *appui* with recovered Arms.



## DUTIES OF COVERING-SERGEANTS

Each Coverer of the other Wing, when his Captain changes flank, will take the place he has left; running out at the usual time to take up covering for his (whole) Company: *see* No. 21.

(B) *From the Halt.*

The Coverers of each Wing will proceed as directed in (A).

[The centre Serjeant will give a centre base point as in No. 22, but facing towards the point of *appui* (right or left, as the case may be).]

## SEC. V.—DEPLOYMENTS.

*N.B.*—In all the following formations: the 2 Serjeants marking the base of formation, and the Coverers giving the intermediate points, will fall into their places in Line as directed in No. 20.

24. A Close  
or Quarter-  
distance  
Column  
Deploying  
into Line on  
any named  
Company.  
(p. 143.)

(A) *On the leading Company.*

*On the Caution*—The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the leading Company will mark the base of formation: placing themselves according to the rule given in No. 20(a).

*On the word LEFT (or RIGHT)*—The Coverer of the next Company will run out to mark its outward flank: covering on the base points.

Each of the remaining Coverers will, as usual, lead the front rank of his Company while it is in fours; will march on its outward flank when it turns into line; and, when within 20 paces of the alignment, will run out to give his point as directed in No. 20.

(B) *On the rear Company.*

*On the Caution*—The Coverer and Supernume-

F. E. IV.,  
p. 312.

rary Serjeant of the rear Company will move up (in double time) to the front of the Column, and mark the base of formation in front of the leading Company ; placing themselves according to the rule given in No. 20(a).

The remaining Coverers will change flanks on the *Caution* : and, during the formation, proceed as in (A).

(C) *On a central Company.*

*On the Caution*—The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the named Company will give the base points in front of the leading Company of the Column, as in (B) : observing the rule given in No. 20(a), except that the Coverer will invariably give his point in front of the *reverse*, the Supernumerary Serjeant in front of the *pivot*, flank file.

The Coverers in front and rear of the named Company will proceed respectively as directed in (B) and (A).

---

In Deployments from *Double Column*, the centre Serjeant and the Coverers of the 2 centre Companies give the 3 centre base points. If the Column is formed of Subdivisions, each Coverer will, as usual, take distance for his whole Company. See No. 22.

---

25. A Line changing Front by the intermediate formation of Open Column. (p. 150.)

*On the Caution*—The Coverer of the Company of formation will change flank (if necessary) with his Captain.

During the formation of the Column, Coverers proceed as in No. 11 : when the Column is wheeled into Line, as in No. 19.

[When the change of front is to be oblique to the

F. E. IV.,  
p. 324.

## DUTIES OF COVERING-SERJEANTS

old Line, and the Company of formation is consequently required to wheel back : the Serjeant giving the base point in front or rear of that Company (or if the named Company is a *central* one, its Coverer, who will mark the covering and distance for the Company which will form next in front of his own in the Column) will be dressed by a mounted Officer, on the new alignment, and will give the new direction.]

---

 SEC. VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

26. A Battalion wheeling forward into Echelon.  
(p. 156.)

(A) From the Halt, on fixed pivots.

F. E. IV.,  
p. 346.

*On the Caution*—If the wheel is to be to the Left, Coverers will change flanks.

*On the word WHEEL*—Each Coverer will proceed as directed in PART I., No. VII.

(B) On Moveable pivots.

*On the word FORWARD*—If the Echelon is formed of Companies, each Coverer will take post on the reverse flank of the front rank of his Company: if of Subdivisions (or Sections), will remain in his place.

27. Re-forming Line from Oblique Echelon.  
(p. 159.)

(A) Line parallel to the original Line.

F. E. IV.,  
p. 348.

(From the Halt.)

*On the Caution*—Each Coverer: if on the left of his Company, will change to its right; if on the right, will remain there; falling back into his place in Line on his Captain's word *Eyes front*.

[If Line is re-formed *on the March* from an Echelon formed to the Left :—Each Coverer, on the word FORWARD, will make way for his Captain (who will in that case change his flank) to move up on the right of his Company.]

(B) Line oblique to the original Line.

The Coverer of each Company that is wheeled

backward or forward preparatory to the formation of the new Line, will proceed as directed in PART I., No. VII.

The leading Company (or the remaining Companies, as the case may be) having been wheeled as may be necessary†—

The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the leading Company will mark the base of formation in front of it: according to the rule given in No. 20(a).

*On the 2nd word MARCH*—The remaining Coverers will march off on the reverse flank of their respective Companies, running out to take up their covering as directed in No. XX(a).

28. A Battalion in Line changing Front by Echelon.  
(p. 162.)

Suppose the Movement performed on *moveable pivots from the Halt*;— F. E. IV., p. 356.

(A) On a Flank Company: the remainder thrown *forward*.

*On the Caution*—If the Company of formation is to wheel the *quarter circle*, its Coverer will (as usual) move out to mark where its wheeling flank will rest; see *Gen. Rules for Wheeling* (p. 6).

*On their Captain's word "Halt (front) dress"*—

The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the Company of formation will give the base points in front of it: according to the rule given in No. 20(a).

*On the word FORWARD*—Each of the remaining Coverers will place himself on the reverse

---

† The Company of formation will be wheeled up from the original alignment at double the angle that the remainder are wheeled: or, the remainder will be wheeled to half the angle that the Company of formation is wheeled.

## DUTIES OF COVERING SERJEANTS

flank of his Company: running out to take up his covering as directed in No. 20(a).

(B) On a Flank Company: the remainder thrown *back*.

The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the Company of formation will proceed as in (A).

The other Coverers, in giving their points, will proceed as directed in No. 20(b).

(C) On a central Company; or the centre of the Battalion.

1. If the change of front is on the centre of a Company:—

*On the Caution*: as in (A).

*On their Captain's word "Halt"*—The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the named Company will proceed as directed in PART I., No. VIII.

2. If the change of front is on the centre of the Battalion:—

*On the Caution*—If the 2 centre Companies are to wheel the *quarter circle* the Coverer of the one that is to wheel forward will mark (as directed at p. 6) the spot where its wheeling flank will rest.

*On the left-centre Captain's word "Halt (front), dress"*—The Coverer of each of the 2 centre Companies will give a point on the outward flank of his Company; the centre Serjeant giving a centre base point; as in No. 22.

The Coverers of the Companies that move up into Line rear rank in front, will give their points as in (B): the remainder, as in (A).

---

*Note.*—When either of the above movements is

performed from the Halt, *not* 'on moveable pivots':

—The Coverer of the named Company (or, when the change of front is on the centre of the Battalion, the Coverer of whichever of the 2 centre Companies is to wheel forward) will—unless the change of front is to be at right angles, in which case he will as usual mark its wheeling flank—be directed to take his paces\*, and will be halted, by the Battalion Commander. On the word **WHEEL**: each of the remaining Coverers will take the ordered number of paces from the 8th file from the inner flank of his Company, in the usual way†

29. Advancing  
and Retiring  
in Direct  
Echellon.  
(p. 167.)

(A) Advancing.

F. E. IV.,  
p. 368.

*On the Caution*—If the advance is to commence from the Right: each Coverer will change his flank, but will not move up on the left of his front rank (which will be his post in echellon) till his Company has moved out clear of the rest of the Line. If the advance is to commence from the Left: each Coverer will take a pace to his rear and a side-pace to the left, to allow his Captain to pass to the rear; and will then move up on the right of his front rank (which will be his post in echellon).

(B) Retiring.

*On the Caution*—If the retreat is to commence from the Right, each Coverer will change his flank: if from the Left, will make way, as in (A), for his Captain to pass to the rear, and will then move up on the right of the *rear* rank of his Company.

---

\* The paces will be taken from the 8th file from the *centre* of the Company if it is a central, but not the right- (or left-) centre, Company: in all other cases, from the 8th file from the pivot flank.

30. Re-forming Line from Direct Echelon.  
(p. 169.)

(A) Line parallel to the original Line.

F. E. IV.,  
p. 368.

*On the Caution (or their Captain's word, 'Halt, dress')*—The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the named Company: as in No. 20 (a).

The remainder, if their Companies are faced (or turned) about, will change flanks: then proceed as in No. 20 (a).

(B) Line at right angles to the original Line.

*During the wheel*—Coverers will change flank: When Line is formed, will proceed as in (A).

---

#### SEC. VII.—SQUARES.

31. Formation of Square from Open or Quarter-distance Column.  
(p. 171.)

(1) *From Open (or Quarter-distance) Column: on the leading Company.*

F. E. IV.,  
p. 330.

The Coverer of the leading Company will run to the rear of the next Company on the word MARCH, or his Captain's word *Halt: dress*, according as the Column is halted or advancing. The Coverers of the 2 rear Companies will run on into Square the moment the 3rd Company from the rear brings Sections outwards.

(2) *From Open Column: on the rear Company.*

The Coverers of the rear and rear-but-one Companies will run round, and place themselves close to the proper front rank of the latter, on the word MARCH or when the Captain of the rear Company gives *Halt: dress*, according as the Column is halted or retiring. The Coverers of the 2 proper leading Companies will run on into Square as the 3rd Company from the proper front gets *Front turn*.

(3) *From Open Column: on the Centre.*

The Coverers of side-face Companies will get into Square when the Companies in their present front get the word *Sections outwards*.

---

\* \* For Duties of Coverers in *Inspection (or Review)*, see No. XXXV.

## PART III.—LIGHT DRILL.

---

### INTRODUCTION.

---

The following is an extract from the Circular Memorandum dated "*Horse Guards*, 1st *May*, 1860":—

"The improved range and accuracy of fire of the arms now in general use render it doubly important that every soldier should, when skirmishing, be prepared to take such advantage of ground and cover as will enable him, with the least exposure of his own person, to inflict the greatest amount of injury on his opponents.

\* \* \* \* \*

"The attention of the skirmishers should be especially called to the following points :—

"Skirmishers, when under fire, must take advantage of all cover. The men of a file should always work together; both men should never be unloaded at the same time; they should always, when practicable, load under cover, before moving to the front when advancing, and after falling back when retiring.

"Young soldiers (particularly when first opening fire) are apt to waste their ammunition; its value, therefore, cannot be too carefully impressed on their minds, and they should be made to understand that the principal advantage of their rifle—viz., accuracy of fire, is lost if, in moving from spot to spot, they do not consider well the distance they are from the object they are about to fire at, and are not careful to adjust the back sight accordingly.

"The files must be careful not to get in front of each other. When small objects, such as trees or rocks, afford cover for a few files only, the men must not crowd behind them in numbers, as they will be safer in the open. Here they should load and fire lying, and move rapidly when the advance or retreat renders a change of position necessary, throwing themselves at once on the ground.

"Bugle sounds should be avoided as much as possible; the men should be practised at 'passing the word,' and made to understand signals.

"The men should be taught that good cover may be obtained from the slightest rise or fall of ground,—more especially when engaged at long ranges—



a slight furrow, a few stones or small bushes, will often afford cover in the absence of trees, rocks, walls, banks, &c.

"Skirmishers should be taught to judge rapidly for themselves of the nature of the ground on which they are acting, and of the best mode of occupying it. In defending a line of heights, the edge of a wood, or any ditches, walls, &c., they should follow the windings of the cover, instead of remaining in line, taking care to leave no considerable gaps and not to collect in groups.

"A line of skirmishers may be exercised with advantage in passing obstacles, such as ponds, farm buildings, &c.; the men opposite these obstacles doubling in rear of the files on the right and left, but running out to their proper places as soon as the obstacles are passed.

"Before quitting one position each file should decide on the next they intend to occupy, which they should make for in double time; when at close quarters one man of a file should cover the advance or retreat of his comrade while running from point to point, the men protecting each other in turn while exposed.

"The fire of skirmishers may often be better employed against the enemy's files on their right and left than against those in their immediate front, who are more likely to be completely covered.

"It is impossible for the officers to place each file of their companies; the men must be made to understand that they are responsible for the cover each file may select.

"The men should keep in sight the files on their right and left, and, when the ground permits, should resume the general line of dressing, and their proper distance, making use of their own intelligence, without waiting for special directions.

"The dressing of a line of skirmishers is a matter of no importance, as long as the connection between files is kept up. In advancing or retiring, those files having cover should remain in their position until those on their right and left have passed them by 15 or 20 paces. In advancing, files should run on to cover when the general line is within 50 paces of it, holding it as above directed. The fire of one protected skirmisher is of more value than that of five when exposed."

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES

OF

## SKIRMISHING.\*

## SKIRMISHERS, SUPPORTS, AND RESERVES.

(1) *Skirmishers.*

The movements of the Skirmishers must depend, in a great measure, on the position and movements of the Enemy: they should always, however, protect and overlap the flanks of the main body they are intended to cover.

Skirmishers—whether halted or in motion—when under fire, should take advantage of all cover: taking care, when advancing or retiring, not to get in front of each other, or to retain their places of cover so long as to interfere with their own or their comrades' fire.

All lines of Skirmishers move by their *centre*: except when inclining to a flank (*see* p. 235), in which case they move by the flank to which they are inclining.

The distance between Skirmishers and Supports, on a plain, should be about 200 yards (= 240 paces).†

Whenever Skirmishers are directed to *HALT*, they will halt *facing to their proper front*: and, if firing, will *kneel*.

*N.B.*—Men in extended order will invariably face (or turn) to the *right-about*; whether advancing, retiring, firing, or not firing. When one man of a file has to pass the other, he will pass him by the right if advancing, by the left if retiring.

---

\* Skirmishing [Fr.: *escarmouche*. Ital.: *scaramuccia*.]: Fighting in loose order;—'Light Drill'.

† A pace is five-sixths of a yard. To reduce yards to paces, therefore, multiply the number of yards by 6 and divide by 5: to reduce paces to yards, multiply the number of paces by 5 and divide by 6.

*General Rules for Skirmishers firing.*—1. The men of a file must always work together: both are never to be unloaded at the same time; when moving, the loaded man should always be nearest the enemy.—2. Men will load, when practicable, under cover: loading, if *advancing*, before moving to the front; if *retiring*, after falling back.—3. When men in extended order at the Halt are ordered to commence firing, they will kneel (or lie down, if better cover can be so obtained): when ordered to cease firing, they will rise. When men firing on the March are halted, they will kneel.—4. After firing in extended order, men will come to the capping position, and (if necessary) shut down the flap: if required to re-load on the march they will, after proceeding as just directed, bring the rifle to the 'trail' in the left hand (sling upwards, muzzle inclining up to the right), and proceed with their loading.

When Skirmishers (either halted or on the march) are directed to cease firing, they will complete their loading; and the rear-rank men, if not already there, will resume their places in the proper rear of their respective front-rank men.

*N.B.* The *CEASE FIRING* is the only Sound that annuls the *FIRE*.

#### (2) *Supports.*

The Supports should always be composed of numbers equal to the line of Skirmishers: thus, each Company that is extended should have a Company to support it; and in the case of a single Company detached to skirmish, one Subdivision should skirmish while the other remains formed in support.

It is the duty of the Supports to assist and support the Skirmishers in every possible way: the movements of the former must therefore correspond with those of the latter. Each Support should be in rear of the centre of its own Skirmishers.

Supports take ground to a flank in Column of Sections: if required to move diagonally to front or rear, they move in echelon of Sections.

The distance between Supports and Reserves should be about 300 yards (= 360 paces).

Both Skirmishers and Supports move with trailed Arms: except when in close Column of Sections, in which case they will move at

the 'slope' [or 'shoulder']; or when marching in close Files, in which case they will come to the 'advance' [or 'shoulder']. See (2) p. 55, and pp. 5\*, 6\*.

### (3) *Reserves.*

The Reserve is the point on which both Supports and Skirmishers may rally : and should be at least one-third of the whole body. It will be placed as nearly as possible in rear of the centre of the formation, in order to send relief to the Supports and Skirmishers as occasion may require.

In the presence of Cavalry, the Reserve should be kept in Column ; but under the fire of Artillery, deployed into Line.

Reserves, when in Column, take ground to a flank by fours : if required to move obliquely to front or rear, they move by the diagonal march.

The Reserve will be about 500 yards (= 600 paces) from the main body.

Reserves move with sloped [or trailed] Arms, bayonets [or swords] unfixed.

---

*Note.*—Light Infantry movements will usually be performed in Quick time ; but extensions or closing *on the march*, the formation of Company-Squares (from extended order) and Rallying-Squares, and changes of front from the halt, will be in Double time. The men may at any time, if necessary, be directed to change from Quick to Double, or *vice versa*, by word of command or bugle sound. When Skirmishers close on files that are moving at the double, and on other occasions when celerity is required, the pace will necessarily be quicker than in the ordinary double time.

### POSTS, &c. OF OFFICERS.

1. When a Company is *extended*, the Captain will be in rear of the centre : the Lieutenant, in rear of the right : the Ensign, in rear of the left.

[The Lieutenant of a flank Company will always be in rear of its outer flank, whether that flank is the right or left ; the Ensign, in rear of the inner flank.]

Commands must be repeated by the Captain and every Supernumerary belonging to the line of Skirmishers.

2. When a Company is in *support*, the Captain will invariably

be in its proper front; thus leading the Company when it advances, following it when it retires. The Lieutenant and Ensign will be in the proper rear, as usual.

The Officer commanding a Support should—with due regard to the assistance he should afford the Skirmishers—take advantage of all inequalities of ground, &c., to get his men under cover. The best positions to select are those which will protect the men if attacked by Cavalry, without preventing the Skirmishers forming on them.

3. The Officers of a *Reserve* formed in Column, in whatever order the Companies may stand, will always be placed as when *right* is in front.

The Officer commanding the Reserve—while availing himself of cover when practicable, and not neglecting the protection of the main body—should chiefly direct his attention to the selection of positions favourable to the relief and assistance of the Skirmishers and Supports.

THE COLOURS.—When a Colour Regiment is extended in Skirmishing order, the Colour party is posted between the 2 centre Companies of the Reserve.

[*Connecting Links*.—A non-commissioned Officer (or more, if required) may be sent out from a Support, to keep up the connection with its Skirmishers: and similar connecting links may be sent out from the Reserve, to keep up the connection between it and the Supports. These men may be employed, when necessary, to pass words of command, &c.: when so employed, and the voice—owing to noise or wind—cannot be heard, they will run up and deliver their orders, and then resume their places.]

### BUGLE SOUNDS.

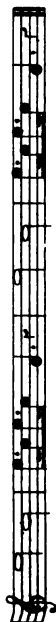
The names and numbers of the Bugle sounds used in Light Drill are as follows:—

I. <i>EXTEND</i> .	IX. <i>INCLINE</i> .
II. <i>CLOSE</i> .	X. <i>WHEEL</i> .
III. <i>ADVANCE</i> .	XI. <i>THE ALARM</i> (or <i>LOOK- OUT FOR CAVALRY</i> ).
IV. <i>RETIRE</i> .	XII. <i>QUICK</i> .
V. <i>HALT</i> .	XIII. <i>DOUBLE</i> .
VI. <i>COMMENCE FIRING</i> .	XIV. <i>LIE DOWN</i> .
VII. <i>CEASE FIRING</i> .	XV. <i>RISE</i> .
VIII. <i>ASSEMBLE</i> .	

# BUGLE SOUNDS

226.

I. EXTEND.



II. CLOSE.



III. ADVANCE.



IV. RETIRE.



V. HALT.



The HALT annuls all previous sounds except the FIRE.

VI. COMMENCE FIRING.



VII. CEASE FIRING.



VIII. ASSEMBLE.



IX. INCLINE.

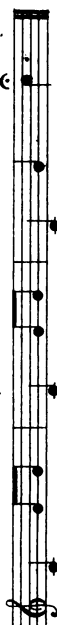


X. WHEEL.



Calls IX and X must be preceded by one G or three G's.

XI. THE ALARM, OR LOOK-OUT FOR CAVALRY.



XII. QUICK.



XIII. DOUBLE.



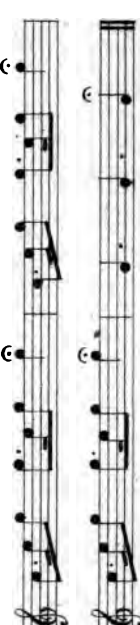
XIV. LIE DOWN.



XV. RISE.



THE OFFICERS' CALL





The note G sounded once, twice, or thrice, before the *EXTEND* or *CLOSE*, will denote the part of the line to which the Sound applies; sounded once or thrice before the *INCLINE* or *WHEEL*, will indicate the intended direction: one G signifying *right*, two G's *centre*, three G's *left*. *E.g.*—Two G's sounded before the *EXTEND* will signify to extend from the centre: one G followed by the *CLOSE*, to close to the right; three G's followed by the *WHEEL*, to wheel to the left.

*N.B.*—The *HALT* annuls all previous sounds except the *FIRE*. When the *FIRE* is combined with any other call, it should always be the last of the two.

In certain cases, Sounds (other than the *FIRE* and distinguishing G) are used in combination: *viz.*—

- |  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>CLOSE + ALARM.</i>                     | } <i>See pp. 240, 256.</i> |
| 2. <i>CLOSE + ALARM + ALARM.</i>             |                            |
| 3. <i>ALARM + DOUBLE.</i> <i>See p. 260.</i> |                            |

Bugle sounds do not apply to bodies of troops in reserve.

When moving by sound of bugle, men will not proceed to execute any ordered movement till the bugle has ceased.

---

\* \* The directions in brackets [ ] that Arms are to be at the '*shoulder*', or *swords* unfixed (or as the case may be), apply to the Short Rifle. When the word '*bayonets*', in the command *Fix bayonets*, is not followed by '[or *swords*]', it will imply that swords are not to be fixed.



## SECTION I.—COMPANY LIGHT DRILL.

The Company will fall in for Light Drill with Arms at the 'order' and bayonets [or swords] unfixed: and will be numbered and told off as directed in PART I., No. I., the left file of the right Subdivision being considered the centre of the Company.

\* \* \* The men, when at the Halt, will always stand at ease without word of command: coming to *Attention* on the cautionary word COMPANY (or SKIRMISHERS), or at the first sound of the bugle.

No. I.—*Extending.*

(F. E. V., Sec. 1., p. 379.)

[The number of paces that the files are to extend from each other may be specified in the Drill Instructor's *caution*, thus: THREE PACES, FROM THE RIGHT: *EXTEND*. When no number of paces is specified, 6 paces will be the distance between files. The rear-rank man of each file will be responsible for distance: the front-rank man for direction.]

(1) *Extending from the Halt.*

*On the word (or Sound) EXTEND —*

The *Officers* fall to the rear. *See* p. 225.

The file on the named flank (or the centre, or named, file) will stand fast: the remainder will advance [or shoulder] Arms, face outwards, and extend in Quick time.

The front-rank men will move direct to the flank to which they have faced, covering correctly on the march. The rear-rank men will cast their eyes over the inward shoulder; and each, as he gains the proper distance, will tap his front-rank man on the shoulder as a signal, upon which both men will halt, front, and stand at ease.

[Men must be taught to extend from any file of a close Column of Sections, without previously re-forming Company. The named file will stand fast; and the remainder, having faced outwards, will extend as above directed. *See* No. X.]

COMPANY:  
FROM THE  
RIGHT (LEFT,  
CENTRE, or  
No. — FILE):  
*EXTEND.*

BUGLE-CALL I.:  
*preceded by*  
1, 2, or 3 G(s).

(2) *Extending on the March.*

FROM THE  
RIGHT (LEFT,  
CENTRE, or  
No. — FILE):  
*EXTEND.*

BUGLE-CALL I.:  
*preceded by*  
1, 2, or 3 G(s).

*On the word (or Sound) EXTEND—*

The file from which the extension is to be made will continue moving forward in Quick time.

The remainder will make a *half* turn outwards, and move off in Double time: each file turning to its front and resuming the Quick time, when it has gained the required distance; the rear-rank men covering their front-rank men; and the whole keeping in line with the directing (centre) file. •

*N.B.*—If the Company is ordered to *HALT* before all the files are extended: the remainder will make a second *half* turn outwards (which will bring them into file), break into Quick time, advance [or shoulder] Arms, and complete their extension as from the Halt.

[A Company moving to a flank in echelon of Sections, should be practised in extending on the March without previously re-forming Company. The Echelon will move on in Double time; each file, as it gains its distance, turning to the front and breaking into Quick time as above described. See Nos. XI., XII.]

TO — PACES  
[FROM THE —]:  
*EXTEND.*

BUGLE-CALL I.

Men in extended order may be directed to increase the distance between their files any given number of paces; from either flank, the centre, or any named file. If the extension is ordered by bugle sound, or if no number of paces is specified in the word of command, the Skirmishers will open out *one-half* more than their original extension; *e.g.*, if they are at 6 paces distance, they will open to 9 paces. [The extension, unless it is otherwise directed, will be from the same file as before.]

No. II.—*Closing.*

(F. E. V., SEC. 2, p. 381.)

(1) *Closing at the Halt.*

SKIRMISHERS:  
ON THE  
RIGHT (LEFT,  
CENTRE, or  
No. — FILE):  
*CLOSE.*

BUGLE-CALL II.:  
*preceded by*  
1, 2, or 3 G(s).

*On the word (or Sound) CLOSE—*

The file on the named flank (or the centre, or named, file) will stand at ease.

The remainder will face towards the file on which the closing is to be made, and close in Quick time; each file in succession halting, fronting, ordering Arms, and standing at ease, as it gets to its place. [The file on which the Skirmishers close may be faced in any direction: the remainder forming upon it accordingly.]

The *Officers* will remain in rear, unless directed to take post as in Company.

[A Company must be practised in closing from extended order into close Column of Sections: *see* No. X.]

(2) *Closing on the March.**On the word (or Sound) CLOSE—*

The file on which the closing is to be made will move steadily on in Quick time: the remainder making a *half* turn towards it; closing in Double time; and turning to the front and resuming the Quick time, as they get to their places.

*N.B.*—If the Company is ordered to *HALT* before all the files are closed: the remainder will make a second *half* turn inwards (which will bring them into file), break into Quick time, and complete the closing as from the Halt.

[Skirmishers should also be practised in closing while moving at the double: *see* Note, p. 225.]

ON THE  
RIGHT (LEFT,  
CENTRE, or  
No. — FILE):  
*CLOSE.*

BUGLE-CALL II.:  
*preceded by*  
1, 2, or 3 G(s).

No. III.—*Firing in Skirmishing order, at the Halt.*

(F. E. V., SEC. 9, p. 386.)

COMMENCE  
FIRING.  
BUGLE-CALL VI.

*On the word (or Sound) COMMENCE FIRING—*

The front-rank men will make ready, fire, and re-load: the rear-rank men, when their respective front-rank men are in the act of capping, will make ready, fire, and re-load. See *General Rules for Skirmishers firing*: p. 224.

---

A line of Skirmishers may be ordered to *lie down*, or single soldiers may lie down for the sake of cover: when firing in this position, both elbows must rest on the ground to support the body and rifle. The men will load on their knees: except in very exposed situations, when they may (if they prefer it) roll over on their backs to load, placing the butt of the rifle between the legs, the cock upwards, and the muzzle slightly elevated.

[*Riflemen* may, in favourable situations, fire lying on their backs: the feet being crossed, and the right foot passed through the sling of the rifle to support it.]

*N.B.*—When a line of Skirmishers, halted and not firing, is ordered to *ADVANCE* (or *RETIRE*) and *COMMENCE FIRING*: on the latter word, the whole will kneel, and the front-rank men will fire; the whole will then rise, and proceed as explained in No. IV. or No. V.

No. IV.—*Advancing in Skirmishing order,  
and Firing.*

(F. E. V., SECS. 4, 9, pp. 383, 387.)

COMPANY:  
ADVANCE.  
BUGLE-CALL III.

*On the word (or Sound) ADVANCE—*

The men will step off in Quick time ; keeping their distances from the centre.

COMMENCE  
FIRING.  
BUGLE-CALL VI.

*On the word (or Sound) COMMENCE FIRING—*

The whole of the Skirmishers will make a momentary halt ; the front-rank man of each file will then fire (kneeling, if he prefers it), and take a side-pace to his left. The rear-rank man will then pass on, the front-rank man following close in rear of him, and loading on the march. When in the act of capping, the front-rank man will give the word *Ready* in an under tone of voice ; on which the proper rear-rank man will fire. Both men will then proceed, alternately, as above described.

The loaded man in front will be responsible for distance and dressing.

[When men find difficulty in loading on the march, they may *halt* and load, and then double up to their file leaders.]

The men must take advantage of any cover that may offer, running from one place to another as soon as they are loaded. When any considerable place of cover presents itself, several files may run up to it, fire and load, and then regain their distances and places in the general line of Skirmishers.

¶ *Passing Obstacles in Skirmishing order. •*

When an obstacle (such as a pond or marsh) pre-

sents itself in front of a line of Skirmishers, the files opposite to it will open out gradually as they approach, and will pass on either side of it; closing upon the remaining files, which will continue moving straight to their front. Having passed the obstacle, the files that have been diverted from their direction by it will again extend, and fill up the interval in the line.

A Company advancing, or retiring, in skirmishing order, should also be practised in closing on *the centre files of Subdivisions or Sections*; those files continuing to march straight to their front: after which, the Company will be again extended from the same files, when the distances between the files ought to be found correct.

### No. V.—*Retiring in Skirmishing order, and Firing.*

(F. E. V., SECS. 5, 9, pp. 383, 388.)

COMPANY:  
*RETIRE.*  
BUGLE-CALL IV.

*On the word (or Sound) RETIRE—*

The men will face to the right-about, and step off (in Quick time) rear rank in front; keeping their distances from the centre.

COMMENCE  
*FIRING.*  
BUGLE-CALL VI.

*On the word (or Sound) COMMENCE FIRING—*

Both ranks will halt, front, and kneel.

The front-rank man of each right file will then fire, rise, face to the right-about, and retire in Quick time; passing by the *left* of his rear-rank man, and loading as he retires. The rear-rank man of each right file will remain steady, facing to the front, till his front-rank man has passed him: he will then rise, face about, and follow him. As soon as the front-rank men of the left files hear the ramrods of the front-rank men of the right files working, they will fire; and then, together with their respective rear-rank men, will retire as above described for the right files.

When the unloaded man of a file has completed his loading, both men of the file will halt, front, and kneel; the present front-rank man will then give his fire, and both men will proceed as above described.

After the first round, each file will continue to fire and retire without reference to the others.

[On rough ground, files will run back from one place of cover to another, selecting new cover before leaving the last: one man of each file firing before moving, and re-loading when again under cover.]

---

*N.B.*—It must be recollected that, in retiring, the word (or bugle sound) *RIGHT* or *LEFT* preceding any command will invariably signify the *present* right or left.

No. VI.—*Inclining to a Flank, and Firing.*

(F. E. V., SECS. 7, 9, pp. 384, 389.)

TO THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT):  
*INCLINE.*  
BUGLE-CALL IX:  
*preceded by one G,  
or three G's.*

*On the word (or Sound) INCLINE—*

The Skirmishers will make a *half* turn to the named flank, and will move in a diagonal direction, till they are ordered to resume their original direction to the front, or rear, by the word (or Sound) *ADVANCE*, or *RETIRE*.

The leading file will direct: *see p. 223.*

If the Skirmishers have made a half turn, and are again ordered to incline in the same direction, or if the bugle sounds the *INCLINE* a second time: they will make a second half turn (thus completing the turn), and will take ground to the flank in file.

*COMMENCE  
FIRING.*  
BUGLE-CALL VI.

*On the word (or Sound) COMMENCE FIRING—*

The front-rank men will halt and front, take steady aim, and fire: the rear-rank men moving on. Having fired, the front-rank men will double up to the proper rear of their respective rear-rank men, and will then load on the march [or, they may load at the halt and *then* double up].

The rear-rank men, when the front-rank men's loading is completed, will proceed in like manner.

The loaded men will be responsible for distance and dressing.

\* \* The above directions are equally applicable to firing while *inclining to a flank*, and while *taking ground to a flank in file*.

*ADVANCE* or *RETIRE* given to men inclining to a flank, will indicate that the original direction to front or rear is to be resumed.

On the word (or Sound) *HALT*: the men will halt and front (and, if firing, will kneel).



## No. VII.—*Skirmishers changing Front or Direction.*

(F. E. V., SEC. 8, p. 385.)

[A line of Skirmishers halted, may change front on any two named files placed as a base for the rest to form upon. The change of front may be made at any angle ; but it is not likely to be required to a greater extent than the sixteenth, or (at most) the eighth, of a circle. See page 246.]

### (1) *From the Halt.*

SKIRMISHERS:  
CHANGE FRONT  
TO THE RIGHT  
(or LEFT) ON THE  
TWO CENTRE [or  
ON No. — AND  
No. —] FILES.

D. MARCH.

*On the Caution—*

The Captain will dress the two named files in the required direction.

*On the word MARCH—*

(a) If all the files are to be thrown *forward* on a flank, they will make a half face inwards, and move across (by the shortest way) to their places in the new line: dressing, as they successively halt, on the two base files.

(b) If all the files are to be thrown *back* on either flank, they will make a three-quarters face in the direction of the base files: and will then move across, and (in succession) halt and front as they get to their places in the new line.

(c) If the change of front is on two central files, part of the Company will be thrown for-

ward, as in (a): the remainder will be thrown back, as in (b).

[Recruits should first be taught this movement in *Quick* time, and by separate words of command. Thus, supposing the change of front is to be to the right, on two central files:—the Instructor, after placing the base files, will give *LEFT SUBDIVISION, RIGHT HALF FACE: RIGHT SUBDIVISION, LEFT-ABOUT THREE-QUARTERS FACE. THE WHOLE: Q. MARCH.*]

(2) *On the March.*

[A line of Skirmishers on the march may change their direction gradually, on the same principle as a Company wheeling on a moveable pivot.]

*RIGHT (or LEFT)*  
*WHEEL.*

*BUGLE-CALL X.:*  
*preceded by one G,*  
*or three G's.*

*FORWARD*  
*or*  
*CALL III*  
*(ADVANCE),*  
*or IV*  
*(RETIRE).*

*On the word (or Sound) WHEEL—*

The pivot file will halt: the remainder will circle round it, the front-rank men looking outwards for the dressing, and the rear-rank men keeping the distances from the pivot flank.

*On the word FORWARD (or Bugle-call III. or IV.)—*

The whole line will move on in the new direction.

*N.B.*—When Skirmishers wheel while *retiring*, the proper rear-rank men are responsible for dressing, the proper front-rank men for distance.

No. VIII.—*Relieving Skirmishers.*

For the Movements described in this and the following No., the Company will be formed into Subdivisions, one of which will skirmish while the other acts as a Support. See (2) page 224.

(1) *Relieving halted Skirmishers.***RELIEVE  
SKIRMISHERS.**

The Support will be extended from the \*Halt on its own ground; and will then run up to the line of Skirmishers. [Commander's words: *From the Centre—Extend:* (when extended)—*Advance. Double.*]

The old Skirmishers, on being relieved, will run straight to their rear; and when out of immediate reach of the enemy's fire, the Commander will give *On the Centre—Close*. The †centre file will then halt and front; and the remainder turn inwards into file, and close in the usual manner: the old Skirmishers thus becoming the new Support.

[Should the *ADVANCE* be sounded while the old Skirmishers are in the act of being relieved, they will *remain in the line*, lying down, till the new Skirmishers have gained sufficient distance to their front: and will *then* rise and close.]

(2) *Relieving Skirmishers that are advancing.*

The Support will extend on the march; and the men will then double up to the old Skirmishers, changing into Quick time as they pass

---

\* Or, if completely hidden from the enemy, may be ordered to advance and extended on the March.

† The centre file of a Subdivision is the inner file of its outer Section.

through them. [Commander's words: *From the Centre—Extend*: (when extended)—*Double*.]

The old Skirmishers, as the new pass through them, will lie down and wait till the latter are sufficiently advanced to protect them from immediate fire; they will then rise, close as in (1), and form the Support.

(3) *Relieving Skirmishers that are retiring.*

The Support will halt and front, at a considerable distance in rear of the line of Skirmishers; and will then extend, by word of its Commander: each man, if possible, getting under cover.

When the old Skirmishers arrive within 20 or 30 paces of the new, they will run through them to the rear, till out of immediate reach of the enemy's fire; they will then be ordered to close on the centre, as in (1), and will form the Support.

The new Skirmishers will hold their position until ordered to continue the retreat.

*See No. XIII.*

---

For *Reinforcing Skirmishers*: see p. 254.

No. IX.—*Skirmishers closing on their Support.*

(1) *The Close.*

*CLOSE ON  
SUPPORT.*  
BUGLE-CALL II.

The Skirmishers will rise, face to the right-about, and retire: the inner files of Sections moving in Quick \* time, and opening out, as they move to the rear, so as to clear the front of the Support; the remainder closing on those files, in the usual manner, as they retire.

When at Section distance in rear of the Support, the Sections will turn inwards, advancing [or shouldering] Arms as they turn: and as they meet (in rear of the centre of the Support), will halt and front, order Arms, and stand at ease, without any word of command.

\* The Skirmishers may be directed to move at the double: see Note, p. 225.

(2) *The Close and Alarm.†*

*CLOSE.  
LOOK-OUT FOR  
CAVALRY.*  
BUGLE-CALL II.  
*followed by*  
XI (ALARM).†

The Support will be ordered to advance, and form Sections on the march (see Note). The Skirmishers will move to the rear at the double; closing on the inner files of Sections as in (1), except that the centre files will incline outwards, in order to keep clear of the front of the Support, as they commence retiring.

---

† If the Skirmishers, before they reach the Support, are supposed to be overtaken by Cavalry, the ALARM will be repeated; on which they will at once form (Section) Rallying Squares. The Support—since it consists only of a Subdivision, and therefore cannot form Company Square—will form a Subdivision Rallying Square. See p. 256.

---

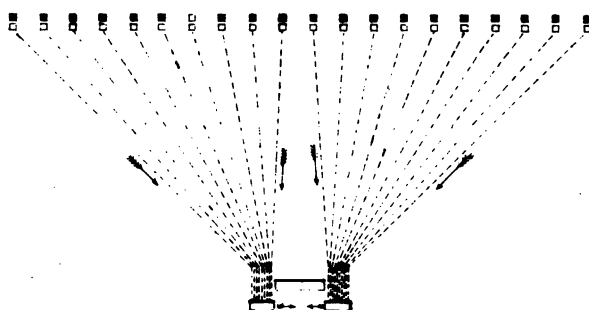
**PART 3. LIGHT DRILL. N° IX.**

---

*Fig. 1.*

**SKIRMISHERS CLOSING ON THEIR SUPPORT.**

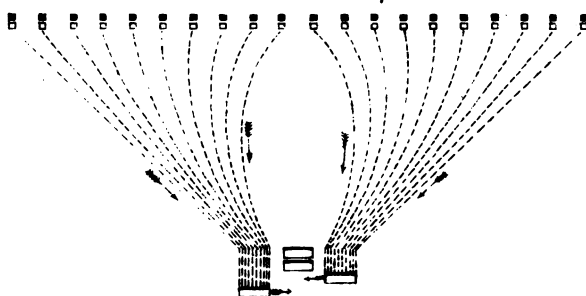
*[The Close.]*



*Fig. 2.*

**CLOSING ON SUPPORT IN PRESENCE OF CAVALRY.**

*[The Close and Alarm.]*





As the Skirmishers approach the Support, the Officer commanding the latter will halt its leading Section. The rear Section of the Support will close on its leading Section and halt; and both Sections, as they come to the halt, will fix bayonets [or swords]; without word of command.

The Skirmishers will turn inwards in rear of, so as to form close Column of Sections with, the Support: fixing bayonets [or swords] as they halt and front.

The Column will then, by command of the senior Officer, prepare for Cavalry as directed at p. 55.

*Note.*—When the Subdivision—*whether it is the Right or Left*—acting as the Support, forms Sections on the march, the Section on the *left* will invariably double in rear of the other. In like manner, the Section that was on the left while skirmishing, will move into Column in rear of the Section that was on the right: those Sections thus passing each other, according to the general rule, left arm to left arm.

---

When the *EXTEND* sounds, the old Support will be ordered by its Commander to *advance* and *extend* from the centre, thus becoming the new Skirmishers; the old Skirmishers will be directed to form Subdivision in support. Or the old Support may extend *from the halt* on its own ground; the old Skirmishers re-forming Subdivision, and retiring to their proper distance as the Support.

*See No. XV.*



No. X.—*Company and Rallying Squares.*

(F. E. V., SEC. 3, p. 382.)

## COMPANY SQUARE.

(a) *From close order.*

A Company Square is formed from *close order* (*i.e.* when the men are not extended, but acting as a Support), precisely as directed in PART I., No. XX., p. 54.

(b) *From extended order.*

[Used in Battalion skirmishing (on the word *LOOK-OUT FOR CAVALRY*, or on the bugle-sound *ALARM*) when Skirmishers—*not* in disorder or scattered—are unexpectedly attacked by Cavalry and unable to reach their Supports. *See* p. 260.]

The men will form on the 2nd Section, which will close on its left file: ordering Arms and fixing bayonets [or swords], independently, as they halt and front in their places in Column.

A Company must also be practised in closing from extended order into close Column of Sections, on *any named file*: the Section in which the named file is, closing on it; the remainder forming on that Section in the usual manner. [If much pressed by Cavalry, the first Section formed may commence firing; and the remaining Sections may form in rear of it, without regard to their numbers, but passing each other left arm to left arm.] Similarly; the men must be accustomed to *extend* from any named file in the Column without previously re-forming Company: *see* p. 228.

---

## THE RALLYING SQUARE.

[Used in Battalion skirmishing (on the *ALARM* being sounded after the *CLOSE* and *ALARM*, or on the *DOUBLE* being sounded after the *ALARM*) when detached Skirmishers, or men of different Companies mixed together in extended order, are overtaken by Cavalry. See pp. 256, 260.]

Rallying Squares will be formed as directed in PART I., No. XXI., p. 57.

When two, or more, Officers are placed by the Drill Instructor as points for the Skirmishers to form on, they should be placed in echelon with each other, so that the fire of no face of either Square may be masked.

---

Company and Rallying Squares will prepare for Cavalry, move (if necessary) in any direction, and re-form Company, as described in PART I., Nos. XX., XXI.

## SECTION II.—BATTALION LIGHT DRILL.

No. XI.—*A Battalion extending in Skirmishing order from Quarter - distance Column.*

(F. E. V., SEC. 10, p. 390.)

(1) *Extending in the usual manner.*

*N.B.*—Both Skirmishers and Supports will be moved out from the Column in *quick* time; except the flank Skirmishers when *three* Companies are ordered to extend, which will be moved out in *double* time.

(a) *A Battalion of 10 Companies extending.*

(Suppose Right in front.)

THE BATTALION  
WILL SKIRMISH.THREE  
COMPANIES:  
*EXTEND.*

The following commands will be given to the Companies that are to form the Skirmishers and Supports:—

By the Captain of No. 2. (Right Skirmishers.)	By the Captain of No. 1. (Centre Skirmishers.)	By the Captain of No. 3. (Left Skirmishers.)
<i>No. 2: Double March. By Sections, Right wheel. — Forward (in echelon); and when clear of the Centre Skirmishers, From the Left — Extend.</i>	<i>No. 1: Quick March. From the Centre — Extend.</i>	<i>No. 3: Double March. By Sections, Left wheel. — Forward (in echelon); and when clear of the Centre Skirmishers, From the Right — Extend.</i>
By the Captain of No. 5. (Right Support.)	By the Captain of No. 4. (Centre Support.)	By the Captain of No. 6. (Left Support.)
<i>No. 5: Quick March. By Sections, Right wheel. — Forward (in echelon); and when in rear of the centre of the Right Skirmishers, Re-form Company. — Forward.</i>	<i>No. 4: Quick March.</i>	<i>No. 6: Quick March. By Sections, Left wheel. — Forward (in echelon); and when in rear of the centre of the Left Skirmishers, Re-form Company. — Forward.</i>

*PART 3. LIGHT DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> XI.*

Fig. 1.  
A BATTALION OF TEN COMPANIES EXTENDED IN SKIRMISHING ORDER FROM QUARTER-DISTANCE COLUMN.

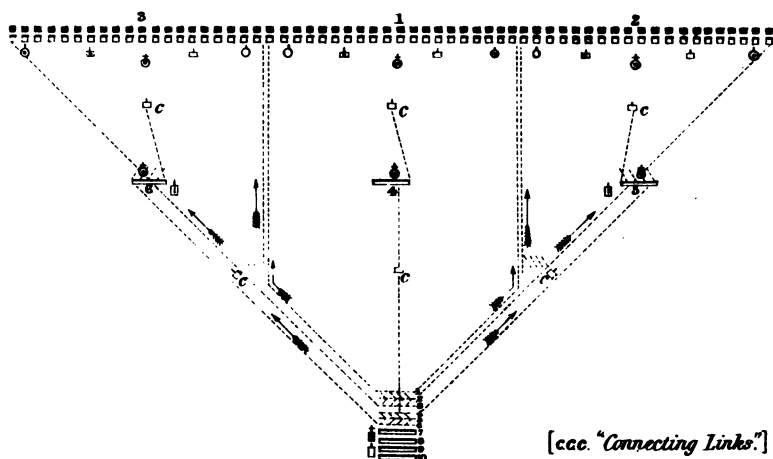
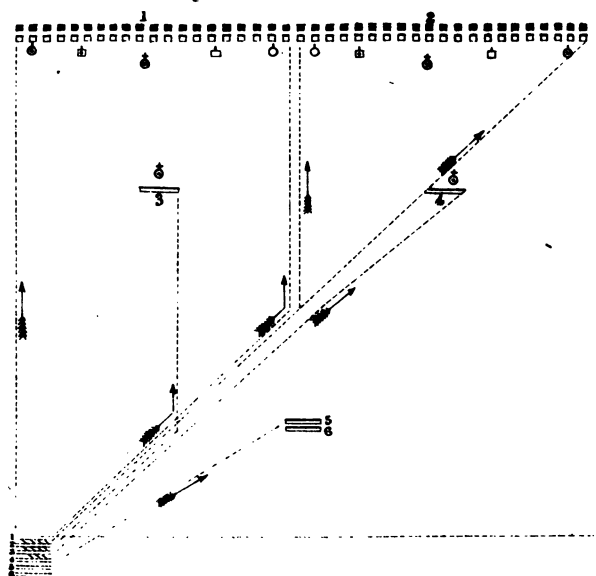


Fig. II.  
A BATTALION OF SIX COMPANIES EXTENDING FROM THE LEFT FROM QUARTER-DISTANCE COLUMN.



Reduced from Field Ex

Vincent Brooks, 1884

## SECTION II.—BATTALION LIGHT DRILL.

No. XI.—*A Battalion extending in Skirmishing order from Quarter - distance Column.*

(F. E. V., SEC. 10, p. 390.)

(1) *Extending in the usual manner.*

N.B.—Both Skirmishers and Supports will be moved out from the Column in *quick* time; except the flank Skirmishers when *three* Companies are ordered to extend, which will be moved out in *double* time.

## (a) A Battalion of 10 Companies extending.

(Suppose Right in front.)

THE BATTALION  
WILL SKIRMISH.THREE  
COMPANIES:  
*EXTEND.*

The following commands will be given to the Companies that are to form the Skirmishers and Supports:—

By the Captain of No. 2. (Right Skirmishers.)	By the Captain of No. 1. (Centre Skirmishers.)	By the Captain of No. 3. (Left Skirmishers.)
No. 2: <i>Double March. By Sections, Right wheel. — Forward</i> (in echelon); and when clear of the Centre Skirmishers, <i>From the Left — Extend.</i>	No. 1: <i>Quick March. From the Centre — Extend.</i>	No. 3: <i>Double March. By Sections, Left wheel. — Forward</i> (in echelon); and when clear of the Centre Skirmishers, <i>From the Right — Extend.</i>
By the Captain of No. 5. (Right Support.)	By the Captain of No. 4. (Centre Support.)	By the Captain of No. 6. (Left Support.)
No. 5: <i>Quick March. By Sections, Right wheel. — Forward</i> (in echelon); and when in rear of the centre of the Right Skirmishers, <i>Re-form Company. — Forward.</i>	No. 4: <i>Quick March.</i>	No. 6: <i>Quick March. By Sections, Left wheel. — Forward</i> (in echelon); and when in rear of the centre of the Left Skirmishers, <i>Re-form Company. — Forward.</i>

PART 3. LIGHT DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> XI.

Fig. 1.

A BATTALION OF TEN COMPANIES EXTENDED IN SKIRMISHING ORDER FROM QUARTER-DISTANCE COLUMN.

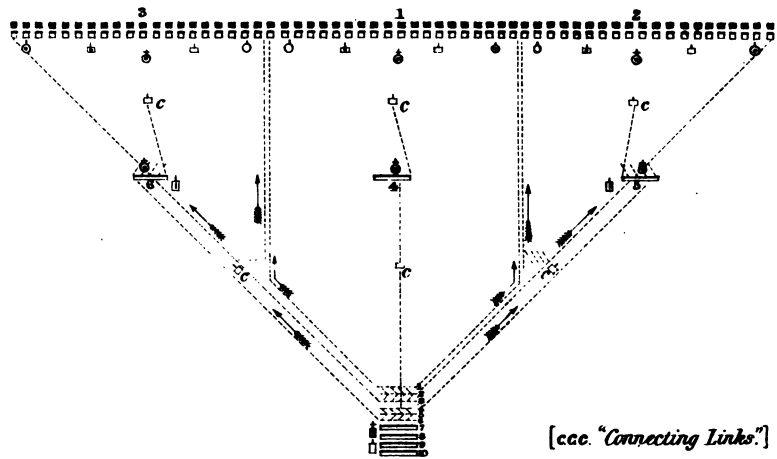
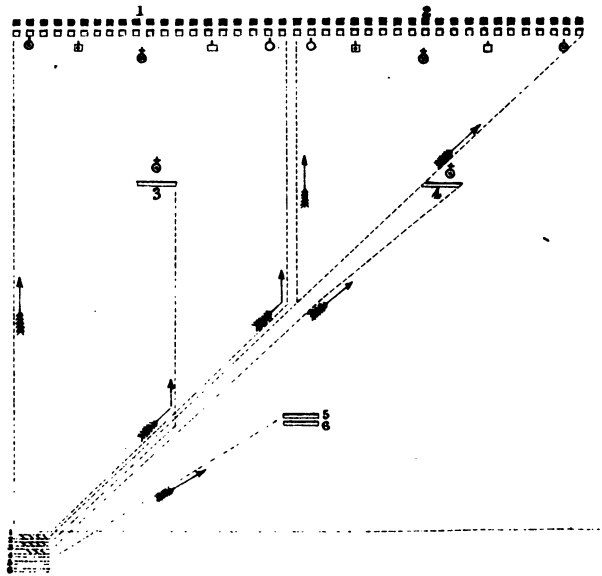


Fig. II.

A BATTALION OF SIX COMPANIES EXTENDING FROM THE LEFT FROM QUARTER-DISTANCE COLUMN.





Nos. 7, 8, 9, and 10 Companies will form the Reserve.

[When *Left* is in front, the Skirmishers and Supports will move out in corresponding order : No. 10 forming the centre, No. 9 the right, No. 8 the left, Skirmishers ; No. 7 the centre, No. 6 the right, No. 5 the left, Support ; the remainder forming the Reserve.]

(b) A Battalion of 8 or 6 Companies extending.

(Suppose Right in front.)

The following commands will be given to the Companies that are to form the Skirmishers and Supports :—

THE BATTALION  
WILL SKIRMISH.  
TWO COMPANIES:  
*EXTEND.*

By the Captain of No. 1. (Right Skirmishers.)	By the Captain of No. 2. (Left Skirmishers.)
<i>No. 1 : Quick March. From the Left—Extend.</i>	<i>No. 2 : Quick March. From the Right—Extend.</i> [The whole will make a half turn to the left, and move on—in double time, but without extending—till clear of the left of No. 1 ; then extend as usual.]
By the Captain of No. 3. (Right Support.)	By the Captain of No. 4. (Left Support.)
Same word as Captain of Right Support in (a).	Same word as Captain of Left Support in (a).

In an eight-company Battalion, Nos. 5, 6, 7, and 8 ; in a six-company Battalion, Nos. 5 and 6 ; will form the Reserve.

[If *Left* is in front, the Companies that are to form the Skirmishers and Supports will move out in corresponding order ; thus :—From an eight-company Battalion, Nos. 8, 7, 6, 5 : from a six-company Battalion, Nos. 6, 5, 4, 3.]

It may occasionally be necessary to order an eight-company Battalion to send out *three* Com-



panies to skirmish ; in which case 2 Companies, only, will form the Reserve.

For directions for Skirmishers *extending, advancing and retiring, inclining to a flank, changing front, &c.* : see pp. 228–237. [Skirmishers should never be required to change front *at right angles* : if it is necessary to protect a flank, fresh Skirmishers will be sent out either from the Supports, Reserve, or main body, as circumstances may require.]

For directions for Supports and Reserve : see pp. 224, 225.

(2) † *Extending to a Flank.*

[When a Battalion of 10 Companies extends from the *left*, whether the Column is Right or Left in front :—The leading Company will form the left, the 2nd Company the centre, the 3rd Company the right, Skirmishers ; the 4th Company forming the left, the 5th the centre, the 6th the right, Support. Similarly, in extending from the *right* : The leading Company will form the right, the 2nd the centre, the 3rd the left, Skirmishers ; the 3 next Companies forming the right, centre, and left, Supports. A Battalion of 8 or 6 Companies will extend in either direction on precisely the same principle.]

Suppose a Battalion of 10 Companies Right in front, extending from the *left* :—

The following commands will be given to the Companies that are to form the Skirmishers and Supports :—

THE BATTALION  
WILL SKIRMISH.  
THREE LEADING  
COMPANIES:  
FROM THE LEFT,  
*EXTEND.*

By the Captain of No. 1. (Left Skirmishers.)	By the Captain of No. 2. (Centre Skirmishers.)	By the Captain of No. 3. (Right Skirmishers.)
<i>No. 1: Quick March. From the Left— Extend.</i>	<i>No. 2: Double March. By Sections, Right wheel. — Forward (in echelon); when clear of the Left Skirmishers, From the Left—Extend.</i>	<i>No. 3: Quick March. By Sections, Right wheel. — Forward (in echelon); when clear of the Centre Skirmishers, From the Left—Extend.</i>

† To cover a Brigade or Division.

By the Captain of No. 4. (Left Support.)	By the Captain of No. 5. (Centre Support.)	By the Captain of No. 6. (Right Support.)
<i>No. 4: Quick March. By Sections, Right wheel. — Forward (in echelon); when in rear of the centre of Left Skirmish- ers, Re-form Com- pany.—Forward.</i>	<i>No. 5: Quick March. By Sections, Right wheel. — Forward (in echelon); when in rear of the centre of Centre Skirmish- ers, Re-form Com- pany.—Forward.</i>	<i>No. 6: Quick March. By Sections, Right wheel. — Forward (in echelon); when in rear of the centre of Right Skirmish- ers, Re-form Com- pany.—Forward.</i>

[When it is more convenient, the outward Supports and Skirmishers may move out in *fours*.]

Nos. 7, 8, 9, and 10, will take ground, by fours, to the right, and form the Reserve.

(3) *Extending with half the Companies Skirmishing, half in Support.*

(a) *Extending from the Centre.*

(Suppose 10 Companies.)

THE BATTALION  
WILL  
SKIRMISH.  
—  
FIVE  
COMPANIES :  
*EXTEND.*

The leading Company will extend from its centre, the 2nd Company will extend on the right of the leading Company, the 3rd on its left; the 4th Company will extend on the extreme right, the 5th on the extreme left.

The Companies of the rear Wing will form Supports for the corresponding Companies of the leading Wing.

[A Battalion of 8 or 6 Companies will extend in a similar manner: except that, in the case of the former, the leading Company will extend from its *left*, the 2nd Company from its *right*.]

(b) *Extending from a Flank.*

THE BATTALION  
WILL  
SKIRMISH.

The Companies of the leading Wing will skirmish: the front Company advancing, and

COMPANIES  
OF THE  
LEADING WING:  
FROM THE  
LEFT.  
(or RIGHT),  
*EXTEND.*

extending from the named flank; the remainder, in succession, extending the line of Skirmishers on the outward flank.

The Companies of the rear Wing will form Supports for the corresponding Companies of the leading Wing, as in (a).

---

*Note to (2) and (3).* When more than a Company and a half are ordered to extend in the same direction, the Commanding Officer may, at his discretion, order the outer Companies to move out in *quick* time; directing the Company of formation, when extended, to halt for the remainder to move up.

---



---

¶ *Flanking Parties.*—When a Company is ordered to protect the flank (suppose the *right*) of a Column, its Commander will give *Form fours : right. Double March :* and when clear of the Column, *Front form Subdivisions.* Having gained sufficient distance to his new front, he will order the rear Subdivision to *Halt, and form Support*, and the front Subdivision to extend so as to cover the flank of the Column and to communicate with the Skirmishers. [A *left* flanking-party would form fours to the left, its Left Subdivision would extend, its Right act as support.] The Skirmishers will move in file parallel to the direction of the Column when it advances or retires; the Support, in fours. When the Column halts, both Skirmishers and Support will halt, and front (outwards).



### PART 3. LIGHT DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> XII.

Fig. 1.

A BATTALION OF SIX COMPANIES EXTENDING IN SKIRMISHING ORDER FROM LINE.

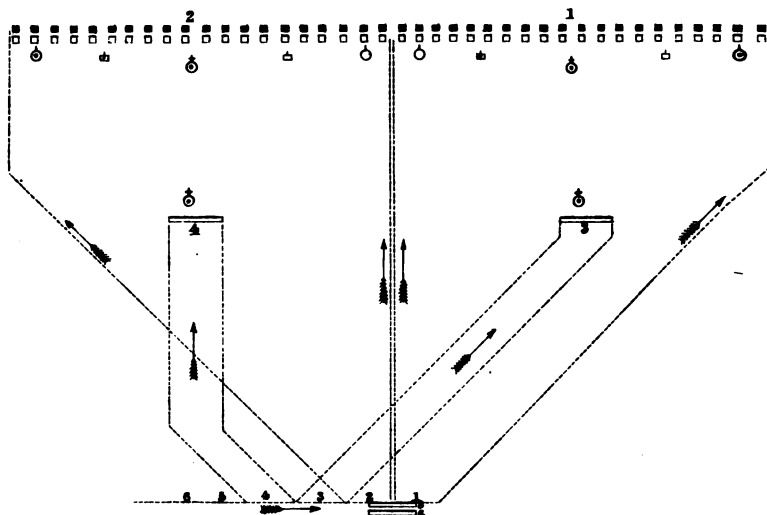
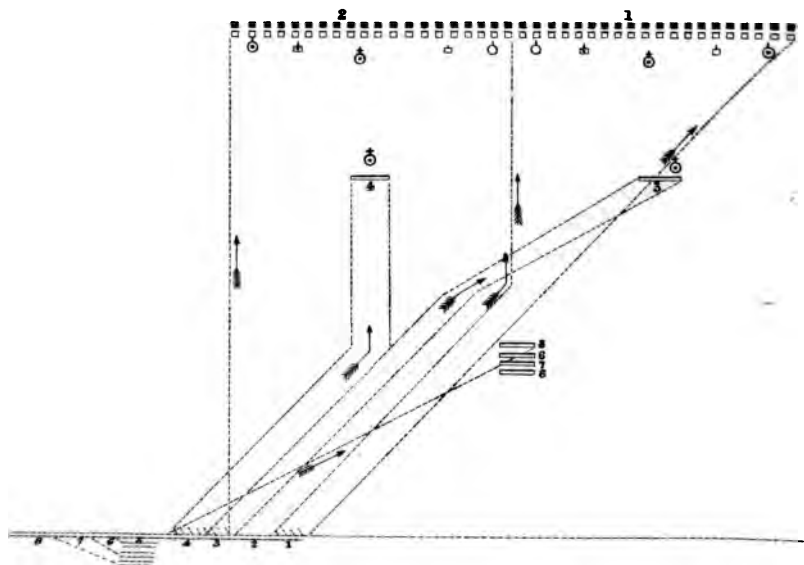


Fig. II.

A BATTALION (OF EIGHT COMPANIES) IN LINE EXTENDING FROM THE LEFT.



*Reduced from Field Ex.*

*Thos. Brooks, del.*

No. XII.—*A Battalion extending in Skirmishing order from Line.*

(F. E. V., Sec. 13, p. 398.)

[When a Battalion is ordered to extend from Line, the Skirmishers may be taken from either flank; the Companies next in order will form the Supports, the remainder the Reserve. A Battalion of 10 Companies may always extend 3 Companies: a Battalion of 8 or 6 Companies should not extend more than 2 Companies if a Reserve is required.]

Suppose a Battalion of 10 Companies: 3 Companies on the *right* ordered to skirmish.

The following commands will be given:—

THE BATTALION  
WILL SKIRMISH.

THREE  
COMPANIES  
ON THE RIGHT:  
FROM THE  
CENTRE,  
*EXTEND.*

By the Captain of No. 1. (Right Skirmishers.)	By the Captain of No. 2. (Centre Skirmishers.)	By the Captain of No. 3. (Left Skirmishers.)
<i>No. 1: Double March. By Sections, Right wheel. — Forward (in echelon); as soon as the Centre Skirmishers are extended, From the Left—Extend.</i>	<i>No. 2: Quick March. From the Centre—Extend.</i>	<i>No. 3: Double March. By Sections, Left wheel. — Forward (in echelon); as soon as the Centre Skirmishers are extended, From the Right—Extend.</i>
By the Captain of No. 4. (Right Support.)	By the Captain of No. 5. (Centre Support.)	By the Captain of No. 6. (Left Support.)
<i>No. 4: Quick March. By Sections, Right wheel. — Forward (in echelon); when in rear of the centre of the Right Skirmishers, Re-form Company. — Forward.</i>	<i>No. 5: Quick March. By Sections, Right wheel. — Forward (in echelon); when in rear of the centre of the Centre Skirmishers, Re-form Company. — Forward.</i>	<i>No. 6: Quick March. [and moves in rear of the centre of the Left Skirmishers].</i>

The remaining Companies will form the Reserve, in quarter-distance Column : moving, by fours, in rear of the centre of the formation.

[When the 3 Companies on the *left* are ordered to skirmish, the extension will be performed on the same principle : Nos. 10, 9, and 8 skirmishing ; Nos. 7, 6, and 5 forming the Supports.]

*N.B.*—The skirmishing Companies may, if necessary, be directed to extend from their *right* or *left*, or from *any named file\**; the Supports and Reserve conforming, as usual, to their movements.

THE BATTALION  
WILL SKIRMISH.

RIGHT (or LEFT)  
WING, FROM  
THE —:  
*EXTEND.*

2. The Battalion may be required to send out *half its Companies* to skirmish.\* In this case, either Wing may be extended from its right, left, or centre, or from any named file: the Companies of the remaining Wing forming Supports as above described.

[If, when the Battalion is extended as above, or with *all* its Companies skirmishing, the *ASSEMBLE* is sounded :—The whole of the extended Companies will move by the shortest way, and as quickly as possible, to the rear of the Line, the Supports (if any) in fours, the Skirmishers independently, passing through the intervals between Battalions : when in rear of the Line, they will move towards their Commanding Officer, and form quarter-distance Column wherever he may direct : or, if part of the Battalion (not having been extended) is already formed, they will form in rear of it. (F. E., p. 418.)]

#### ¶ *Skirmishers covering the movements of a Battalion*

The *Field Exercise*,—apparently on the principle that the movements of Skirmishers, which must

\* As when a Battalion on the flank of a Brigade or Division is ordered to cover the rest of the Line.

greatly depend on the nature of the ground and other circumstances, are best left to the judgment of their Officers,—gives no specific directions for Skirmishers thrown out to cover a Battalion in its changes of position. For purposes of Drill, however, a certain amount of detail on that point would appear desirable ; and accordingly the following rules, abridged and slightly modified from *Section 19* of Mitchell's *Light Drill* (8th Edition), are here subjoined :—

1. When a Battalion in Line is ordered to *advance* covered by either of its flank Companies, the Commander of the named Company will give it the word *No. — : Double March* ; and having advanced 20 paces, will order it to extend from its outward flank at such distances as to overlap the opposite flank of the Battalion : continuing to advance till ordered to halt.

If *both* the flank Companies are ordered to cover the advance, the Commander of each will move it out as above directed ; but will extend from such file as will enable the Skirmishers to communicate in the centre, and cover the flanks of the Line.

[When the Battalion is ordered to *retire* covered as above, the named Company (or Companies) should be extended before the retreat in Line commences.]

2. When a Battalion in Line is ordered to *change front* covered by either of its flank Companies, the named Company, before extending, will be wheeled into the required direction.

If the Battalion changes position while covered by Skirmishers, they will (if not called in) conform to its movements, by marching in file and wheeling to the right or left as the case may be.

3. If the Battalion is ordered to *advance in Direct Echelon* from either flank, covered by the Company on that flank :—The Commander of the named Company will immediately move it out, and extend it (from its outward flank) on the march.

If the Echelon, while on the march, is wheeled to either flank, the *new leading* Company will extend (from its outward flank) on the march : the old Skirmishers turning inwards



into file, and forming a flanking party; or, if called in, resuming their proper place in the Echelon.

[Should the Battalion be ordered to form *Square*, the Skirmishers, if called in, will form part of the rear face: if not called in, will form Company, or Rallying, Square.]

4. When a Battalion is (in order to pass a defile) directed to *advance in Double Column from the Centre*, covered by the two flank Subdivisions:—The two named Subdivisions will be ordered by their respective Commanders to extend in the usual way; and on arriving at the beginning of whatever impediment may form the defile, will lie down and continue firing till their respective inner Subdivisions (which will move out, run through the defile, and then extend) cloud their front. The Column having passed the defile, the 2 flank Subdivision Skirmishers will form in its rear.

If the Battalion is to *retire* in Double Column, covered as above:—The flank Subdivisions will extend from their outward flanks, as they stand: completing their extension gradually (towards the inner flank) as each Subdivision of their Wing, in its turn, faces about previous to retiring. Compare No. XVIII.

---

*Note.*—In all the foregoing cases the future Skirmishers (unless *Riflemen*) will, before being moved out, be directed to order Arms, and unfix bayonets. The Skirmishers when *recalled* (by the Bugle-call *ASSEMBLE*), will clear the front of the Battalion as rapidly as possible; moving by the shortest way to their place in Line.

No. XIII.—*Relieving Skirmishers.*

(F. E. V., Sec. 14, p. 404.)

**RELIEVE  
SKIRMISHERS.**

The directions given in No. VIII., for Relieving Skirmishers, apply equally to the Skirmishers, and their respective Supports, in the Light Drill of a Battalion.

*See Note, next page.*

---

If the Skirmishers, when relieved, find that fresh Supports have been sent out from the Reserve, they will form in rear of such fresh Supports, and then proceed to join the Reserve; forming fours inwards and moving in. Quick time.

---

Fresh Companies may, at any time, be sent out from the Reserve to *relieve the Supports*. When this is the case, the Companies forming the new Supports will take up their position immediately in front of the old; the latter will then join the Reserve as above directed.

No. XIV.—*Reinforcing a Line of Skirmishers, or Extending it to a Flank.*

(F. E. V., SEC. 15, p. 406.)

**REINFORCE  
SKIRMISHERS.**

(1) *Reinforcing Skirmishers* :

The Supports (or part of them) will be thrown forward as in Relieving Skirmishers; but on joining the line of Skirmishers, will remain, and skirmish, in it; the distances being divided.

If the Skirmishers are to be reinforced *during a retreat*, the Supports will be ordered to halt, front, and extend (from the halt). When the retiring Skirmishers reach their reinforcements, they will halt with them until again ordered to retire.

*Note.*—The Commander of each Support, when he brings it up to the Skirmishers, must call out that he is come to *relieve* or *reinforce* them, as the case may be; in order that their Commanders may know how to act.

(2) \**Extending Skirmishers to a Flank.*

When it is required to prolong a line of Skirmishers, without weakening it, to a flank:—The Commander of the Support nearest the named flank, if *advancing*, will move it (in echelon of Sections, at the double) clear of the Skirmishers' outer flank, and will then extend it from its inner flank: the extension being

---

\* Or, fresh Skirmishers with Supports of equal strength may be extended in rear, and then be ordered to double up and join the general line.

completed, he will double his men up in line with the old Skirmishers. A fresh Support will be at once sent out from the Reserve.\*

If *retiring*, the Support will be moved (in Column of Sections, at quick time) clear of the Skirmishers ; and then extended, from the halt, from its inner flank : retiring with the old Skirmishers when they come up.

---

When any portion of a line of Skirmishers is *called in*, they will retire in the same manner as when relieved (*see* No. XIII.) : the remaining Skirmishers dividing the space left by those who have retired.

---

\* No Support ought ever to be extended unless another is ready to take its place.

No. XV.—*Skirmishers closing on their Supports.*

(F. E. V., SEC. 17, p. 408.)

(1) *The Close.*

*CLOSE ON  
SUPPORTS.*  
BUGLE-CALL II.

The Skirmishers and Supports respectively will proceed as directed in No. IX. (1): substituting the word 'Subdivisions' for 'Sections'.

(2) *The Close and Alarm.*

*CLOSE.*  
*LOOK-OUT FOR  
CAVALRY.*  
BUGLE-CALL II.  
*followed by*  
XI. (ALARM).\*

The Skirmishers and Supports respectively will proceed as explained in No. IX. (2): substituting the word 'Subdivisions' for 'Sections'. Each close Column of Subdivisions will prepare for Cavalry in precisely the same manner as a close Column of Sections: *see* p. 55.

\* [If the Skirmishers, before they reach their Supports, are supposed to be overtaken by Cavalry—which, at Drill, will be signified by the *ALARM* being *repeated*—they will at once form Rallying Squares; each Support, at the same time, forming Company Square. *See* pp. 240, 243.]

*Note.*—In this formation, the Centre and Left Squares (or, when only two Companies are skirmishing, the Left Square) should—if in line—advance into echelon.

The Reserve, when the *ALARM* sounds, will be ordered by its Commander to advance, form four-deep on the march, close on the centre, and form Square (as directed at p. 175 for a Double Column of 8 or 6 Companies).

---

When the *EXTEND* sounds, the old Supports will be directed by their respective Commanders to

*advance* and *extend* from the centre (or from such file as will enable them to occupy the ground), thus becoming the new Skirmishers: the old Skirmishers will form Companies, and become the new Supports. If the [centre and] left Square[s] have advanced into echelon (*see* Note on preceding page): the new [centre and] right Skirmishers, as soon as extended, will be moved up in line with the new left Skirmishers; and the new [centre and] right Support[s], having formed Company, will be moved up in line with the new left Support.

If necessary, the old Supports may extend *from the halt*, on their own ground: the old Skirmishers re-forming Companies, and retiring to their proper distances as Supports.

---

\* \* For Skirmishers moving in on their Supports when both having been formed *separately* into close Columns of Sections: *see* Note, p. 262.

No. XVI.—*Skirmishers and Supports closing on the Reserve.*

(F. E. V., SEC. 18, p. 414.)

(1) *Independently: from extended order.*

ASSEMBLE ON  
THE RESERVE.

BUGLE-CALL  
VIII  
(ASSEMBLE).

The Supports will form fours inwards; retire, in Double time, by the shortest lines; and form at quarter distance in rear of the Reserve: by word of their respective Commanders.

[The commands will be: for the Right Support, *Form fours: left. Left wheel: Double March.—Right wheel* (into Column); and when in position, *Halt, front: dress. Fix bayonets†*; for the Left Support, *Form fours: right. Right wheel: Double March.—Left wheel.—Halt, front: dress. Fix bayonets†*. When there are 3 Supports, the centre one will be ordered to form fours *right*, then to wheel to the right, and will move into Column by wheeling to the left.‡]

The Skirmishers will rise, face to the right-about, and retire in Double time; each Company closing on its centre as it goes to the rear. As soon as each Company is closed, its Commander will place himself on its inward flank; lead on to, and retire to quarter-distance beyond, the flank of the rear Company of the Reserve; and will then give *Form fours: right* (or *left* †).—*Halt, front: dress. Fix bayonets†*.

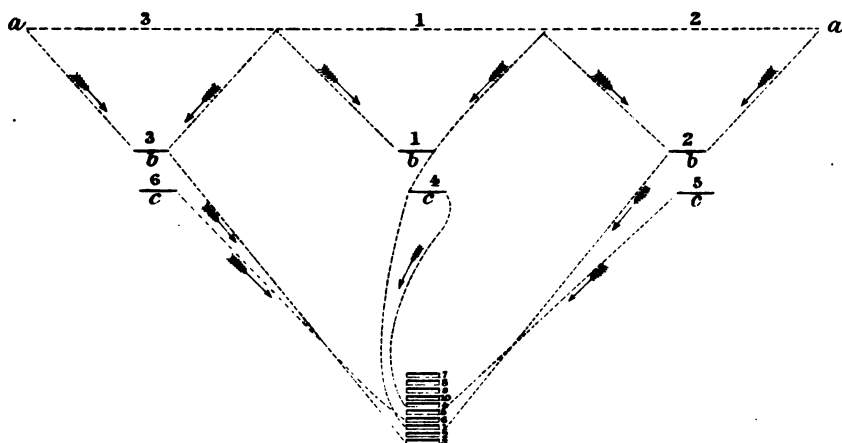
The Companies will take their places in rear of the Reserve, as they arrive, without reference to their numbers: if two Companies from the oppo-

† The men, after fixing bayonets [*Riflemen*, after correcting their dressing], will remain with ordered Arms, at Attention.

‡ When three Companies are skirmishing, the centre Support and Skirmishers will, in moving into Column, pass round the left of the Reserve.

**PART 3. LIGHT DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> XVI.**

**SKIRMISHERS AND SUPPORTS (OF A BATTALION OF 10 COMPANIES)  
CLOSING, INDEPENDENTLY, ON THE RESERVE.**



- a. a. Original position of Skirmishers.*  
*b. b. b. Skirmishers after closing on their centres.*  
*c. c. c. Supports, before forming fours.*





site flanks *meet*, they will pass each other, according to the general rule, left arm to left arm. In the presence of Cavalry, Supports should always be allowed to wait for their Skirmishers before moving into the Reserve.

*Note.*—If the Skirmishers have been reinforced or have lost their order, they will double to the rear independently and form Companies on their Coverers in rear of the Reserve. Should any of the Companies, while assembling, be attacked by Cavalry—which, at Drill, will be signified by the Bugle-call *ALARM*—they will at once form Company Squares, as directed in No. XVII.

(2) *Together : when closed as described in No. XV.*

*ASSEMBLE ON  
THE RESERVE.*

BUGLE-CALL  
VIII  
(ASSEMBLE).

When the Skirmishers have closed in rear of their respective Supports, and both are required to close on the Reserve, each Support will move with its Skirmishers into the Reserve precisely as directed in (1) for the *Supports*. The necessary commands will be given by the senior Captain of the two Companies, except the words "*Halt, front : dress. Fix bayonets*", which each Company will receive from its own Commander.

*N.B.*—Should four Companies coming from opposite flanks *meet*, the two from the right will form in front of those from the left.

*The Reserve.*—On the command *ASSEMBLE ON THE RESERVE* (or Bugle-call VIII.): the Reserve—having, if armed with the long rifle, been ordered to *Fix bayonets*—will stand at Attention, with ordered Arms.

\* \* For a *Battalion* covering the front of a Line, with half its Companies skirmishing and the other half in support, *closing in rear of the Line*: see page 250.

No. XVII.—*The Alarm (or Look-out for Cavalry).*

(F. E. V., Sec. 16, p. 407.)

[When Skirmishers *unexpectedly* attacked by Cavalry, are unable to reach their Supports.]

*LOOK-OUT FOR  
CAVALRY.*

BUGLE-CALL XI.  
(ALARM).†

The Skirmishers will immediately, without any word from their Commanders, run into close Columns of Sections (*see* No. X(b), p. 242); and will then be ordered to prepare for Cavalry. [Commanders' words: *Prepare for Cavalry: Ready.*]

† If the Skirmishers are in disorder or scattered, they will—instead of forming close Columns of Sections—form Rallying Squares (*see* p. 243): running to the nearest Officer standing as a rallying point, whether he belongs to their own Company or not. This will be signified, at Drill, by the *DOUBLE* being sounded after the *ALARM*.

The Supports will form close Columns of Sections, and advance: by command of their respective Captains.

*See Note, p. 262.*

The Reserve will advance; the Companies forming four-deep on the march, and closing on their centre: by word of the Commanding Officer.

CALL VI.

On the Sound *COMMENCE FIRING*, signifying the approach of the Cavalry:—

The Commanders of the Skirmishers will give the firing words: *see* APPENDIX I.

The Commanders of the Supports will give

**PART 3. LIGHT DRILL. N<sup>o</sup> XVII.**

FORMATION OF A BATTALION OF 10 COMPANIES (Fig.1).  
AND 6 COMPANIES (Fig.2), AFTER THE ALARM HAS BEEN SOUNDED.

Fig.1.

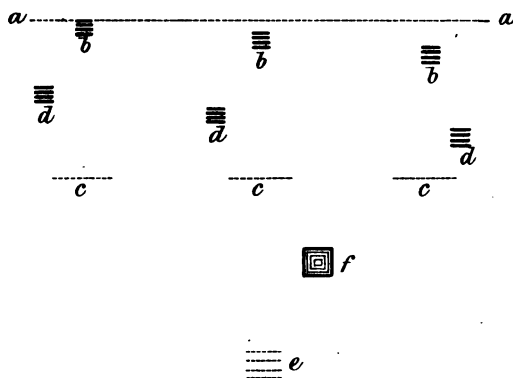
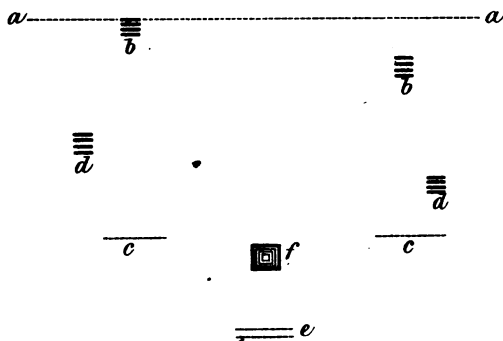


Fig. 2.



*a. a. Original position of Skirmishers.  
c. c. c. ditto of Supports.  
e. ditto of Reserve.*

*b. b. b. Skirmishers' Columns placed  
in echelon.  
d. d. d. Supports' ditto.  
f. Reserve, having formed Square.*



*Halt. Prepare for Cavalry: Ready:* and the firing words.

The Reserve, if consisting of 4 Companies, will get the word *On the leading Company: Form Square. Subdivisions outwards:* if consisting of 2 Companies, *Halt. No.* — [the rear Company]: *Right-about face:* from the Commanding Officer. In the former case, the leading Company of the Column will be ordered to '*Halt*', and the rear Company (when closed up) to '*Halt. Right-about face*', by its Captain: in the latter case, when the rear Company has faced about, the flanks of both Companies will be dressed back till they meet, forming an oval: in either case, the Square, when formed, will be ordered (by the Commanding Officer) to *Prepare for Cavalry*.

The following rules will be observed by the Captains of the Skirmishers and Supports respectively, in moving their Squares—should they happen to be formed exactly in line, or one behind another—into echelon, so as to protect each other mutually by their fire:—

1. The Skirmishers' Squares will look only to each other: and if in line, the [centre and] right Square[s] will retire into echelon, the *left* standing fast.

2. The Supports will move into echelon not only with each other but also with the Skirmishers' Squares. As regards their relative position with each other, the [centre\* and] left\* Support[s] should advance into echelon, either by continuing to move on after the right has halted, or by moving to the front at the

---

\* These instructions will easily be remembered, if it is borne in mind that each Support moves up towards its own Skirmishers.

double : as regards their position with respect to the Skirmishers' Squares, the right and left Supports will take ground outwards, the centre Support (if any) to the left.

The Reserve, if 3 Companies are skirmishing, will incline to the right, to clear the centre Support : if 2 Companies, will move straight to its front.

---

When the *EXTEND* sounds, the Skirmishers will extend (from the files on which they closed) : by word of their Captains. The Supports (after re-forming Companies), and the Reserve (after re-forming Column), will fall back to their former places : or, if the Skirmishers are about to advance, may lie down till at a sufficient distance from the front.

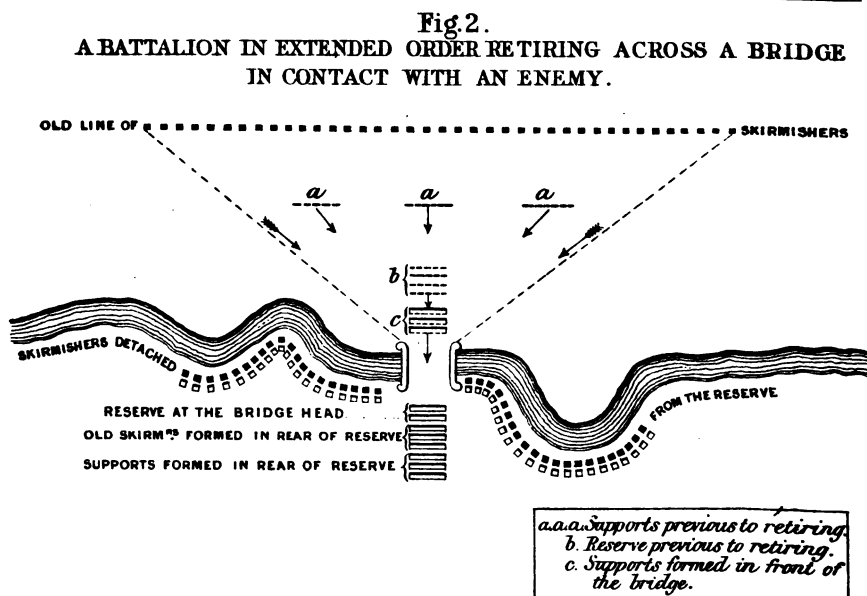
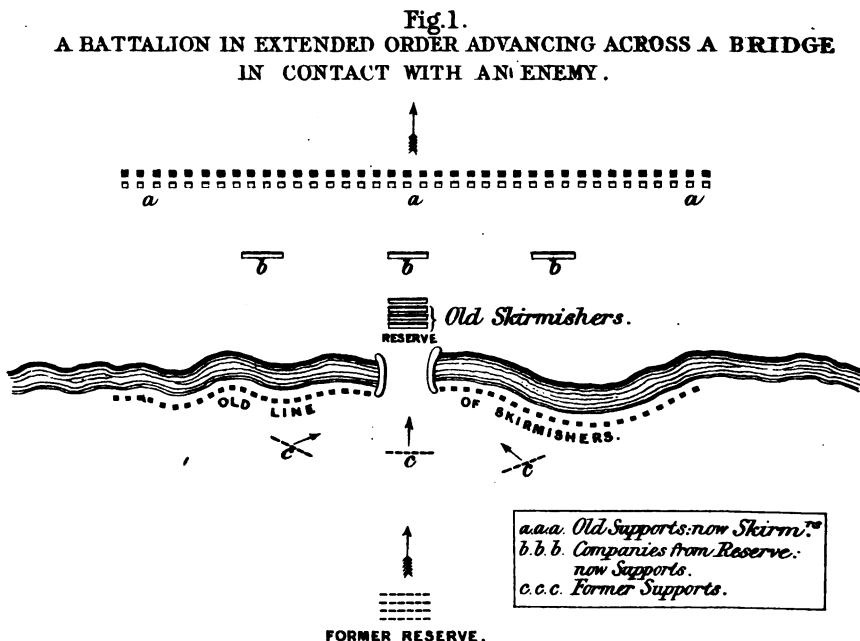
---

*Note.*—When the Skirmishers and Supports have been formed separately into close Columns of Sections, as above described, and there is time for the former to move in on the latter, the word *ON THE SUPPORTS CLOSE* (or Bugle-call II.) will be given. The Supports will then be ordered to *advance*, and the Skirmishers' Columns to *retire* ; the latter forming on whichever flank of the former happens to be nearest to them. Each two Companies will then (by command of the senior Officer) prepare for Cavalry, as a single Company in close Column of Sections ; forming one Square.





**PART 3. LIGHT DRILL. N° XVIII.**



*Reduced from Field Ex.*

*Vincent Brooks, lith.*

No. XVIII.—*Passing a Bridge, or short Defile, in contact with an Enemy.*

(F. E. V., SEC. 20, p. 423.)

(a) *Advancing,*

1. The Skirmishers, on reaching the bank of the river (or the beginning of whatever other impediment may form the defile), will—when the flanks cannot be gained—lie down, cover themselves, and keep up their fire till clouded, in succession, by the new line of Skirmishers (*see* 2). They will then, by word of their respective Commanders, close to their inner flanks; and, having passed over the bridge (or through the defile), will assemble in rear of the Reserve.

2. As the Supports approach the bridge (or defile), they will close in rear of the one that happens to be opposite to it; and, thus formed in close \*Column and supported by the Reserve, will charge and force the passage with the bayonet. The Supports and Reserve having both passed the bridge (or defile), the former will gradually extend from their centre, and take up the fire.

3. The Reserve, having assisted the Supports to force the bridge (or defile), will hold possession of it till the latter have completed their extension as above directed. It will then send out fresh Supports; the old Skirmishers forming, as already stated, in its rear.

---

\* Whether the Column is one of Companies or Subdivisions, will necessarily depend on the breadth of the bridge (or defile).

The whole will then move forward according to the original formation.

(b) *Retiring.*

1. The Reserve will first pass the bridge (or defile); take post at the bridge-head (or outlet of the defile); and immediately detach parties to both flanks to line the bank of the river (or edge of the defile), in extended order. These new Skirmishers will commence firing as soon as their front is clear.

2. The Supports will close, as directed in (a), in the proper rear of the one which is opposite the bridge; and will there halt, in compact order and facing to their proper front, till the old line of Skirmishers is withdrawn. The column will then face about, cross the bridge, and form in the proper rear of the Reserve.

3. The (old) Skirmishers, when still at some distance from the bridge, will begin inclining (inwards) towards it; keeping up the fire, as usual. On approaching the bridge, they will run briskly over it—those in the centre being the last to cross—and will form in the proper rear of the Reserve.

If the retreat is to be continued, Supports for the new Skirmishers will be thrown out from the Column when it has retired to the proper distance. The remainder (forming the new Reserve) having gained their proper distance from the new Supports, the whole will retire according to their original formation.

## ADVANCED AND REAR GUARDS, AND PIQUETS.

### ¶ 1. ADVANCED AND REAR GUARDS.

#### (a) *Advanced Guards.*

Advanced Guards are formed in front of a Column, or of the Columns of an army, for the purpose of feeling the way through a country : to cover and conceal the movements of the main body ; to gain intelligence of the enemy's situation, watch his movements, and give such timely notice of his vicinity or approach as will enable the main body to prepare either for attack or defence. The strength and composition of Advanced Guards will necessarily depend on a variety of circumstances appreciable only on the spot.

An Advanced Guard on a *plain* is simply a line of Skirmishers with Supports, and—if far distant from the main body—with a Reserve.

When a Column is marching along a *road*, the Advanced Guard will consist of one or more Companies divided into 4 equal parts or \*sections, of which the two rear will form the Reserve in †front of the Column ; the 2nd from the front will form a Support 240 paces in front of the Reserve ; the leading one will be 120 paces in front of the 2nd, detaching a Corporal and two files 120 paces to its front, and two files 120 paces (diagonally) to each of its flanks.

---

\* If the Advanced Guard consists of one Company, each of these parts will be a *Section*; if of 2 Companies, a *Subdivision*; if of 4 Companies, a *Company*. In the first case, the Captain will take command of the 2 rear Sections, the Ensign of the next, the Lieutenant of the leading Section, of the Company :—in the second case, the Captain of the leading Company will command its advanced, the Lieutenant its rear, Subdivision ; the rear Company (Reserve) being commanded by its Captain :—in the third case, each of the 4 Companies will, of course, be under the command of its Captain.

† The distance between the Reserve and the head of the Column will be regulated by circumstances : it will usually be 600 paces by day, 350 by night.

When the Guard is to consist of *one* Company,—which, unless otherwise directed, will be the leading one of the Column,—the Company will be drawn up, by its Captain, in column of Sections in front of the Column [*Right (or Left) Section to the front. Remaining Sections : On the move, right (or left) wheel, &c.*] before he proceeds to march off the different parties, which he will do as follows :—

1. \* *Nos. 1 and 2 files from the right of No. 1 Section, with a Corporal : advanced Party.—Advance.*

(Interval of 60 paces.)

2. \* *Nos. 3 and 4 files : Right flanking Party.* } *Advance.*  
       \* *Nos. 5 and 6 files : Left flanking Party.* }

(Interval of 60 paces.)

3. *Remainder of 1st Section.—Advance.*

(Interval of 60 paces.)

4. *Right file of No. 2 Section : connecting file.—Advance.*

(Interval of 60 paces.)

5. *Remainder of 2nd Section : Support.—Advance.*

(Interval of 120 paces.)

6. *Right file of No. 3 Section : connecting file.—Advance.*

(Interval of 120 paces.)

7. *Stand fast the left file of No. 4 Section. Nos. 3 and 4 Sections, Reserve :—Advance.*

*N.B.*—If the Column is Left in front, the leading Company will form Column of Sections Left in front; the formation of the Advanced Guard commencing from the left of the leading Section.

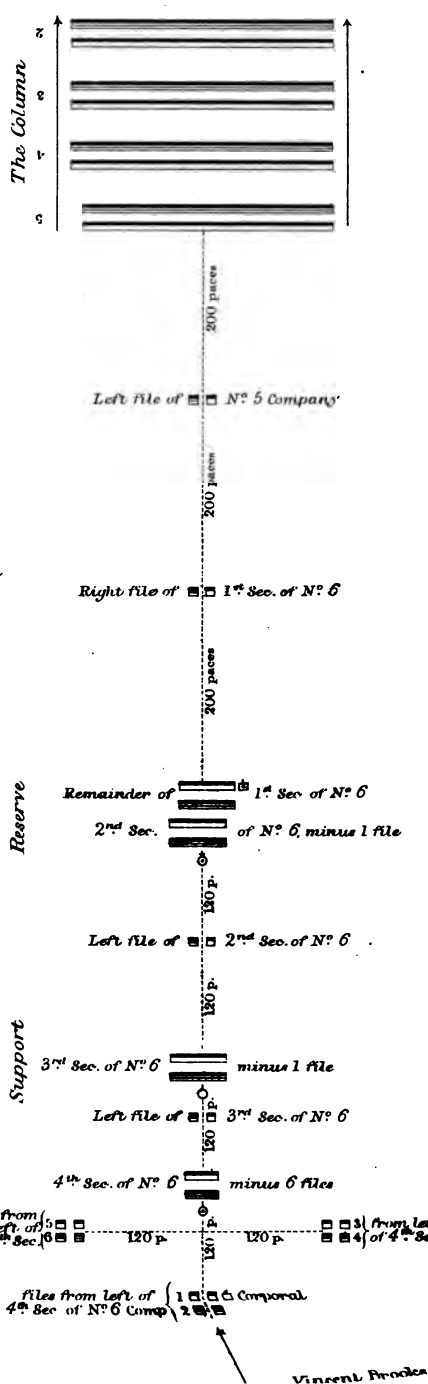
It is impossible to give specific rules for the conduct of an Advanced Guard in all the various circumstances in which it may be placed: the following instructions will provide for the cases of most frequent occurrence :—

1. *On approaching a Defile or Hollow-way.*—The advanced double file will halt till the flanking parties have occupied the heights on either side :

---

\* A weak Company may send on only one file and a Corporal in front, and one file on each flank.

*A Rear Guard.*





it will then, if no enemy is \*signalled, divide; one file and the Corporal moving on, the other file following midway between them and the leading Section†. The other parties, in succession, will follow: each keeping the preceding one in view; files being detached if necessary. The flanking files on the heights will continue in advance of the Corporal's advanced file till the defile is passed; when they will gradually fall back to their former places. The whole Guard will then move forward in its original formation.

2. *On approaching a Hill.*—The advanced double file will halt while the flanking parties move cautiously, in opposite directions, round the base: one file will then ascend the hill (creeping up, when near the top, so as not to show itself), and—having made its observations from behind the brow of the hill—will signal the presence or absence of the enemy. All heights (such as a church-tower, mound, &c.) commanding a view of the surrounding country, should be ascended by the advanced files or patrols.

3. *On approaching a Village, Wood, &c.*—The Reserve and advanced parties will halt, out of range of musketry; while strong flanking parties are sent round the outskirts to threaten the rear. The Corporal's party may then move on in single files at considerable intervals, followed by as many files from the Support as may seem expedient. If no enemy is discovered, the Supports and Reserve will move forward.

It is a general rule that the flanks of every object capable of affording cover should be turned, and its rear threatened, before it is felt in front; and that all bogs, &c., should be carefully examined before they are passed; lest a concealed enemy should be left in rear.

4. *Passing a Bridge.*—The leading double file will first pass over: the flanking files, on approaching the bridge, will incline inwards, cross over it, and then turn outwards into their former positions. The leading Section, on reaching the bridge, will halt,—sending forward a file to communicate with the advanced party,—till the Support comes up, when it will move on. The Support will, in like manner, hold the bridge till the arrival of the Reserve; the Reserve, till the arrival of the main body.

---

\* *Signals.*—One man of the leading file holding up his cap on the muzzle of his rifle, will signify that a small body of the enemy is in sight; both men so holding up their caps, that he is near in force; a rifle held up horizontally will mean that no enemy is in sight.

† It should be recollected that, in speaking of an Advanced or Rear Guard, this word may signify either a Section, Subdivision, or Company.



5. *Conduct in case of Attack.*—If the front of the Advanced Guard is attacked, the leading files will immediately fall back on the advanced Section which will extend, reinforced by the Support. The commanding Officer of the Guard will then either order the Reserve to move up and reinforce the Support, or the latter to fall back on the former, as he may judge best: his great object being to give the Column time to prepare for the enemy, without unnecessarily exposing his own men. If the Guard is attacked *on a flank*, the Sections—before extending—will wheel up to the flank attacked, as circumstances may require.

*N.B.*—No Advanced Guard or detached party of any kind, after dislodging the enemy from a position, should ever be allowed to advance until perfectly re-formed; nor, when re-formed, without orders from the rear.

- ¶ *Patroles.*—A Patrole (which may consist of a Subaltern party, a Serjeant and 12, or a Corporal and 6, according to circumstances) is a party detached from an Advanced Guard to examine all houses, enclosures, &c., too distant to be inspected by the advanced party or flanking files. The precautionary instructions above given for advanced files apply equally to Patroles. A Patrole should always, if possible, avoid committing itself in action.

---

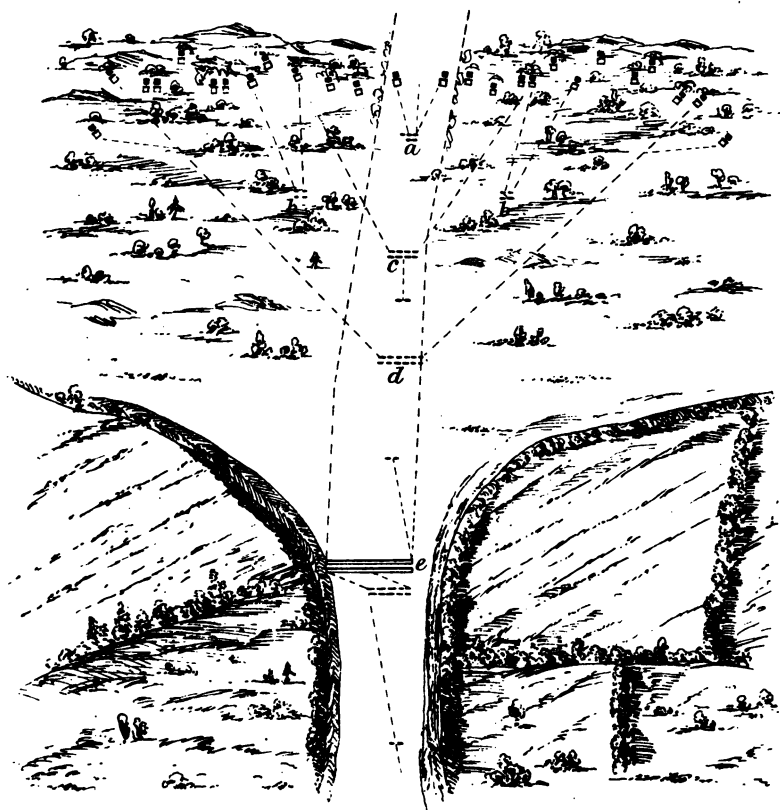
[*An Advanced Guard breaking into Skirmishing order.*—When the leading files of an Advanced Guard on a road come out on a *plain*, they will halt and lie down: the flanking files moving up and lying down with them at their usual distances of 100 yards. The remainder of the leading Section, as it comes up, will extend from its centre: the 2nd Section will also extend from its centre and reinforce the leading Section. The Skirmishers thus formed will advance, correcting their distances from the centre on the march: the Reserve will form Subdivision (or Company), and act as a support to the Skirmishers.

An Advanced Guard, thus extended, may resume its original formation by the leading files moving on, and the remainder halting till they have gained their proper distances and then following on in succession; the remainder of the 1st and 2nd Sections closing on their centres.]

---

*PART 3. LIGHT DRILL. Advanced & Rear Guards.*

**AN ADVANCED GUARD COMING OUT ON A PLAIN  
AND EXTENDING.**



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><i>a. Advanced party.</i><br/> <i>b.b. Flanking files.</i><br/> <i>c. Advanced Section.</i><br/> <i>d. Support.</i><br/> <i>e. Reserve.</i></p> | <p><i>before</i><br/> <i>extend?</i></p> |
|--|--|

Reduced from Field Ex.

Vincent Brooks lith.

1. The first part of the document is a list of names and titles, including the names of the authors and the titles of the works.

(b) *Rear Guards.*

The object of a Rear Guard is to cover a retreating Column from any sudden attack in flank or rear ; and also to prevent straggling. The Guard will be formed in precisely the same manner as an Advanced Guard, only facing to the rear : it will therefore, when moving, be rear rank in front ; and when halted and fronted, will be facing to the proper rear.

On a *plain*, a Rear—like an Advanced—Guard will be simply a line of Skirmishers (with Supports and, if necessary, a Reserve) extended previous to the retreat.

On a *road*, the Company (or Companies) of which the Rear Guard is to consist having been countermarched, the different parties will be marched off as in (a) : if the main body is right in front the Rear Guard will be left in front, and *vice versa*. If no enemy is near, and the Column is *on the march*, the Guard may be formed by the several parties—instead of moving off, after countermarching, to their proper distances—facing about in succession, and marching off in rear of the Column as it gains the proper distances from them.

The object of a Rear Guard being to secure the retreat from interruption, its resistance should usually cease when that point is gained : but in the event of a close pursuit, every copse, hedge-row, or defile should be obstinately defended. In the latter case it will be desirable for the main body to halt a detachment at any bridge or defile it may have passed, to give the Rear Guard such support as it may require.

While the Rear Guard is disputing any point, the *flanking parties* must be on the alert to frustrate any attempt by the enemy to turn its flanks.

---

Every Advanced and Rear Guard should be adequately provided with axes and entrenching tools.

*See Field Ex., pp. 424-435.*

---

## ¶ 2. PIQUETS AND THEIR SENTRIES.

All armies, or smaller bodies of troops, in camp or bivouac, should be protected by Piquets, which are of two descriptions—*Outlying* and *Inlying*.

The Inlying Piquet usually remains in camp, accoutred, ready to turn out at a moment's warning; having sentries advantageously posted for observing any alarm in front; and communicating (when necessary), by patrols, with the advanced posts.

The Outlying Piquet is thrown forward a considerable distance in front of the camp, posted with a complete chain of double sentries in front (on the same principle that light troops are extended to cover a Line): when near the main body, supports only will be necessary in rear of the line of sentries; when distant, a reserve also will be required. The principal duties of an Outlying Piquet are to secure the safety and repose of the camp; to prevent *reconnaissances* by the enemy, and, by patrolling and careful observation, to gain intelligence of his movements and ascertain his intentions. Each Company on piquet duty, when it arrives at its post, will be told off into 3 Reliefs, one of which will be extended on sentry, the other two remaining in support: if the chain of sentries be so far extended that they cannot all be conveniently relieved from the piquet in support, one or two small parties (forming intermediate supports to the chain) may be detached to convenient situations for the purpose of furnishing the sentries.\*

*Piquet Sentries* by day, should be placed on heights, and need only be sufficiently numerous for each to see the files on either hand, and the intermediate country: by night, they should be increased in number, and placed lower down so as to see any approaching party against the sky without being themselves discovered; one man of each file remaining on his post looking out vigilantly to his front, while the other patrols as far as the next sentry on the right, or occasionally 20 or 30 yards to his front. The line should not be too much extended, nor the men posted near any copse or cover: the

---

\* Detailed instructions for posting and relieving Sentries, &c. &c., will be found in a useful little work entitled *Instruction Drill for Outlying Piquets and Outpost Duty* (Mitchell: Charing Cross).

flanks should be thrown slightly back, and, if necessary, protected by detached parties. If there is any commanding position which cannot be taken within the chain of sentries, a party (properly supported) must be sent to occupy it during the day. When sentries hear people approaching them by night, they will challenge them, order them to halt, and allow only one to advance until the answers are satisfactory: by day, they will never permit more than one stranger at a time to approach their post; a flag of truce will be halted (at such distance that it cannot overlook the piquet-posts) by one sentry, while the other communicates with the Officer commanding the Piquet.

A fire (when permitted to a Piquet) must be as much as possible concealed from observation: and the alarm-post of the Piquet be fixed in rear of it.

Communication should be kept up by *single* sentries between the front line of sentries and the supports; also between the supports and the reserve.

*Officers* going out on piquet duty should examine all the country over which they pass, and select favourable positions for disputing the ground in case of being driven in: bearing in mind that in such an event it will be all-important to gain time for the main body to prepare for action.

When an Officer in charge of a Company sent on piquet arrives at his post, he will, before throwing out his chain of sentries, secure his party from surprise, by placing sentries on its flanks and in front, detaching a look-out file to a commanding spot, and personally examining (accompanied by a patrol) the neighbourhood of the post. An Officer, more especially when entrusted with the defence of a bridge or ford, should if possible strengthen his post by constructing *abattis*, breastworks, &c.: he ought not however, without leave, to block up a main road except with materials easily removeable.

Advanced Piquets will get under arms an hour before daylight: the Officer, as soon as it is light enough, will proceed to occupy the same posts he held the day before; previously sending forward patrols to feel the way, and at once reporting to the Field-officer of

the day any change in the enemy's position. Advanced Piquets should be relieved about daybreak.

The Officer arriving in command of a new Piquet, will accompany the Commander of the old Piquet along the chain of posts, in order to obtain from him all necessary information about the enemy's situation, strength, &c. The Officer who has been relieved will forward a written report to the Field-officer of the day, fall back on the reserve Piquet, and march to camp in the same order as when he advanced: if, however, the advanced Piquets should be attacked before he arrives in camp, he will instantly return to their support.

When near the enemy, a *Patrole* should be sent out once between every relief during the night. The *Patrole*, on leaving the Piquet, should first communicate with the next post on the right (or left); *patrole*, cautiously and silently, along the whole front of the line of sentries, just near enough to see them; and, communicating with the next post on the left (or right), return to the Piquet by the rear of the chain.

When the enemy's posts are distant, *Patroles*, preceded by intelligent men to feel the way, will be sent along the roads towards them as far as may seem expedient. In the event of falling in with an enemy's *Patrole* in advance of the line of sentries, it will be prudent to retire at once without exchanging shots: but should any sounds indicate the approach of a *larger* body, intelligence should immediately be sent to the Officer of the Piquet, and the *Patrole* will retire steadily, and (if possible) unobserved, upon the Piquet. If, in the latter case, the *Patrole* is perceived and overtaken by the enemy, an incessant fire must be kept up to warn the camp that he is coming on in force.

A strong *Patrole*, which must proceed with redoubled caution, will always be sent some distance on towards the enemy's posts just before daylight.

A *Patrole* must above all things avoid giving a false alarm.

When Piquets are attacked, the same rule should be observed as in all other skirmishing; the detached Officers' parties will not run in on the main body, but will support the skirmishers: When compelled to retire, they should, if possible, retreat on the flank of the main body, and thereby afford mutual support to each other. When

a sentry is satisfied that the enemy is moving on to the attack, he should fire at once, although the enemy may be far out of range.

A Piquet ought not to shut itself up in a house or an enclosure, with the intention of defending itself to the last extremity, unless particularly ordered to do so, or in the expectation of immediate support. A Piquet may, with safety, defend its front as long as its flanks are not attacked; but must retire when the enemy attempts to surround the post.

Outlying Piquets pay no compliments: but when approached by a General Officer, the Field-officer of the day, or by any armed party, fall in and stand to their arms. Sentries on out-post duty pay no compliments.

---

Piquets in the field may be taken by Brigades; the different Regiments furnishing one or more Companies, as may be required; a Field-officer of the day being in charge of the whole. Or, an entire Regiment may be employed on Piquet duty under its own Officers.

*See Field Ex., pp. 437-445.*







POSITIONS IN THE  
MANUAL EXERCISE FOR THE LONG RIFLE.



THE SHOULDER.



THE SECURE.



THE ORDER.



THE PRESENT.



THE PORT.



THE CHARGE.



THE ADVANCE.



THE SUPPORT.



THE SLOPE.



THE TRAIL.



STAND AT EASE.

*Reduced from Field Ex.*

Vincent Brookes.



POSITIONS IN THE  
MANUAL EXERCISE FOR THE SHORT RIFLE.

275\*



THE SHOULDER.



THE SECURE.



THE PRESENT.



THE SUPPORT.



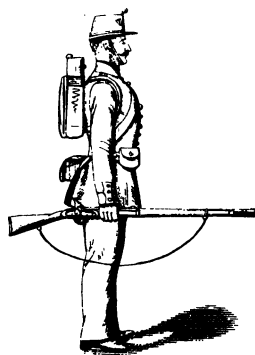
THE PORT.



THE CHARGE.



THE SLOPE.



THE TRAIL.



THE SLING.



THE ORDER.



STAND AT EASE.

*Reduced from Field Ex.*

*Vincent Brooks.*

## APPENDIX I.

### WORDS OF COMMAND—For

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| (A) The <i>Manual</i> and <i>Platoon</i> , &c. | (C) Relieving Guard. |
| (B) The Bayonet Exercise.                      | (D) A Funeral Party. |

#### (A) THE MANUAL AND PLATOON, FIRINGS, &c.

##### (a) THE MANUAL AND PLATOON (REVIEW) EXERCISE.

The Line, standing at open order, with bayonets [or swords] unfixed and Arms shouldered (see p. 190), will receive the following caution and commands :—

(If armed with the Long Rifle)—

Caution—*Manual Exercise.*

1. *Secure Arms* (3)\*—*Shoulder Arms* (3).
2. *Order Arms* (3)—*Fix Bayonets* (2) †—*Shoulder Arms* (3).
3. *Present Arms* (3)—*Shoulder Arms* (2).
4. *Port Arms* (2)—‡ *Charge Bayonets* (1)—*Shoulder Arms* (2).
5. *Advance Arms* (3)—*Order Arms* (3)—*Advance Arms* (3).
6. *Shoulder Arms* (3)—*Support Arms* (3)—*Shoulder Arms* (3).
7. *Slope Arms* (1)—*Shoulder Arms* (2).

*Rear rank take Close order.—March.*

(If armed with the Short Rifle)—

Caution—*Manual Exercise.*

1. *Secure Arms* (2)—*Shoulder Arms* (2).
2. *Present Arms* (3)—*Shoulder Arms* (2).
3. *Support Arms* (1)—*Shoulder Arms* (1).
4. *Order Arms* (2)—*Fix Swords* (1) †—*Shoulder Arms* (2).
5. *Port Arms* (2)—‡ *Charge Swords* (1)—*Shoulder Arms* (2).
6. *Slope Arms* (3)—*Shoulder Arms* (3).
7. *Order Arms* (2)—*Unfix Swords.*

*Rear rank take Close order.—March.*

---

\* The figures in brackets show the number of motions.

† Longer pause.

‡ Rear rank stands fast.

*Platoon Exercise in Slow time* . { If the men are armed with the long rifle, the rear rank will take a pace of 9 inches to the front.\*

*Prepare to Load* (2).

*Load* (5).

*Rod* (2).

*Home* (4).

*Return* (2).

*Cap* (6).

*Fire a Volley, at 300 yards :*

*Ready* (1).

*Present* (5).

When the men have fired, and come down to the capping position :—

*In Quick time : Load* . . . { After returning rods, the men will cap and remain steady at the capping position.

*Shoulder Arms* . . . { The rear rank—if closed up—will, as it shoulders, step back a pace of 9 inches.

*Order Arms.—Stand at Ease.*

#### (b) VOLLEY AND FILE FIRING (IN LINE).

*Company [Wing, or Battalion] :* { The rear rank : as on the caution *Platoon Exercise in Slow time*. Exception :—  
† *Fire a Volley.* { If the order is to fire *front rank kneeling*, the rear rank will stand fast : or, if it has previously closed up to load, will step back a pace of 9 inches.\*

*At — yards : Ready.*  
*Present.*

{ After firing, the men will bring the rifle to the capping position ; put down the flap (if it has been raised) ; and seize the rifle with the right hand close in front of the left. After a pause of slow time, they will come to the *Prepare to load* position ; go on with their loading in *Quick time* ; and, after capping, will remain steady at the capping position.

*Shoulder Arms* . . . { The rear rank : as on the same command in (a).

*File-firing from the right [left, or both flanks] of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections).* { The rear rank : as on the caution *Fire a Volley*.

\* Troops armed with the short rifle fire (without the caution) front rank kneeling : consequently the rear rank will not close up either to load or fire.

† When it is not intended to re-load, the command will be *Fire a Volley, and shoulder. At — yards : Ready.—Present*. The men, after firing, will rest a pause ; come down to the capping position ; shut down the flap (if it has been raised) ; and bring back the right hand to the small of the butt. On the word *Shoulder*, they will bring the left foot back to the right ; and on the word *Arms*, will shoulder and come to the front.

POSITIONS IN THE  
PLATOON EXERCISE.



AS A FRONT RANK:  
PREPARE TO LOAD.



AS A REAR RANK:  
ROD.



AS A FRONT RANK  
STANDING. AT —  
YARDS: READY.



AS A REAR RANK STANDING:  
PRESENT (3<sup>rd</sup> Motion).



AS A FRONT RANK KNEELING.  
AT — YARDS: READY.



AS A REAR RANK KNEELING:  
PRESENT (1<sup>st</sup> Motion).



AS A FRONT RANK KNEELING:  
PRESENT (5<sup>th</sup> Motion).

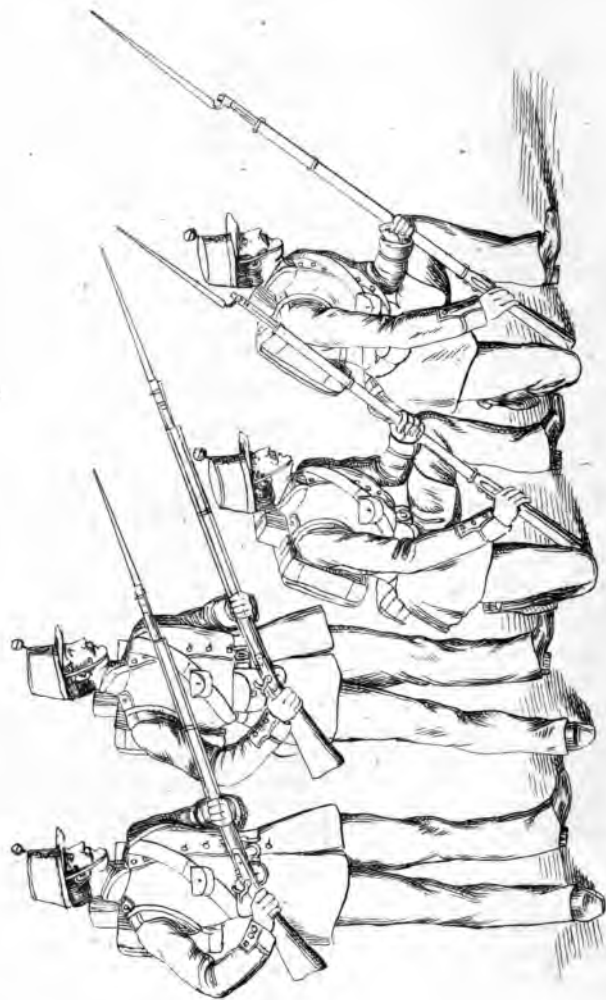


AS A REAR RANK KNEELING:  
PRESENT (5<sup>th</sup> Motion).

† i.e. preparing to reload.



## RESISTING CAVALRY.



*Prepare for Cavalry. Ready.*

<i>Commence</i> . . . . .	{ The files will fire in succession, front- and rear-rank men alternately, from the named flank (or flanks) for the 1st round: each file will then load and fire independently.
<i>Cease Firing</i> . . . . .	{ Each file, as it completes its loading, will come to the 'shoulder' (or, if the men are armed with the short rifle, to the 'order'): any that may be at the 'ready' first half-cocking their rifles. The rear rank—if closed up—will, as it should, step back a pace of 9 inches.

*N.B.*—In Volley firing, the men will, if necessary, adjust their sights on the word '*Ready*'; in coming to the capping position after firing or loading, they will take the time from the right. In File firing, each man will, if necessary, adjust his sight before full cocking his rifle. In all cases, the front rank, after giving their fire, must remain perfectly steady; so as not to derange the aim of the rear rank.

*See (F) page 64.*

### (c) RESISTING CAVALRY.

(Square having been formed)—

<i>Prepare for Cavalry</i> . . . . .	{ The 2nd and 4th ranks of each face take a pace of 9 inches to their front.
<i>Ready</i> . . . . .	{ The 1st and 2nd ranks of each face sink down on the right knee as a front and rear rank. At the same time they place the butts of their rifles on the ground, against the inside of that knee—locks uppermost and muzzles slanting upwards, so that the point of the bayonet (or sword) would be about level with a horse's nose; the left hand will grasp the rifle just above the lower band, the right holding the small of the butt; the left arm will rest on the thigh, 6 inches in rear of the left knee. The 3rd and 4th ranks of each face come down to the 'ready' position: muzzles of the rifles inclined upwards.
<i>File-firing from the right [left, or both flanks] of (the —) Faces.—Commence.</i>	{ Standing ranks commence File-firing, as directed in (b).
<i>Cease Firing</i> . . . . .	{ Each file completes its loading, and comes to the 'shoulder' (or 'order'): as directed in (b).
<i>Kneeling ranks [of the —Face]: Fire a Volley.</i>	

<i>At — yards : Ready . . .</i>	{ The kneeling ranks come to the capping position, bringing the weight of the body on the right heel; full cock; and fix the eye steadfastly on an object in front.
<i>Present . . . . .</i>	{ After firing, the men rest a pause of slow time, raise the body off the heel, and bring the rifle down (as before) to resist Cavalry.
<i>Load . . . . .</i>	{ The kneeling ranks spring to the standing position at the right half face; and bring the rifle to an horizontal position at the right side, seizing it with the right hand close in front of the left: then come to the <i>Prepare to load</i> position as standing ranks, and go on with the loading in Quick time.

*Shoulder [or Order] Arms.*

*N.B.*—The kneeling ranks will not cock until required to fire: as regards the standing ranks (in the first round), each file will cock as the file that fires next before it comes to the present. When the sides of the Square are less than four deep, the front rank, only, will kneel.

(d) TO FIRE A FEU-DE-JOIE.

The Line being drawn up at Open order, Arms shouldered, and bayonets fixed:—

1. *With blank cartridge : Load.* { Quick time.—Muzzles of the rifles to slant upwards when capping.
- 2, 3, 4. *Ready.—Present.* { The right-hand front-rank man commences the fire, which will run quickly down the front and up the rear. When the right-hand man of the rear rank has fired: the whole—taking the time from the right—come to the capping, and thence to the loading, position; and when loaded and capped, remain waiting for the next word. After the 3rd fire, the whole remain steady at the capping position.
- 3 times.
5. *Shoulder Arms.—Present Arms.*
6. *Shoulder Arms.—Order Arms.*

(Three Cheers.)

*See Field Ex., pp. 182–193.*

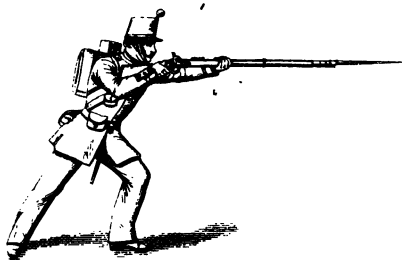


## BAYONET EXERCISE.

I.



GUARD.

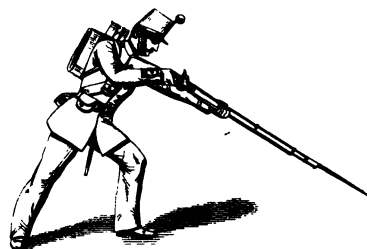


POINT.

II.



LOW GUARD.

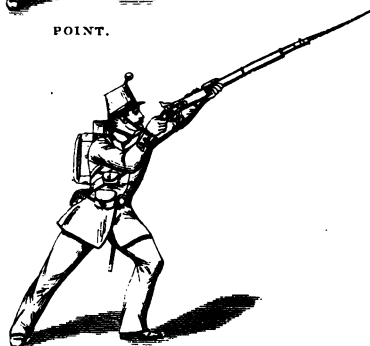


POINT.

III.



HIGH GUARD.

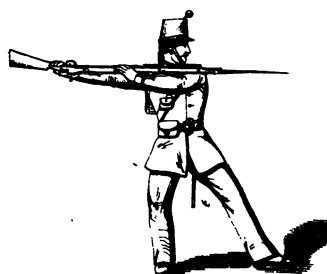


POINT.

IV.



HEAD PARRY.



SHORTEN ARMS.

*Reduced from Field Ex.**Vincent Brooks, U.S.A.*

## (B) BAYONET (or SWORD-BAYONET) EXERCISE.

## Review Exercise.

The Battalion standing in Line, with shouldered Arms :—

<i>Prepare for Bayonet Exercise .</i>	{ The right files of the front rank stand fast : the remainder of both ranks, the Captains, Coverers, Supernumerary rank, and Colour party go to the right-about.
<i>Quick March . . . . .</i>	{ The files which have faced about move straight to the rear ; the front-rank left files 4 paces, the rear-rank right files 7 paces, the rear-rank left files 11 paces : each man halting and fronting at his proper distance, and the ranks dressing by the right. The Supernumerary rank will move 14 paces, the Captains, Coverers, and Colour party 18 paces, to the rear : the Captains will then move to the rear of the centre of their Companies.

## Caution—Review Exercise.

- |                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Guard.</i>             | 2. <i>Point.</i>               |
| 3. <i>Low Guard.—Point.</i>  | 4. <i>High Guard.—Point.</i>   |
| 5. <i>Head Parry.</i>        | 6. <i>Shorten Arms.—Point.</i> |
| 7. <i>Guard.</i>             |                                |
| 8. <i>Right—Point.</i>       | 9. <i>Left—Point.</i>          |
| 10. <i>Low Guard.—Point.</i> | 11. <i>High Guard.—Point.</i>  |
| 12. <i>Right—Point.</i>      | 13. <i>Low Guard.—Point.</i>   |
| 14. <i>Guard.</i>            |                                |

[The above Exercise will then be performed to the rear : the word *About* being first given.]

The Exercise being finished, the men will be brought to their proper front by the word *About* ; and will then receive the commands

*Shoulder Arms.*

*Form Line : Quick March.*

*Order Arms—Stand at Ease.*

See Field Ex., p. 216.

**(C) RELIEVING GUARD.**

[The old Guard will be drawn up at Open order on its parade. The new Guard will form line at 20 or 30 paces in front of the old Guard, and will then advance in Slow time; or it may, if necessary, move up to the old Guard in fours (or files) in Slow time, and be halted and fronted either opposite to it, or on its left (in the same line) at 4 or 6 paces' interval.]

Word given by Commander  
of new Guard.

Word given by Commander  
of old Guard.

(When 10 or 15 paces from old Guard)—

1. *New Guard: Halt, dress.*  
*Rear rank take Open order:*  
*—March.*
2. *New Guard: Present Arms.*
3. *New Guard: Shoulder Arms.*
4. *New Guard: Order Arms.*  
*Stand at Ease.*

1. *Old Guard: Present Arms.*
2. *Old Guard: Shoulder Arms.\**
3. *Old Guard: Order Arms.*  
*Stand at Ease.*

The Guard will then be told off, and the first relief sent out. The reliefs having returned; and all the old Guard having fallen in:—

5. *New Guard: Attention.*  
*Shoulder Arms.*
6. *New Guard: Present Arms.*
7. *New Guard: Shoulder Arms.*

4. *Old Guard: Attention.*  
*Shoulder Arms.*
5. *Old Guard: Rear rank*  
*take Close order. March.*
6. *Old Guard: Form fours: right.*  
*Slow March.*
- (When clear of its ground)—
7. *Old Guard: Quick.*

The Commander of the new Guard then gives—

*Guard: Form fours: right. Left wheel—Slow March.*

When the leading files reach the left of the old Guard's ground:—

*Left wheel.*

When on the old Guard's ground—

*Halt, front: dress.*

*Order Arms.—Stand at Ease.*

Having read the orders of the Guard to his men:—

*Attention.—Shoulder Arms.*

*To the right Face.—Lodge Arms.*

See Field Ex., p. 527.

\* And hands the duplicate of his Guard report to the Commander of the new Guard.

## (D) FUNERAL PARTIES.

Large Funeral parties will march in Column of Companies, Subdivisions, or Sections, Left in front: small parties will march in File. The remainder of the procession will, in all cases, be formed as follows:—

Pall-bearers, of equal rank with Deceased.	<b>THE CORPSE.</b> Chief Mourners.	Pall-bearers, of equal rank with Deceased.
---	---------------------------------------	---

Officers (or N.C. officers) two and two, according to rank: juniors in front.

[The Escort is drawn up two deep, with opened ranks and unfixed bayonets; facing the place where the Corpse is lodged. *Small parties* will be formed with the files extended at one side-pace from each other.]

The Officer in command will give the following words:—

(1) When the Corpse is brought out:—

*PRESENT ARMS.*

*REVERSE ARMS.\**

*REAR RANK TAKE CLOSE ORDER.—MARCH.*

*BY COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS, or SECTIONS): LEFT WHEEL [or  
ON THE RIGHT BACKWARD WHEEL].—Q. MARCH.*

*HALT: DRESS.*

*REAR RANKS TAKE OPEN ORDER.—MARCH.*

*FROM THE RIGHT: ONE SIDE-PACE.—EXTEND.*

[To a small party that is to march in File, after *REVERSE ARMS*, the word *TO THE LEFT FACE* will be given instead of the above commands: and the men will be moved to the head of the procession, both ranks countermarching inwards, if necessary.]

*SLOW MARCH.*

(2) When the head of the procession arrives near the spot where it is to meet the Clergyman:—

*COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS, or SECTIONS): TO THE LEFT TURN. RIGHT WHEEL.*

*HALT.—RANKS: INWARDS FACE.*

*FRONT RANK: FOUR PACES STEP-BACK.—MARCH.*

[If the Party is small and formed in Files, the ranks will incline outwards from each other and will then get *HALT. INWARDS FACE.*]

*REST ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED.*

---

\* Officers' swords are reversed under the right arm: the point downwards, the hilt grasped with the right hand.



## APPENDIX I.

*STAND AT EASE.*

- (3) When the Corps has passed through :—

*ATTENTION.**REVERSE ARMS.**RANKS: RIGHT AND LEFT FACE.—SLOW MARCH.*

[As the men move off, the front rank will incline to the rear rank till at 2 paces' distance from it.]

- (4) When opposite the grave :—

*HALT: FRONT.**REST ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED.**STAND AT EASE.*

- (5) The Funeral Service being concluded :—

*ATTENTION.**PRESENT ARMS.—SHOULDER ARMS.**WITH BLANK CARTRIDGE: LOAD.**FIRE THREE VOLLEYS IN THE AIR.**READY: PRESENT.**DITTO.**DITTO.**ORDER ARMS.—FIX BAYONETS.**SHOULDER ARMS.**REAR RANKS TAKE CLOSE ORDER.—MARCH.*


---

The Escort will then be marched back to Camp (or Barracks) in Fours, Subdivisions, or Sections, Right in front ; in quick time.

*See Field Ex., p. 533.*

---

# APPENDIX II.

## WEIGHT AND DIMENSIONS OF ARMS, AMMUNITION, ETC.—1860.

DESCRIPTION.	MUSKET.				BAYONET OR SWORD.				BARREL.						AMMUNITION.																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																										
	WEIGHT.		LENGTH.		Length beyond Muzzle.		Weight.		Weight of Scabbard.		DIMENSIONS, ETC.			GROOVES.			PLUG BULLET.		Weight of 60 Rounds and 75 copper Caps packed.																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																						
	With Bayonet (or Sword).	Without Bayonet (or Sword).	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	oz.	Weight.	Length.	Diameter of Bore.	Windage.	Number.	Width.	Depth.	Description.	Degree of Spirality.		Weight.	Diameter.	Length.	Charge of Powder.																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
																								lb. oz.	lb. oz.	lb. oz.	lb. oz.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.

## APPENDIX III.

THE following Table gives the left-hand men of Sections in *Right* and *Left* Companies. (See p. 13.)

Each multiple of 4, from which the calculations for the 3 next lowest numbers will easily be made, is distinguished by larger type.

In a <i>Right</i> Com- pany consisting of FILES.	Left-hand men of Sections.				In a <i>Left</i> Com- pany consisting of FILES.	Left-hand men of Sections.			
	I.	II.	III.	IV.		I.	II.	III.	IV.
<b>17</b> .	5 .	9 .	13 .	17	<b>17</b> .	4 .	8 .	12 .	17
18 .	5 .	9 .	13 .	18	18 .	5 .	9 .	13 .	18
19 .	5 .	10 .	14 .	19	19 .	5 .	9 .	14 .	19
<b>20</b> .	5 .	10 .	15 .	20	<b>20</b> .	5 .	10 .	15 .	20
21 .	6 .	11 .	16 .	21	21 .	5 .	10 .	15 .	21
22 .	6 .	11 .	16 .	22	22 .	6 .	11 .	16 .	22
23 .	6 .	12 .	17 .	23	23 .	6 .	11 .	17 .	23
<b>24</b> .	6 .	12 .	18 .	24	<b>24</b> .	6 .	12 .	18 .	24
25 .	7 .	13 .	19 .	25	25 .	6 .	12 .	18 .	25
26 .	7 .	13 .	19 .	26	26 .	7 .	13 .	19 .	26
27 .	7 .	14 .	20 .	27	27 .	7 .	13 .	20 .	27
<b>28</b> .	7 .	14 .	21 .	28	<b>28</b> .	7 .	14 .	21 .	28
29 .	8 .	15 .	22 .	29	29 .	7 .	14 .	21 .	29
30 .	8 .	15 .	22 .	30	30 .	8 .	15 .	22 .	30
31 .	8 .	16 .	23 .	31	31 .	8 .	15 .	23 .	31
<b>32</b> .	8 .	16 .	24 .	32	<b>32</b> .	8 .	16 .	24 .	32
33 .	9 .	17 .	25 .	33	33 .	8 .	16 .	24 .	33
34 .	9 .	17 .	25 .	34	34 .	9 .	17 .	25 .	34
35 .	9 .	18 .	26 .	35	35 .	9 .	17 .	26 .	35
<b>36</b> .	9 .	18 .	27 .	36	<b>36</b> .	9 .	18 .	27 .	36
37 .	10 .	19 .	28 .	37	37 .	9 .	18 .	27 .	37
38 .	10 .	19 .	28 .	38	38 .	10 .	19 .	28 .	38
39 .	10 .	20 .	29 .	39	39 .	10 .	19 .	29 .	39
<b>40</b> .	10 .	20 .	30 .	40	<b>40</b> .	10 .	20 .	30 .	40

# INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Adjutant—</i>		<i>Baggage Square</i> . . . . .	182
Duty of the, in Line formations . . . . .	66	<i>Base of Formation—</i>	
Post of the . . . . .	60, 61	Explanation of term . . . . .	66
<i>Advanced Guard—</i>		<i>Base Points—</i>	
An, breaking into Skirmishing		In formations of Line . . . . .	66, 196
order . . . . .	268	„ of Column . . . . .	197
Duties of an . . . . .	266	<i>Battalion, The—</i>	
Posting of Officers with an . . . . .	265	Advancing in Line . . . . .	70
Words of command for sending		Advancing by Wings . . . . .	74
out an . . . . .	266	At Open order . . . . .	68
<i>Alignment—</i>		Extending from Column . . . . .	244
An open Column moving by Fours,		„ from Line . . . . .	249
into an . . . . .	117	Changing position by Open Co-	
Taken up previously to Line form-		lumn . . . . .	150
ations . . . . .	66	Formation of, on parade . . . . .	59
<i>Alarm, The</i> . . . . .	260	Forming Column from Line . . . . .	85—109
<i>Ammunition</i> . . . . .	283	Forming Line from Column . . . . .	128—149
<i>Appui, Point of—</i>		Forming Square 4-deep . . . . .	171—175
Explanation of . . . . .	65	Forming Square 2-deep . . . . .	182
Serjeants face towards, in giving		Movements of, in Line . . . . .	68—80
points for Lines . . . . .	196	Movements of, in Column . . . . .	110—127
Companies are dressed from the		Passing Obstacles . . . . .	77—80, 84
flank nearest the . . . . .	63, 66	<i>Bayonet—</i>	
<i>Arms—</i>		Exercise . . . . .	279
Position and movements of . . . . .	6	To be fixed in Company and Bat-	
„ „ of, in		talion movements . . . . .	14
Skirmishing . . . . .	224, 225	Weight and length of . . . . .	283
When recovered and when should-		<i>Blank file</i> . . . . .	7
dered, by Coverers giving points	195	<i>Breaking off Files—</i>	
<i>Assemble, The</i> . . . . .	258	From a flank of a Company in	
<i>Assembling on Coverers</i> . . . . .	58, 250	Column . . . . .	52, 78
<i>Attention—</i>		<i>Bridge—</i>	
Officers' swords, how carried at . . . . .	3	Passing a, in contact with an	
Position of the Soldier at . . . . .	7	enemy . . . . .	263

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Brigade Evolutions—</i>		<i>Column—</i>	
Battalion to be drilled with refer-		Movements in . . . . .	110—127
ence to . . . . .	59	Of Route . . . . .	61
<i>Bugle Sounds . . . . .</i>	226	Pivot and Reverse flank, in . . . . .	2
<i>Caution—</i>		Posting of Officers, &c., in . . . . .	8, 61
To be given before Movements in		When said to be <i>Right</i> , and when	
Company Drill . . . . .	8	<i>Left</i> , in front . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
<i>Cavalry—</i>		<i>Column at Close and Quarter dis-</i>	
A Square resisting . . . . .	55, 57, 176, 277	<i>tance—</i>	
<i>Changing front . . . . .</i>	119, 150, 162, 236	Deployments from . . . . .	143—149
<i>Charge in Line . . . . .</i>	70	Distance between Companies, &c.,	
<i>Centre Serjeant . . . . .</i>	67, 196	in . . . . .	31, 82
<i>Close order—</i>		Formation of Square from . . . . .	174, 182
A Battalion in Line taking . . . . .	69	<i>Columns, Double—</i>	
Distance of ranks at . . . . .	8	All advances from the Centre,	
How taken on the March . . . . .	19	made in . . . . .	63
<i>Closing—</i>		A Battalion in Line advancing in	93
From extended order . . . . .	230	" " retiring from	
Skirmishers on Supports . . . . .	240, 256	both flanks in rear of the centre,	
Skirmishers and Supports on Re-		in . . . . .	100
serve . . . . .	258	Formation of, from Line . . . . .	93, 100, 109
<i>Closing by the Side-step—</i>		" Line from 138—142, 148	
A Battalion . . . . .	63	" Square from . . . . .	175
A single Company at Drill . . . . .	43	Proper Left, the directing flank	
<i>Colours—</i>		in . . . . .	82, 96
When ordered, shouldered, and		<i>Column, Open—</i>	
sloped . . . . .	67	A Company advancing from a flank,	
<i>Colour Party—</i>		in . . . . .	33
Formation of the . . . . .	67	A Battalion formed in Line ad-	
Posting of the . . . . .	61, 62, 226	vancing, and retiring, from a	
<i>Column—</i>		flank, in . . . . .	90, 97
A Battalion extending from . . . . .	244	An, forming Square on the centre	
A Reserve to be formed in, in pre-		while taking ground to a flank . . . . .	174
sence of Cavalry . . . . .	225	Changes of front, by . . . . .	150
Close, of Sections . . . . .	54, 260	Changing the leading flank of	
Contiguous . . . . .	82	an . . . . .	121, 123
Covering of Officers in . . . . .	30, 84	Changing direction, an . . . . .	117
Flank to which Companies cover		Closing an . . . . .	110
and dress, in . . . . .	2, 82	Distance between Companies, in . . . . .	82
Formations of, from Line . . . . .	85—109	Extent of Battalion, in . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
" Line from . . . . .	128—149	Forming Line from . . . . .	128
		" Square from . . . . .	171—174
		Increasing and diminishing front	
		of an . . . . .	47—53, 83
		<i>Company—</i>	
		A, advancing in Skirmishing order . . . . .	232
		A, retiring in Skirmishing order . . . . .	234

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Company—</i>		<i>Covering-serjeants—</i>	
A single, to be drilled as if in		By whom dressed when giving	
Battalion . . . . .	8	points in Battalion . . . . .	67, 197
Closing from extended order . .	230	Duties of, in Battalion . . . . .	195—220
Extending . . . . .	228	How they face in giving points .	196
Formation of, on parade . . . .	7	Posting of . . . . .	8, 60
Forming, from File or Fours .	39—41	Take distance for their <i>whole</i>	
Forming to either flank from		Company . . . . .	197
Open Column of Subdivisions		When they 'recover' and when	
or Sections . . . . .	31, 36	'shoulder,' in giving points .	195
Gaining ground to a flank by		When they take their Captains'	
Echellon of Sections . . . .	34	place . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
How to dismiss a . . . . .	58	<i>Defile—</i>	
How to tell off and prove, a .	12—14	Passage of a, by breaking off Files	52, 78
Inspection of a, on its private		„ a, in extended order .	263
parade . . . . .	11, 12	<i>Degrees of March . . . . .</i>	1
Inspection of a, in Battalion .	60	<i>Deploy—</i>	
Square . . . . .	55, 181, 260	Derivation of the word . . . .	143
<i>Companies—</i>		<i>Deployments . . . . .</i>	143—149
How 'told off in' a Battalion in		<i>Diagonal March—</i>	
Line . . . . .	68	Gaining ground to the front and	
How told off in a Battalion in		to a flank, by the . . . . .	18, 127
Column . . . . .	59	Reserves take ground to the front	
Passing one another . . . . .	259	and a flank, by the . . . .	225
Right and Left, meaning of . .	60	<i>Diminishing—</i>	
<i>Connecting links . . . . .</i>	226	The front of a Column . 47, 52, 53, 83	
<i>Correction of Coverers and pivots—</i>		<i>Direction—</i>	
By whom, and whence, made .	67, 197	Columns changing . . . . .	24, 117
<i>Counter marching—</i>		Skirmishers changing . . . . .	236
By Files . . . . .	46	<i>Directing flank—</i>	
By Ranks . . . . .	45	In Double Column . . . . .	82
Of a Company in Line, on which		When Skirmishers are inclining to	
a Column is to be formed facing		a flank . . . . .	235
to the Rear . . . . .	107	<i>Directing Serjeant . . . . .</i>	70
When it does, and does not,		<i>Distance—</i>	
change the pivot flank of a		Closing, to correct . . . . .	63
Column . . . . .	84	Between files in extended order .	228
<i>Cover—</i>		For any number of Files, how to	
In Light Drill . . . . .	221, 224	calculate . . . . .	1
<i>Covering—</i>		Rear-rank men responsible for, in	
Of Officers in Column . . . . .	30, 84	extending . . . . .	228
„ in oblique Echellon	125, 158		

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Double Columns—(See Columns.)</i>		<i>Enfield Musket—</i>	
<i>Double Files (or Fours) from the centre—</i>		Weight, length, &c. of . . . . .	283
A Line or Column may advance by, to pass Obstacles . . . . .	79, 84	<i>Exercise—</i>	
Posting of Officers and Colours, in . . . . .	79	Bayonet . . . . .	279
<i>Dress—</i>		Manual and Platoon . . . . .	275, 276
Derivation of the word . . . . .	10	<i>Extending</i> . . . . .	228, 244, 249
<i>Dressing—</i>		<i>Feu-de-Joie</i> . . . . .	278
A Battalion in Line . . . . .	72	<i>Field Officers—</i>	
A single Company . . . . .	10	Duties of, in Line formations . . . . .	66, 67
Companies when wheeled into Line . . . . .	63	Posting of . . . . .	60, 61
Companies when coming up successively into Line . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>	<i>File—</i>	
Intermediate points in . . . . .	67	Blank and Odd . . . . .	7, 13
Look of the Soldier, in . . . . .	66	Space in the ranks, allowed for a . . . . .	7
Not done in Column . . . . .	10, 63	<i>Files—</i>	
<i>Drill—</i>		Countermarching by . . . . .	46
Company . . . . .	7—58	Distance between, in extended order . . . . .	228, 229
Battalion . . . . .	59—220	How to calculate paces for . . . . .	1
Light . . . . .	223—273	Method of breaking off . . . . .	52
Of a Company, conducted with reference to the Battalion . . . . .	8	<i>File Firing</i> . . . . .	65, 276, 277
Of a Battalion, conducted with reference to Brigade . . . . .	59	<i>File Marching—</i>	
<i>Ease, standing at—</i>		Formation of Company (Subdivisions, or Sections) from . . . . .	39—41
Officers' swords, in . . . . .	3, 16	Posting of Officers and Covering-serjeant in . . . . .	9
Rule respecting, in Light Drill . . . . .	228	<i>Firing—</i>	
<i>Echellon—</i>		By Companies . . . . .	64, 276
Changes of front, by . . . . .	162—166	By Wings . . . . .	74, 276
Covering of Officers, in . . . . .	35, 158	During formations . . . . .	65
Derivation of the term . . . . .	154	File . . . . .	65, 276, 277
Direct . . . . .	167	In Square . . . . .	55, 176, 277
Formations and Movements in . . . . .	156—170	In Skirmishing order . . . . .	224
March of Sections, in . . . . .	34	Volley . . . . .	64, 276, 278
Method of forming Direct . . . . .	154, 167	When troops are armed with short rifle, the front rank kneels in . . . . .	65, 276
" Oblique . . . . .	154, 156	Words of command for . . . . .	276—278
Oblique . . . . .	156—166	<i>Flank—</i>	
Posting of Covering-serjeants in . . . . .	62	A Column, taking ground to a . . . . .	125
" of Officers and Colours in . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>	Inner and Outer . . . . .	2
Re-forming Line from Direct . . . . .	169	Pivot and Reverse . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
" from Oblique . . . . .	159	<i>Flanks—</i>	
		How changed . . . . .	10
		<i>Flanking Parties</i> . . . . .	248

	PAGE
<i>Foot—</i>	
On which men should turn . . .	3
On which the Officers' Salute (in Marching past) commences . .	187
<i>Formations—</i>	
Echellon . . . . .	156—170
Of Column from Line . . .	85—109
"    from Square . . .	177, 182
Of Line from Column . . .	128—149
Of Square from Column . . .	171—175, 182
"    from Line . . . . .	180
<i>Formation—</i>	
Base, and Points, of . . . .	65, 196
<i>Forming Company—</i>	
From File or Fours . . . . .	39—41
From Subdivisions or Sections .	31, 36
<i>"Forward"—</i>	
Not given to men after turning about . . . . .	18
<i>Fours—</i>	
Formation of, from the Halt . .	38
"    on the March . . .	41, 42
"    of Company from . .	39—41
"    of Two-deep from . .	41, 42
Passing Obstacles, by the Com- panies forming . . . . .	77, 80
Posting of Officers and Coverer, in	9, 62
Rule to be observed when a Com- pany moving in, is fronted . .	109
<i>Front—</i>	
Changes of . . . . .	119, 150, 162, 236
How Officers and men . . . . .	48
<i>Funeral Parties—</i>	
Words of command for . . . .	281
<i>General Rules . . . . .</i>	6
<i>Guard, Relieving . . . . .</i>	280
<i>Horses—</i>	
Of mounted Officers . . . . .	66
<i>Increasing—</i>	
The front of a Column . . . .	49, 83

	PAGE
<i>Inner flank . . . . .</i>	2
<i>Inspection or Review . . . . .</i>	184—194
<i>Inspection—</i>	
Of a Company on its private parade	11, 12
Of a Company in Column . . .	60
<i>Inverted Deployments . . . . .</i>	145
<i>Inverted Order . . . . .</i>	135
<i>Kneeling Ranks—</i>	
In Square . . . . .	56, 174, 224
<i>Light Drill . . . . .</i>	223—273
<i>Line—</i>	
A relieving . . . . .	80
An Officer posted on the left of the Battalion when formed in . .	60
Changing front by Echellon . .	161
"    by Open Column . . .	149
Charging in . . . . .	70
Deployments into . . . . .	143—152
Distance of Supernumerary rank in . . . . .	8
A Battalion extending from . .	249
Formation of from Column . . .	128—149
"    of Column, from . . .	85—109
"    of Echellon, from . .	156
"    of Square, from . . .	180
How Captains are aligned while retiring in . . . . .	71
Posting of Officers, Coverers, and Colours in . . . . .	8, 60
<i>Manual Exercise . . . . .</i>	273
<i>March—</i>	
Degrees of . . . . .	1
Diagonal . . . . .	18
<i>Marching—</i>	
At Ease . . . . .	3
Past a Reviewing Officer . . .	3, 185, 193
<i>Marking Time—</i>	
Word of command for . . . . .	1



	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Mounted Officers.</i> (See <i>Field Officers.</i> )		<i>Patroles</i> . . . . .	268
<i>Moveable Pivots.</i> (See <i>Pivots.</i> )		<i>Piquets</i> . . . . .	270—273
<i>Obstacles—</i>		<i>Pivot—</i>	
How to pass . . . . .	77, 80, 84	“Pivot flank” in Column . . . . .	2, 82
<i>Odd file</i> . . . . .	13	<i>Pivot man</i> . . . . .	6
<i>Officers—</i>		<i>Pivots—</i>	
Changing flanks . . . . .	10	Fixed and Moveable, wheeling on . . . . .	22
Posting of . . . . .	8, 60, 225	Moveable, wheeling on from the . . . . .	24
Saluting in Line . . . . .	184	Halt . . . . .	24
“ in marching past in . . . . .		<i>Platoon Exercise</i> . . . . .	276
Column . . . . .	187	<i>Point of Appui.</i> (See <i>Appui.</i> )	
Swords of, how carried, &c. . . . .	2	<i>Points—</i>	
“ <i>On the Move</i> ”—		How Coverers give . . . . .	196, 197
When given . . . . .	6, 24	How mounted Officers give . . . . .	60
<i>Order, Close—</i>		Of formation . . . . .	65
Distance of ranks at . . . . .	8	<i>Points intermediate—</i>	
How taken from the Halt . . . . .	15	By whom given . . . . .	66
“ on the March . . . . .	19	<i>Position, Changes of—</i>	
<i>Order, Inverted</i> . . . . .	135, 145	By Echelon . . . . .	162
<i>Order, Open—</i>		By Open Column . . . . .	150
Distance of ranks at . . . . .	8	<i>Posting—</i>	
How taken from the Halt . . . . .	15	Of Colours . . . . .	60
“ on the March . . . . .	19	Of Officers and Covering-serjeant, in Company . . . . .	8
<i>Ordered Arms—</i>		Of Officers and Covering-serjeants, in Battalion . . . . .	60
To be trailed as the men step off . . . . .	6	Of Officers and Covering-serjeant, when the Company is extended and in support . . . . .	225
<i>Outer flank</i> . . . . .	2	<i>Proving a Company</i> . . . . .	13
<i>Paces—</i>		<i>Quarter-distance Column—</i>	
Length of marching . . . . .	1	Distance between Companies in . . . . .	82
Number taken in a minute . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>	Formation of Square from . . . . .	174
To calculate for Files . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>	How Officers cover in . . . . .	84
<i>Passing a Defile</i> . . . . .	83, 263	Opening out a . . . . .	112
<i>Passing by Fours—</i>		Wheel of a . . . . .	115
From the flanks of Companies . . . . .	77—80	<i>Rallying Square</i> . . . . .	57, 243, 260

# INDEX.

291

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Ranks—</i>		<i>Skirmishing—</i>	
Countermarching by . . . . .	45	Derivation of word . . . . .	223
Distance of, at Open and Close order . . . . .	8	Time of movements in . . . . .	225
Opening and Closing the . . . . .	15, 184	<i>Skirmishing order—</i>	
"    "    on the March 19, 186		An Advanced Guard breaking into . . . . .	268
<i>Rear Guard—</i>		<i>Squares—</i>	
Posting of Officers, with a . . . . .	269	Baggage . . . . .	183
Words of command for sending out a . . . . .	269	Company . . . . .	54, 181, 242
<i>Reinforcing Skirmishers</i> . . . . .	254	Echellon of . . . . .	181, 261
<i>Relative strength and duties—</i>		Formation of from Column . . . . .	171—175
Of Skirmishers, Supports, and Reserves . . . . .	224, 225	"    "    while taking ground to a flank . . . . .	77, 174
<i>Relieving Guard</i> . . . . .	280	Formation of from Line . . . . .	180
<i>Relieving Skirmishers</i> . . . . .	238, 253	Four-deep . . . . .	171—175
<i>Reserves—</i>		Rallying . . . . .	57, 243
Directions for . . . . .	225	Re-forming Column, from 4-deep . . . . .	177
<i>Review, or Inspection</i> . . . . .	184—194	"    "    from 2-deep . . . . .	182
<i>Saluting—</i>		Two-deep . . . . .	182
In Line . . . . .	184	<i>Square—</i>	
In Marching past . . . . .	187	A, resisting Cavalry . . . . .	55, 57, 277
<i>Sections—</i>		Kneeling ranks in . . . . .	56, 174, 224
Echellon of . . . . .	34	To move a . . . . .	55, 57, 176, 183
Formation of from Subdivisions . . . . .	48	<i>Squads—</i>	
How commanded . . . . .	9	In a Company, under whose superintendence . . . . .	11
<i>Serjeants. (See Covering-serjeants.)</i>		<i>Standing at Ease—</i>	
<i>Side-step—</i>		Officers' swords while, at Open order . . . . .	16
A single Company closing by the Companies in Battalion closing by the . . . . .	43, 63	<i>Stepping out, and short—</i>	
Length of the . . . . .	1	Length of pace in . . . . .	1
<i>Sized—</i>		<i>Subdivisions, Column of—</i>	
How a Company is . . . . .	7	A Line wheeling into . . . . .	86
<i>Skirmishers—</i>		Breaking off files from an Open . . . . .	52
Directions for . . . . .	223, 224	Directing flank in a Double . . . . .	82
		Formation of from Company . . . . .	29, 47
		"    from File-marching or Fours . . . . .	39
		Formation of from Sections . . . . .	49
		How commanded . . . . .	9
		Wheeling into Line from . . . . .	31, 129
		<i>Supernumerary Officers—</i>	
		How they change flanks . . . . .	10
		Posting of . . . . .	8, 9

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Supernumerary Rank—</i>		<i>Volley firing . . . . .</i>	64, 276
Its distance from the rear rank,		<i>Wheeling—</i>	
and its use . . . . .	8	A Close or Quarter-distance Co-	
When it closes up in Battalion		lumn . . . . .	115
movements . . . . .	60	A Company, any number of paces,	
<i>Supernumerary Serjeant . . . . .</i>	9	from the Halt . . . . .	25
<i>Supports—</i>		A Company, on its centre . . . . .	27
Directions for . . . . .	224	From Echellon into Line . . . . .	159
<i>Sword-bayonet—</i>		From Line into Column . . . . .	85
Weight and length of . . . . .	283	General Rules for . . . . .	6
<i>Swords, Officers'—</i>		Into Echellon from Line . . . . .	155
How carried, &c. . . . .	2, 189, 281	Into Line from Column . . . . .	128
<i>Time—</i>		On a halted and moveable pivot . . . . .	22
In which men move, while act-		On moveable pivots from the Halt . . . . .	24
ing as Light Infantry . . . . .	225	The Quarter-circle . . . . .	4
Of Marching . . . . .	1	<i>Wings—</i>	
<i>Turning—</i>		A Column changing . . . . .	121, 123
With which foot made . . . . .	3	Advancing or retiring, and Firing	
<i>Two-deep—</i>		by . . . . .	74, 75
How formed from Four-deep . . . . .	41, 42	<i>Words of Command—</i>	
To form Four-deep from . . . . .	41	How given . . . . .	3

## WORKS BY CAPTAIN MALTON.

---

COMPANY AND BATTALION DRILL ILLUSTRATED:  
INCLUDING LIGHT DRILL. In accordance with the FIELD  
EXERCISE AND EVOLUTIONS OF INFANTRY as revised in 1861.  
*Fifth Edition. With 74 Plates. In Cloth, 12s.; post-free,*  
*12s. 8d.*

---

SINNOTT'S MILITARY CATECHISM: adapted to the  
revised system of the Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry,  
*Fifteenth Edition. 1862. In Cloth, 3s.; post-free, 3s. 4d.*

---

THE DUTIES OF COVERING-SERJEANTS in Company  
and Battalion Drill: in accordance with the Field Exercise as  
revised in 1861. *Fourth Edition. 1862. In Cloth, 1s. 6d.;*  
*post-free, 1s. 7d.*

---

THE A B C OF SKIRMISHING: being the Light Infantry  
Movements of a Company; in accordance with the revised  
Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. *Third Edition.*  
*1862. With 2 Plates, and the Bugle Sounds. In Cloth, 1s.;*  
*post-free, 1s. 1d.*

---

COMPANY MANŒUVRES: or, Suggestions for Company  
Drill on the System laid down in the Field Exercise and  
Evolutions of Infantry. *Second Edition. 1862. In Cloth, 1s.;*  
*post-free, 1s. 1d.*

---

PUBLISHED BY

W. CLOWES AND SONS, 14, CHARING CROSS, LONDON.







